


**LIBRARY OF CONGRESS**



00005729105 







*Deposited March 9. 1852  
Recorded Vol. 27. Page 98.*

# HISTORY

OF THE

# UNITED STATES

OF

# A M E R I C A.

WRITTEN IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE PRINCIPLES OF PEACE.

BY

M. <sup>✓</sup>MURRAY.



B O S T O N :

B E N J A M I N B. M U S S E Y & C O .

N E W B E D F O R D : C. & A. T A B E R .

1 8 5 2 .

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1852, by  
M. MURRAY,  
in the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the District of Massachusetts.

E178  
M983

BOSTON:  
PRINTED BY DAMRELL & MOORE,  
16 Devonshire Street,

## P R E F A C E .

---

THE following work is offered to those, who, not wishing to withhold from the reader or student, the knowledge of the American wars, regard it as important that this knowledge be communicated in such a manner as to strengthen a love of peace, and to excite reflections not inconsistent with those suggested by the words of the apostle, “ Whence come wars and fightings among you ? Come they not hence, even of your lusts that war in your members ? ”

The most approved authors have been consulted to obtain accurate information on all subjects worthy of notice in a work on American History, some of which are not usually embraced in similar works ; such, for example, as the United States Exploring Expedition and the Manners and Customs of the North American

Indians. At the same time much which has appeared uninteresting and useless has been omitted. Where authorities have differed, great care has been especially taken to consult the best sources of knowledge.

The facts given in the account of the Mexican war, are derived chiefly from the works of Jay and Livermore. Histories may hereafter be written, which shall give a different view of the causes which led to this war, by persons who adopt the motto, "Our country, right or wrong." The writer of the following work, not approving a motto so evidently at variance with universal and eternal justice, has endeavored to treat both governments with impartiality in the delineation of the war and its causes.

## AUTHORITIES.

---

The following are some of the Authorities made use of: —

ROBERTSON'S AMERICA.

BANCROFT'S UNITED STATES.

FROST'S UNITED STATES.

HINTON'S UNITED STATES.

MARSHALL'S LIFE OF WASHINGTON.

MCINTOSH'S INDIANS.

NORTH AMERICAN REVIEW.

REVIEW OF GRAHAM'S COLONIAL HISTORY.

JAY'S REVIEW OF THE MEXICAN WAR.

LIVERMORE'S REVIEW OF THE MEXICAN WAR.



# CONTENTS.

---

## CHAPTER I.

Discovery of America,.....	13
----------------------------	----

---

## CHAPTER II.

Attempts at Colonization,.....	21
--------------------------------	----

---

## CHAPTER III.

Colonization of Virginia — Early History of Jamestown,	29
--	----

---

## CHAPTER IV.

State of the Continent, when first visited by Europeans — Some account of the North American Indians,....	48
--	----

---

## CHAPTER V.

Virginia, (continued,).....	57
-----------------------------	----

## CHAPTER VI.

Colonization of Maryland,.....	62
--------------------------------	----



## CHAPTER VII.

Attempts to colonize New England — The Pilgrims,....	71
--	----



## CHAPTER VIII.

Further Colonization of New England,.....	83
---	----



## CHAPTER IX.

The United Colonies of New England,.....	99
--	----



## CHAPTER X.

The United Colonies of New England, (continued,)....	108
--	-----



## CHAPTER XI.

New England, (continued,) .....	124
---------------------------------	-----



## CHAPTER XII.

New Netherlands, until its final transfer to England,....	136
---	-----



## CHAPTER XIII.

New Jersey, as a separate Province, .....	146
---	-----

## CHAPTER XIV.

New York, continued from New Netherlands,.....	149
--	-----

---

## CHAPTER XV.

Carolina,.....	153
----------------	-----

---

## CHAPTER XVI.

Pennsylvania and Delaware,.....	161
---------------------------------	-----

---

## CHAPTER XVII.

Georgia,.....	172
---------------	-----

---

## CHAPTER XVIII.

The French War, and some of the causes which led to it,	176
---	-----

---

## CHAPTER XIX.

Difficulties with the British Government, — From 1764 to 1775,.....	191
--	-----

---

## CHAPTER XX.

War—The Revolution,.....	212
--------------------------	-----

---

## CHAPTER XXI.

Continuation of the Revolutionary War—Declaration of Independence,.....	225
--	-----

## CHAPTER XXII.

Continuation of the War,.....	230
-------------------------------	-----

## CHAPTER XXIII.

Campaign of 1778 and 1779,.....	260
---------------------------------	-----

## CHAPTER XXIV.

Campaign of 1780,.....	276
------------------------	-----

## CHAPTER XXV.

Campaign of 1781 — Conclusion of the War — Treaty of Peace signed,.....	293
--	-----

## CHAPTER XXVI.

Adoption of the Federal Constitution, and Administration of George Washington,.....	313
--	-----

## CHAPTER XXVII.

Administration of John Adams, Thomas Jefferson, and James Madison,.....	338
--	-----

## CHAPTER XXVIII.

War of 1812,.....	364
-------------------	-----

## CHAPTER XXIX.

From the Treaty of Peace with England in 1815, to the Mexican Controversy,.....	388
--	-----

## CHAPTER XXX.

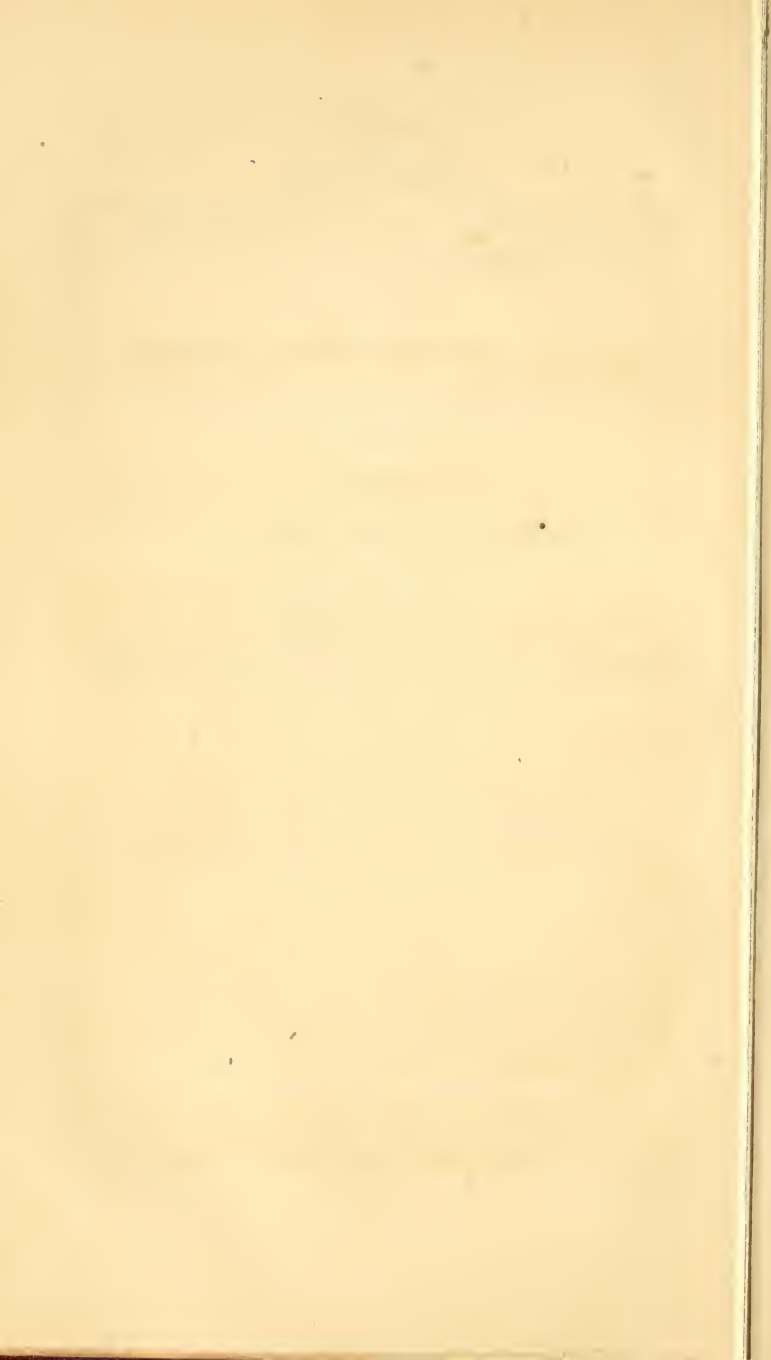
The Mexican War, with some of the causes which led to it,	403
---	-----

## CHAPTER XXXI.

Exploring Expedition under Captain Wilkes,.....	432
---	-----

## CHAPTER XXXII.

Conclusion,.....	437
------------------	-----



# HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.

---

## CHAPTER I.

### DISCOVERY OF AMERICA.

THE country in which we live, teeming with a thriving population, studded with cities, towns and villages, was, in all probability, unknown to the ancients; and was mostly one vast wilderness, frequented by wild beasts, and inhabited only by tribes of Indians, savage and warlike, who subsisted by hunting and fishing. It was discovered in 1492.\* Previously to that time mariners were accustomed to short voyages only, and seldom ventured out of sight of land. But the spirit of adventure was high in the wish to find a more direct passage by water to India, the trade with which was then

---

\* The Norwegians and Icelanders have claimed the honor of having first discovered the American continent. The Royal Antiquarian Society at Copenhagen has published some of the Icelandic authorities, which seem to render it quite probable that Greenland was visited by a party from Iceland as early as 986; and that in the year 1000, an exploring voyage was made by Norwegians, in which the company proceeded as far south as Labrador and Newfoundland, and possibly Nantucket.

It is stated that several voyages were made, and that a colony existed for several years in Greenland. But there is no reason to suppose that Columbus had any knowledge of these explorations.

---

Christopher Columbus.Sails from Palos.

---

conducted over land, attended with great expense and danger. For this purpose Christopher Columbus, a native of Genoa, first conceived the design of venturing into the unexplored waters of the ocean. He was a navigator of great skill, and a man of a bold, enterprising and persevering spirit.

There were some indications which had tended strongly to incite a spirit of inquiry. Pieces of carved wood, a canoe and two human bodies, different in complexion from any Europeans, had been washed upon the shores of islands in the neighborhood of Europe. The shape of the earth was then known to be round, and Columbus was thus induced to think that the East Indies might be reached by sailing west. In pursuance of this opinion he applied to the king of Portugal for aid, but the subject was treated with ridicule. Persevering in his efforts, Columbus sent his brother to Henry VII of England. The voyage was attended with so much delay, that the favorable views of that monarch did not become known to Columbus until after his return from the first voyage, when the discovery had been made.

This indefatigable man, after the failure of his application to the court of Portugal, sought assistance from Ferdinand and Isabella of Spain. At first they also regarded the idea as chimerical, but by the representations of Columbus, the queen, after a long delay, was induced to lend him all the assistance in her power, even offering to pledge her jewels for this purpose. By her directions three small vessels were fitted out. They were provided for twelve months, and had on board one hundred and twenty persons. With these, Columbus sailed for the Canary Islands, from the port of Palos, in Spain, on the 3d of Eighth month, (Aug.,) 1492. At these islands he stopped to refit, and sailed again on the 6th of Ninth month, (Sept.,) into a wide and

---

Discontent of the seamen.Discovery of land.

---

unexplored sea. In about eight days, when they had proceeded six hundred miles, the compass was observed to vary from its direction to the north polar star. This alarmed them much. It was totally unaccountable, never having before been observed. With difficulty Columbus allayed their fears, being unable himself to explain the cause. He appears to have satisfied them, by telling them that the star had motion, and not the needle. Not however meeting with land as soon as they had anticipated, they again became uneasy, showed symptoms of insubordination, and agreed among themselves that Columbus should be forced to relinquish the undertaking, and even talked of throwing him into the sea. Amidst all the difficulties and dangers of his situation, Columbus appeared calm and composed, and displayed those traits of character which proved his qualification for the undertaking; sometimes by assuming a tone of authority, again by soothing his companions, he preserved his ascendancy. Meanwhile they proceeded, and signs of land began to appear. Flocks of birds were observed; a piece of cane freshly cut was taken up; the water had become more shallow. These and other indications satisfied Columbus that land was not far distant; but his unbelieving mariners still demanded to be taken back to Spain; and it required all the energy and tact of which Columbus was master, to obtain their consent to persevere a little longer. Soon afterwards, at night, a light was seen at a distance, giving evidence not only of land, but of inhabitants also. A little after midnight, a gun from the foremost vessel proved the land to be in sight, and when the day dawned, an island was in full view about two leagues to the north. On the morning of the 12th of Tenth month, (Oct.,) about seventy days from the time they left Spain, the boats were manned,

---

Return of Columbus.Amerigo Vespucci.

---

1492 and the Spaniards rowed to the shore, bearing the royal standard. Columbus first set foot on the island, and took possession in the name of the Spanish sovereigns.

The natives, who had assembled in great numbers on the first appearance of the ships, beheld the strangers with astonishment, not being aware of the existence of any country from which they could have arrived. They regarded them as beings of a superior order, who came rather to confer benefits than to despoil them of their land.

The island was called by the natives Guanahani; Columbus gave to it the name of St. Salvador. It is one of the Bahamas, distant about three thousand miles from the Canaries.

Columbus afterwards touched at other islands of the same group, and also discovered Cuba and Hayti, to the latter of which he gave the name of Hispaniola, when the eagerness of his men to return to their native country induced him to make preparations for departure. These islands Columbus supposed to be at no very great distance from India, and, having been reached by a western passage, they were called the West Indies.

The return of Columbus with the news of the discovery, filled the kingdom with astonishment and joy; and he received many proofs of royal favor, proportioned to the magnitude of his services. He made three voyages, and in 1498, he reached South America, at the mouth of the river Orinoco.

Columbus, although the discoverer of America, was prevented from giving a name to the continent. Amerigo Vespucci, a Florentine, visited the country some years afterwards, and on his return published an account of his voyage, with observations on the natural productions of the places which he had visited, the inhabitants and their customs. This was

---

 Cabot discovers the continent.

 The coast explored.
 

---

the first narrative given to the public, and led to the idea that the author was the real discoverer, and the continent, in consequence, received the name of America.

Columbus was also deprived of the rewards promised by Ferdinand and Isabella, and "after having attracted the admiration and applause of the whole civilized world by the brilliancy of his achievements, he was suffered to die in comparative poverty and neglect."

Soon after the return of Columbus from his first voyage, 1497 John Cabot, a Venetian by birth, resident in England, interested Henry VII in plans for discovery. In the year 1497, accompanied by his son Sebastian, he crossed the Atlantic, discovered the Island of Newfoundland, and arrived at the continent in the neighborhood of lat.  $56^{\circ}$ . In the hope of discovering a northwest passage to India, they then sailed to the north a short distance; but returning, cruised along the coast as far south as Florida. It was in consequence of discoveries made during this voyage, that England laid claim to the eastern part of the continent of North America, not considering that the soil was already owned by those who occupied it, and from whom it could only rightfully be obtained by purchase.

Sebastian Cabot, a native of England, pursued the discoveries which his father had begun, and explored the coast from Labrador to the southern boundary of Maryland; but the maps which he made, as well as the records of the voyage, have in some way been lost.

These successful explorations were the means of inciting 1523 other adventurers into the newly discovered world. In the year 1523, Francis I, king of France, sent John Verrazzani, also a native of Florence, on a voyage of discovery to the regions which had excited so much wonder and ambition. He

Florida.

Search for gold.

1523 cast anchor on the shores of North Carolina, where Europeans had never landed, and was received with kindness by the natives, who had not yet learned to fear the white man. Proceeding northward, the coast was explored as far as Nova Scotia.

Voyages to America now became frequent. Some were for fishing, others for trading with the natives, and attempts soon began to be made to plant colonies, many of which were without permanent result.

Florida was discovered under the auspices of Spain, in the year 1512, but no settlement was made for many years. The Spaniards gave the country the name of Florida, from the day on which land was first seen, being that called Easter Sunday, *Pascua Florida*, as well as "from the aspect of the forests, which were then brilliant with a profusion of blossoms, and gay with the fresh verdure of early spring."

1541 In 1541, adventurers from Spain also travelled westward beyond the Mississippi, in search of gold, disturbing the peaceful Indians in their course, taking many prisoners, putting some to death, and enslaving others. One of their battles was so terribly destructive to the Indians, that two thousand of their number are said to have been slain, suffocated or burned. In the course of the march of the Spaniards, natives were met with who were an agricultural people, with fixed places of abode. But neither the happiness, the rights nor even the lives of the Indians appear to have been at all regarded. Nothing having been met with to satisfy the avarice of the adventurers, their leader at length sunk under repeated disappointments, and the remnant of the company left the country, unable to possess themselves of the soil. The Spaniards claimed, under the name of Florida, the whole sea-coast as far as Newfoundland, but as yet had planned no settlement,

---

 French Protestants in Florida.

 Settlement of St. Augustine.
 

---

Under the auspices of France, a colony of Protestants had 1564 sought an asylum in the peninsula of Florida. It had been a cherished desire of Coligny, the leader of the Protestant party in France, to establish a refuge for the Huguenots, and a Protestant French empire in the new world. The first expedition failed. In 1564, he renewed his solicitations with Charles IX for the colonization of Florida. The king approbated the measure. Emigrants were quite ready, for "men still dreamed of rich mines of gold in the interior," and Laudonniere was appointed to conduct them. They established themselves on the banks of the river now called St. Johns. The French were hospitably welcomed by the natives, but soon lost their confidence by unjust dealings with them. In the spring, supplies of every kind were received, with fresh emigrants, and Calvinism appeared about to become established in the inviting regions of Florida. But Spain had no inclination to surrender to France what she considered a portion of her dominions; neither would Philip II, the Spanish king, willingly permit heretics to plant themselves in the neighborhood of his Catholic provinces. An expedition for their extermination was accordingly fitted out in 1565. It had been the intention of Melendez, the Spanish commander, to select a favorable site for a settlement, and when fortifications had been constructed, to attack the French. After sailing along the coast, they discovered a "fine haven and beautiful river," to which they gave the name of St. Augustine. 1565 Having taken possession of the continent in the name of their king, they immediately commenced the foundation of the oldest town now existing in the United States, more than forty years before the first settlement in Virginia. The French colony was soon attacked, the Spaniards gained the ascen-

---

Settlement of Port Royal.

---

dency, and a scene of carnage ensued in which nearly two hundred persons were killed. "A few Catholics were spared ; some mechanics were reserved as slaves ; the rest were massacred." Thus ended the Huguenot settlement, and France resigned all claims to Florida.

In 1540, the French had made an unsuccessful attempt to establish a colony in Canada. For many years afterwards, being involved in difficulties at home, no further discoveries were made by that government. Under the enlightened reign of Henry IV, the spirit of enterprise and the hope of founding colonies in America, revived. An expedition was prepared, and resulted in the establishment, in 1605, of a colony, which they named Port Royal, afterwards called Annapolis, on a harbor in the Bay of Fundy ; difficult of access, but possessing some advantages. Thus was the first French settlement made on the American continent, three years before the founding of Quebec by the same nation, and two years before Jamestown was settled by the English.

In the establishment of all these colonies, the European monarchs seemed to forget that the natives of America had exclusive right to the soil, and appeared to think that they themselves could bestow the government on whomsoever they pleased ; the only claim required being to obtain possession before any other European power.

## CHAPTER II.

### ATTEMPTS AT COLONIZATION.

---

Sir Humphrey Gilbert.

Walter Raleigh.

---

WHILE the fisheries of Newfoundland were frequently 1579 visited, and the minerals of Labrador sought as containing gold, the attention of Sir Humphrey Gilbert was directed towards plans of colonization. He succeeded in obtaining a charter from Queen Elizabeth, and in 1579, sailed from England with a small fleet. But the wreck of one of his vessels, and other difficulties, obliged him, for the time, to relinquish the undertaking.

In 1583, a second expedition was fitted out by Sir 1583 Humphrey Gilbert and his near relative, Walter Raleigh, attended with no other result, however, than the "empty ceremony" of taking possession of the Island of Newfoundland in the queen's name, and conveying home some earth which was supposed to contain silver. On their return, the vessel in which Gilbert sailed was lost at sea, and all on board perished.

This sad incident did not discourage Walter Raleigh. He had taken part in the civil contests between the Huguenots and the Catholics in France, where he received information respecting Florida and the navigation to those regions, and resolved on the establishment of a settlement there, in order to secure to England those countries which had been represented as so delightful. He had no difficulty in obtaining from Elizabeth a patent as ample as that which had been

---

Amadas and Barlow in Virginia.Colony of Roanoke.

---

conferred on Gilbert, and two vessels, well laden with men and provisions, and under the command of Philip Amadas and Arthur Barlow, were soon on their way to the Western World.

1584 They took the usual route by the way of the Canary Islands and the West Indies, and after a short stay, arrived opposite the shores of Carolina in Seventh month, (July,) 1584, a little more than two months after leaving home. They sailed along the coast about one hundred miles in search of a convenient harbor, and landed on the Island of Wocoken, bordering Ocracock Inlet, taking possession in the usual manner, for the Queen of England. The English received a friendly welcome from the natives, whose timidity was overcome by the desire of trading. Having made but a short stay in America, and explored Albemarle and Pamlico Sounds and Roanoke Island, they returned to England, taking with them two of the Indians, who had been induced to accompany them. On their arrival, they gave such glowing descriptions of the country, its beauty, fertility, mildness of climate and serenity of atmosphere, that Elizabeth, as a memorial that this happy discovery was made under a maiden queen, gave it the name of Virginia. Raleigh was knighted as the reward of his enterprise.

1585 Encouraged by this pleasing report, the next year, 1585, Raleigh sent to the shores of Carolina, seven small vessels, with upwards of one hundred persons. Ralph Lane, a man of considerable distinction, was appointed governor of the colony, and Sir Richard Grenville, commander of the fleet. It sailed from Plymouth, accompanied by several men of eminence, among whom were Cavendish, who soon after circumnavigated the globe, and Hariot, a distinguished mathematician. Having arrived on the coast they were in much

## Treatment of the natives.

## Sketch of the Indians.

danger of being wrecked on the point of land, then first called 1585  
Cape Fear, and passing through Ocracock Inlet, the fleet  
reached Roanoke.

Soon after landing, an excursion was made to examine the country. The party was "well entertained of the savages," but a trifling theft having occurred, Grenville ordered an Indian town to be burned, and the standing corn to be destroyed; an act not only wrong in itself, but very impolitic, when the adventurers might, in a great measure, soon be dependent upon the friendship of these sons of the forest. Soon after this, the colonists having landed, the fleet sailed for England; and on their return, took a Spanish prize. The dangers of a passage across the Atlantic at this time were great, as the vessels of Spain and of England felt mutually authorized to attack each other whenever they met.

Hariot, Cavendish and other scientific men who remained in the colony, gave considerable attention to the examination of the country, its soil and productions, with a view of obtaining articles for commerce.

The Indians were divided into numerous small tribes, independent of one another, and are described as too feeble to inspire terror. They were clothed in mantles and aprons of deer-skins. Their towns were small, the largest containing but thirty dwellings. The walls of the houses were made of bark, fastened to stakes.

They were not ignorant of religion, but had a confused belief in the existence of one Supreme Power, in continued existence after death, and in retributive justice in a future life.

The fire-arms of the English filled them with terror; and the Indians began to dread their power. Fearing there were more of these wonderful people coming to kill them and take

---

Treachery of the English.Return of the Colonists,

---

1585 away their lands, they began to devise means to get rid of them.

Lane, governor of the colony, and his associates, infatuated with the desire of obtaining gold and silver, neglected the cultivation of the soil, and listening to the tales of the Indians concerning rich mines which were to be found in the interior, went in pursuit of the hidden treasure. The natives had hoped to destroy the colonists by thus dividing them; but in this they were defeated, as Lane and his associates were soon compelled to return for want of provisions. The Indians next formed the design of leaving their lands unplanted, supposing that famine might drive away these intruders. This plan was not carried into effect, yet the English began to fear that a general conspiracy was preparing. Requesting an audience of Wingina, the most active among the native chiefs, Lane and his attendants were received by him without suspicion, and although no hostile intentions were discovered, the English fell upon the king and his principal followers, putting them to death without mercy.

The colony was now assailed with hostility and famine. The men began to despond, and were longing for the comforts of the homes they had left, when Sir Francis Drake visited them with a fleet of twenty-three vessels, on his return from the West Indies to England. He supplied the governor with a bark containing all necessary provisions for the colony, and induced two sea-captains to remain to complete the surveys along the coast and rivers. Should their sufferings become extreme, the whole company were to return to England. But an unexpected storm destroyed the vessel containing their provisions; and although Drake devised means for supplying them a second time, yet their desire to leave the country was so strong that he yielded to it and conveyed

---

Second colony on Roanoke.

---

them to their native land. The delay of a few days would have obviated this necessity, for a ship, laden with supplies, which had been sent out by Raleigh, then arrived, and in another fortnight Sir Richard Grenville reached there with three well-laden vessels. He left fifteen men on the Island of Roanoke, to retain possession in the name of England, and returned home.

The colonists on the Island of Roanoke, introduced into England the general use of tobacco, a favorite indulgence of the lethargic Indians.

Not discouraged by the unfavorable result of his efforts to establish colonies, Raleigh next determined to send out emigrants with wives and families, who should at once feel their homes to be in the new world, and be induced to devote their attention to agriculture. In 1587, with John White appointed as governor, the fleet set sail, carrying with them an ample provision of the implements of husbandry. They arrived at the Island of Roanoke about midsummer, and endeavored to find the small company left there by Grenville; but of their fate they could learn nothing. "It is most probable that their misconduct had caused their dispersion, perhaps their death; the bones of one person were seen." "Wild deer were reposing in the untenanted houses, and were feeding on the productions which a rank vegetation still forced from the gardens. No vestige of surviving life appeared." 1587

Raleigh had designed that the new settlement should be made on the Chesapeake Bay, but the unwillingness of the commander to explore the coast, compelled them to remain on Roanoke. Here many hardships were encountered. Some of the Indians were friendly; others were fearful of the encroachments of strangers, and killed one of the party.

---

The Island found deserted.

---

This the English determined to revenge, and meeting with a company of Indians whom they took for enemies, the work of destruction was begun before it was discovered that they belonged to a friendly tribe.

Thus with the existence of a mutual spirit of animosity, the colonists felt their dependence on England, and urged the governor to return in the vessel which had brought the emigrants, that he might intercede for supplies. On his departure, he left behind him his daughter, and his granddaughter, Virginia Dare, the first offspring of English parents on American soil.

When he arrived in England, the attention of the nation was excited with the threatened invasion of the great Spanish Armada. Raleigh, however, found means for sending two vessels with supplies for the needy colony. But so great was the desire for Spanish prizes, that the governor and those entrusted with the vessels, neglected the object of their voyage, until one of the vessels being boarded and rifled by a man-of-war, they were both obliged to return to England. And when, after two years' delay, in 1590, White, the governor, returned to search for the colony, the island was found to be  
1590 deserted. "An inscription on the bark of a tree pointed to Croatan; but the season of the year, and the dangers from storms, were pleaded as an excuse for an immediate return. Had the emigrants already perished? or had they escaped with their lives to Croatan, and through the friendship of Manteo, become familiar with the Indians? The conjecture has been hazarded, that the deserted colony, neglected by their own countrymen, were hospitably adopted into the tribe of Hatteras Indians, and became amalgamated with the sons of the forest. This was the tradition of the natives at a later day, and was thought to be confirmed by the physical charac-

---

Gosnold explores part of the New England coast.

---

ter of the tribe, in which the English and the Indian race seemed to have been blended. Raleigh long cherished the hope of discovering some vestiges of their existence; and though he had abandoned the design of colonizing Virginia, he yet sent, at his own charge, and, it is said, at five several times, to search for his liege-men. But it was all in vain; imagination received no help in its attempts to trace the fate of the colony of Roanoke." \*

In 1602, Bartholomew Gosnold conceived the idea of a direct voyage across the Atlantic, instead of the route previously pursued by the way of the Canaries and the West Indies. Sailing in a direct westwardly coast, in accordance with this view, he reached the continent in Massachusetts Bay. Proceeding southward, he discovered Cape Cod, the Elizabeth Islands, and Buzzard's Bay. Upon one of the Elizabeth Islands, the foundations of the first New England colony were intended to be laid; but dread of the Indians, and fears of not obtaining seasonable supplies of food, rendered the company unwilling to be left. When Gosnold, by traffic with the natives, had completed his freight, the whole party returned to England. 1602

The favorable accounts given by Gosnold and his companions, induced others to pursue the discoveries. The reports made by these navigators, confirmed those previously given, and led to a more extensive scheme of colonization than any that had yet been attempted.

"The daring and skill of these earliest adventurers upon the ocean, deserve the highest admiration. The difficulties of crossing the Atlantic were new, and it required the greater courage to encounter hazards which ignorance exaggerated.

---

\* Bancroft.

---

Perils of the voyagers.

---

The character of the prevalent winds and currents was unknown. The possibility of making a direct passage was but gradually discovered. The imagined dangers were infinite; the real dangers exceedingly great. The ships at first employed for discovery, were generally of less than one hundred tons burden; Frobisher sailed in a vessel of but twenty-five tons; two of those of Columbus were without a deck; and so perilous were the voyages deemed, that the sailors were accustomed before embarking, to perform solemn acts of devotion, as if to prepare for eternity. The anticipation of disasters was not visionary. Columbus was shipwrecked twice, and once remained for eight months on an island, without any communication with the civilized world. Hudson was turned adrift in a small boat by a crew whom suffering had rendered mutinous. Willoughby perished with cold," \* while many others were lost at sea.

---

\* Bancroft.

## CHAPTER III.

### COLONIZATION OF VIRGINIA. EARLY HISTORY OF JAMESTOWN.

---

North and South Virginia.

London and Plymouth Companies.

---

WE have hitherto traced navigators on voyages of discovery, and followed men of various nations in their attempts to form permanent settlements in America. But now the period had arrived when these efforts were to be crowned with success, and places of refuge for the oppressed were founded in the western world.

The attention of many persons of intelligence and rank had become directed to Virginia ; and Gosnold, after soliciting the concurrence of his friends for the establishment of a colony, prevailed upon John Smith, an adventurer of remarkable genius and great perseverance, in company with others, to consent to encounter the perils of an expedition. King James I favored the design of enlarging his dominions, and when a company of men of business and men of rank applied to him, he promoted the noble work by readily issuing an ample patent. He divided into two districts that portion of North America extending from the 34th to the 45th degree of latitude. One of these he called South Virginia, the other North Virginia ; and formed two companies for planting colonies within their limits. The southern district he granted to a company resident in London and its vicinity, called the London Company ; the northern district, to a company of merchants and others in the west, styled the Plymouth Company. Each was to own the soil extending fifty miles north and south of its first settlement, so that neither company could establish a colony

---

Departure of emigrants for Virginia.

---

within one hundred miles of the other. The present States of Virginia and North Carolina were comprised within the limits of South Virginia; and North Virginia embraced the New England States. The land was to be held on the condition of homage to the crown, and a rent of one-fifth of the net produce of the gold and silver, and one-fifteenth of copper, from the mines to be discovered. The right of coining money was granted to the colonists. The superintendence of the whole colonial system was confided to a council in England, appointed by the king; the local administration of each colony was entrusted to a council residing within its limits, to be named by the council in England.

“Not an element of popular liberty was introduced into the form of government. Religion was specially to be established according to the doctrine and rites of the Church of England. Kindness to the savages was enjoined, with the use of all proper means for their conversion.” Early in the winter, on the 19th of Twelfth month, (Dec.) 1606, forty-one years after the settlement of St. Augustine, the company of adventurers, consisting of 105 men, set sail for Virginia. Among them there were but twelve laborers,—few mechanics, and no men with families. The instructions to the council, with the names of its members, had been concealed in a box, which was not to be opened until the arrival of the vessels in Virginia; consequently no competent authority existed to repress the disorders which arose during the voyage. Newport, who commanded the ships, being acquainted with the old passage, by the way of the Canaries and the West Indies, lost much time in taking this course. When approaching the coast a severe storm carried the fleet beyond the Island of Roanoke, the original place of destination, into Chesapeake Bay, more than four months after

---

Landing and organization.

Powhatan.

their departure from England. The head lands of the bay received the names of Cape Henry and Cape Charles, in honor of the sons of King James. The country within the capes appeared to the emigrants as delightful as any they had ever beheld. They soon entered the river, called by the natives Powhatan, to which they gave the name of James, from their sovereign. After a search of seventeen days, they selected a site for the infant settlement, about fifty miles above the mouth of the river, and conferred on it the name of Jamestown.\* The emigrants landed on the 13th of Fifth month, (May,) 1607. The box containing the instructions of the council in England, and the names of the local council, having been opened, that body became duly organized, and chose Edward Wingfield for their president. They then, as they had power to do, excluded Captain Smith from their number, on a charge of sedition, his superior abilities having excited their jealousy. He was, however, soon restored, his peculiar talents being required to restrain the insubordination and vices of the colonists.

A few huts were immediately constructed, and a part of the men were soon employed in felling timber, and in providing freight for the ships, while Newport and Smith, with a small party, ascended the James river, and visited the native chief Powhatan, at his principal seat, a village of twelve wigwams, just below the present site of Richmond. The king received them in a friendly manner, but his subjects feared the intrusion of the English.

In the early part of the summer, Captain Newport sailed for England. It was then the English began to realize their situation; in the midst of a wilderness, inhabited only by

---

\* The place is now cultivated as a farm, and the only remaining relic left to mark the site of Jamestown is the ruin of an old meeting-house.

---

Hardships and discouragements.Captain Smith.

---

1607 savages, their number small, and without habits of industry. The provisions brought with them from England were either consumed, or had been spoiled in the long voyage; the heat of the summer they found difficult to support; and so disheartened were they, that very soon after the departure of the fleet, scarcely any of them were able to work. They took no care to provide for their future subsistence, and planted no crops. Famine and sickness ensued. Before fall, one half of their number perished, and among them, Bartholomew Gosnold, the projector of the enterprise, a member of the council, and whose salutary influence in preserving harmony there, was much missed.

The management of affairs was now confided to Smith, whose courage and cheerfulness once more animated the colonists. His talents and personal activity, which, in more prosperous times, had been viewed with jealousy, now, in adversity, excited regard and deference. It required much skill and tact on his part, to defeat the conspiracies which were formed to abandon the country; the danger of which continued to be great until the approach of winter rendered the home navigation perilous, and the fear of famine was removed by provisions received from the Indians, and the abundance of game with which the forests abounded. To explore the country, frequent excursions were made into the interior. In one of these, the party was surprised by the Indians, and all but Smith put to death. His life was preserved through self-possession. Showing them a pocket compass, he interested them in the explanation of its properties; and in endeavoring to give them some general ideas of the nature of the universe, and the form of the earth, he excited their admiration. They allowed him to send a letter to Jamestown. The effect of the little paper increased their astonishment. He was evidently

---

 His return from captivity.

---

 Passion for gold.

a being of a superior order, but they were at a loss whether to regard him as a friend, or to dread him as an enemy. He was conducted to Powhatan, who would have put him to death, but for the intercession of his daughter, Pocahontas, an interesting girl of about ten or twelve years of age.

The Indians now endeavored to secure the friendship of Smith, and gain his assistance in the destruction of the colony at Jamestown. By his wisdom and prudence, he succeeded in averting their design; when they allowed him to leave with mutual promises of friendship. Thus the captivity of Smith was the means of establishing a peaceful intercourse between the colony and the Indians, and was of other advantage, as he had made himself acquainted with the country, and had gained some knowledge of the language and manners of the natives.

On his return, Smith found the colony reduced to forty 1608 persons; most of whom were making preparations to leave the country. With great difficulty he induced them to relinquish their design. In the spring, Newport arrived at Jamestown, with 120 emigrants and a quantity of provisions. The hopes of the colonists revived, but the character of those who had now joined them was not such as to add much strength to the settlement, being chiefly "vagabond gentlemen and goldsmiths," who, instead of attending to the cultivation of the soil as a means of their subsistence, only fostered a passion for gold. They fancied they had discovered grains of this metal in a glittering earth found near Jamestown, and notwithstanding the remonstrances of Smith, the energies of the colonists were at once directed to collecting this worthless earth and sending it to England.

The consequences were soon severely felt, in famine and disease. In the hope of obtaining some relief by opening an

---

Arrival of fresh emigrants.

---

New charter.

---

intercourse with more remote Indian tribes, as well as to explore the Chesapeake and its tributaries, Smith, with a few companions, during the summer of 1608, and with a scanty supply of food, in a small open boat, made two voyages, which occupied three months, sailing nearly three thousand miles. He not only surveyed the bay, and explored most of its rivers, but penetrating the country, established friendly relations with some native tribes. The map which he prepared and sent to the London Company was a correct delineation of the country which he explored. Although the colonists had been unwilling to submit to the judgment and authority of Smith, yet three days after his return he was again chosen president of the council, and habits of industry and subordination began to prevail.

About this time Newport again arrived with a second supply of provisions and seventy emigrants. But "experience had not taught the Company to engage suitable persons for Virginia," and Smith wrote to them, "When you send again, I entreat you rather send but thirty carpenters, husbandmen, gardeners, fishermen, blacksmiths, masons, and diggers of trees' roots, well provided, than one thousand of such as we have."

1609 After the departure of the ships, Smith employed his authority to enforce industry, requiring the people to work six hours in the day. Yet so unskilful were they in agriculture, and so little land had been cultivated, that it was still necessary to depend in part on the Indians for food. The health of the colony improved; only seven died this season, out of a population of two hundred.

At this period, a new charter was granted to the Company, conferring on them additional privileges, and bestowing powers which had been heretofore reserved to the king.

---

New emigrant's.	Disorder.	Smith returns to England.	Sufferings.
-----------------	-----------	---------------------------	-------------

---

The council in Virginia had been abolished, and the gov- 1609  
ernment vested in a London council, who were empowered to  
nominate a governor in Virginia, to carry their orders into  
execution. To this important station, Lord Delaware was  
appointed ; but as he could not immediately leave England,  
the authority was temporarily delegated to others.

The Company now fitted out nine ships, conveying five  
hundred emigrants, in company with the officers appointed to  
assume the charge of the government.

A violent hurricane separated the vessel in which these  
officers were embarked from the rest of the fleet. The re-  
mainder arrived safely at Jamestown. Again, however, were  
the new comers such as should properly have remained at  
home, being more likely to ruin a colony than to assist in  
raising one. They assumed to themselves the power of dis-  
posing of the government, and all was disorder and confu-  
sion. But Smith hesitated not what course to pursue, and  
declared that his authority would only terminate with the  
arrival of those appointed to supersede him. He imprisoned  
the leaders of the sedition, and restored regularity and obe-  
dience.

Soon after Smith received a severe wound by an accidental  
explosion of gunpowder ; and not being able to obtain relief  
in Virginia, returned to England for surgical aid. At his  
departure, there were nearly five hundred persons in the col-  
ony ; but these, no longer restrained by his energy and pru-  
dence, abandoned themselves to idleness. Their provisions  
were soon consumed ; the Indians refused further supplies,  
and in six months their number was reduced to sixty, by " in-  
dolence, vice and famine." The sufferings of the settlers  
during this period, were so great, that it was distinguished  
for many years, as the " Starving Time ;" and the small

Relief.

Lord Delaware.

number that survived must also have perished before many days, had not relief arrived as it did, and that from a source altogether unexpected. The officers and others who had sailed from England in the missing vessel, arrived at Jamestown on the 24th of Fifth month, (May,) 1610. They had been wrecked on the Bermudas, yet none of them had perished, and a considerable part of their provision was saved. Having constructed two vessels, they embarked for Virginia, hoping there to join a prosperous colony. The relief which they were able to afford the survivors, though it saved them from immediate death, was only temporary. Nothing, therefore, appeared to remain, but that they should all abandon the colony, and seek relief from their countrymen, employed in the fisheries at Newfoundland. With a small supply of provisions for the voyage, they set sail, but before they reached the mouth of the river, they were met by Lord Delaware, who had arrived on the coast with emigrants and supplies. He prevailed upon them to return to Jamestown. The mildness and assiduity of the Governor, restored order and contentment, and the colonists performed their task with alacrity. At the commencement of every day, they received their allowance of food. Comfort was returning. The houses were warm and secure, covered above with strong boards, and matted on the inside like the Indian wigwams.

But the wise administration of Lord Delaware was of short continuance ; ill health soon obliged him to leave the country. There were at this time about two hundred men in the colony, but the declining health and departure of one so well qualified to govern, cast a gloom over Jamestown. In the mean time Sir Thomas Dale had been sent out with liberal supplies. On his arrival he took charge of the government, and wrote to the council, informing them of

## New settlements.

## Marriage of Pocahontas.

the small number and weakness of the colonists, but speaking very highly of the country. In consequence, they were soon gratified and delighted by the arrival of Sir Thomas Gates, with six ships and three hundred emigrants, and a plentiful supply of provisions. Gates immediately assumed the government, amidst the thanksgivings of the colonists for this unexpected relief.

Encouraged by these reinforcements, the English extended 1613 their plantations along the banks of the river, and several new settlements were formed. The rights of the Indians were, however, but little respected.

During this year, a treaty of peace was concluded with the Powhatans and with the Chickahominies, both of them powerful and warlike tribes. The immediate cause of this, was the marriage of Pocahontas with John Rolfe, a young and respectable planter, under the following circumstances :—

A party of the colonists, while on a trading voyage to the Potomac, visited Pocahontas, and persuaded her to go on board their vessel, where she was respectfully treated, but detained and carried to Jamestown. The captain presumed that the possession of Pocahontas would give the English an ascendancy over Powhatan, who was known to be much attached to his daughter. In this, however, he was disappointed. Powhatan was indignant at this instance of treachery in the English, and offered a ransom for his daughter; but he would not consent to any terms of peace, until she was restored.

But Rolfe winning the favor of Pocahontas desired her in marriage, and to the delight of the native chieftain, the nuptials were accomplished. The consequence of this marriage was not only peace with her father, but with all the tribes who stood in awe of his power. Having been instructed in

---

Argall sent against the French.

---

the English language, Pocahontas sailed with her husband to England, where she was much caressed and admired for her virtues and loveliness, rendered the more beautiful by her childlike simplicity of character. She died when about to return to America, leaving one son, from whom some of the most respectable families in Virginia trace their descent.

1613 The colony seemed now on a permanent basis, and the English were determined to establish for themselves exclusively the right of territory to forty-five degrees of latitude. To prevent any encroachments, Capt. Argall was sent with a naval force to drive the French from the settlements they had begun in Acadia, now Nova Scotia. He accomplished the object of the expedition, and on his return visited a Dutch trading establishment, within the port of New York, to assert the sovereignty of England.

In relation to this expedition, Bancroft remarks: "This first contest between France and England for colonial possessions in America, was, in dignity, not superior to the acts of marauders and pirates; the struggle was destined to increase, till the strife for acres, which neither nation could cultivate, kindled a war that spread throughout the globe."

An important change, and attended with the most wholesome results, took place in the manner of holding property. Agreeably to the directions of the king, given at the time of the first emigration to Jamestown, the land had hitherto been possessed by the colonists in common, every man being required to work a certain number of hours every day, and all sharing equally the produce, which was deposited in public stores. So long as industry had been without its special reward, labor had been reluctantly performed, and want had as necessarily ensued. Under the administration of Dale, who

Apportionment of land.	Tobacco.	First Colonial Assembly.
------------------------	----------	--------------------------

on the return of Gates to England, had been again entrusted with the government, a few acres of land were assigned to every man as his private property, to plant for his own use ; a portion of his time still being devoted to fill the public stores. This new regulation gave so powerful an impulse to industry, that an additional assignment was afterward made of fifty acres to every individual, and the plan of working in common, to fill the public stores, was entirely abandoned.

The attention of the colonists now became much turned towards the cultivation of tobacco. The appetite for this noxious and naturally repulsive plant, had greatly increased in England, and the settlers supposed that it might be raised at a large profit. Their whole energies were accordingly applied in this direction. Another scarcity of food was the consequence, and to obtain relief they again plundered the ill-treated Indians, and revived all their former animosity.

Since the year 1611, the colony had been governed by martial law, which was administered by Argall, deputy governor, with so much rigor as to excite universal discontent, and to check emigration. The council in England, listening to the complaints of the Virginians, appointed Geo. Yeardley governor, and instructed him to inquire into and redress their grievances. He arrived in 1619, and commenced a series of wise and benevolent acts. Martial law gradually disappeared. 1619 The power of the governor had been limited by a council, who were to redress any wrongs that he might commit. The people of the colony were now admitted to a share in the legislation, by the institution of a colonial assembly, composed of the governor, his council and two representatives from each of the boroughs. This assembly, the first representative body convened in America, met at Jamestown in Sixth month, (June,) 1619 ; and their deliberations were marked with judgment.

---

 Prosperous results.

 General Assembly established.
 

---

1620 Thirteen years after the first landing at Jamestown, when eight thousand pounds had been expended by the Company, there were in the colony but six hundred persons, men, women and children. Emigrants had arrived frequently from England, but nearly all were men, who, in the spirit of adventure, came for the purpose of obtaining wealth, intending eventually to return. But the dawn of civil freedom in the establishment of a representative government had a most happy effect on the minds of the colonists. They now began to regard Virginia as their country, and ninety young women were induced by the Company to venture across the Atlantic, where they were assured of a welcome. These were married to the planters, who, by the formation of domestic ties, became more attached to their homes. The following year sixty more were sent out; the cost of their passage, as well as that of the others, being defrayed by the colonists. Within three years thirty-five hundred individuals emigrated to Virginia.

1621 The colonial assembly convened by Gov. Yeardley, although approved by the London Company, had never received their formal sanction. In the summer of 1621 a written constitution was established. A governor and council were to be appointed by the Company; a general assembly was to meet yearly, to be composed of the members of the council, and of two burgesses from each of the boroughs, to be chosen by their respective inhabitants. This assembly had the power to enact laws, but subject to a negative from the governor, and the approval of the Company in England. It was also enacted that no orders of the London Company should be binding unless ratified by the assembly. Trial by jury was granted to the colonists. This constitution was brought over by Sir Francis Wyatt, who had been appointed to succeed Gov. Yeardley.

## Introduction of slavery.

## Encroachments of the English.

It was in 1620 that the traffic in slaves commenced in the British American colonies ; and the foundation was thus laid of a system, opposed to the principles of the gospel, abhorrent to every feeling of justice and humanity, and wholly inconsistent with the spirit of our republican institutions ; which is now sapping the prosperity of the whole country, and retarding, in an especial manner, the improvement of those States where it exists. In the summer of this year, a Dutch man-of-war sailed up the James river, and landed twenty negroes, who were sold into slavery. There was at that time a great demand for laborers, yet the laws of the colony discouraged the increase of slavery by taxation, and the trade was for many years chiefly carried on by the Dutch.

The cultivation of cotton was introduced in 1621. The colony was then flourishing. But this state of things did not long continue. Quarrels with the Indians had already occurred, and a war soon broke out. From the first landing in Virginia, the power of the natives had been despised. They were unacquainted with the use of fire-arms, and were nowhere collected in large villages, but dwelt in detached companies, consisting of not more than sixty in each. The population did not exceed about one inhabitant to a square mile. Although no especial pains had been taken to secure their friendship, the settlers felt no fear, and extended their plantations along the banks of the river. 1621.

Powhatan after the marriage of his daughter had remained the firm friend of the English, but he was now dead ; and his younger brother, who succeeded him, did not feel the same friendly disposition. The English were encroaching more and more upon their lands. Their numbers were constantly increasing by new arrivals. The Indians were subjected to injuries which their revengeful dispositions could illy bear.

---

Massacre by the Indians.War.

---

1622 There seemed to them but one way of maintaining their rights, and that was the extermination of the English. This they knew could only be accomplished by a general surprise. The plan was therefore conducted with the utmost secrecy. When all was prepared in the spring of 1622, the Indians simultaneously commenced the attack upon distant villages, extending one hundred and forty miles on both sides of the river, and sparing none. In one hour, three hundred and forty-seven persons, men, women and children, were massacred; and had it not been that the conspiracy was revealed by a converted Indian to one whom he wished to save, the whole colony might have been exterminated. Jamestown and the nearest settlements were thus preserved. By this massacre the number of settlements was reduced from eighty to six or seven; the colonists became dispirited, agriculture was neglected, and sickness prevailed in consequence of the people crowding together. Some of the settlers returned to England. In that country the intelligence of these misfortunes excited strong sympathy, and new supplies and assistance were promptly despatched.

Plans of revenge were soon formed, and a war of extermination followed, in which the whites, after destroying many of their enemies, obliged the remainder to retire far into the wilderness. The fields and villages of the Indians were now appropriated by the colonists. But nothing less than the destruction of the Indians, could satisfy the English; and this could only be effected by allaying their fears and inducing them to return to their old homes. Offers of peace were made, which the Indians accepted, and once more resumed their former occupations. In 1623, the inhabitants of the different plantations, made a sudden attack upon the adjoining savages, murdering those who came in their way, and driving the rest into the woods.

---

Dissolution of the London Company.

---

In 1624 the attack was repeated. In 1630, schemes of vengeance were still meditated, and the colonists were unwilling to conclude a peace on any terms. During this war, so many of the Indians were destroyed, either by the hands of the whites or by hunger in the wilderness, that some of the tribes nearest to the English settlements, were entirely extirpated. We shall see, in the early history of Pennsylvania, where a different course was pursued towards the aborigines, that these repeated barbarities might have been avoided, and peace and harmony fully maintained with the untaught sons of the forest. 1630

The difficulties and disasters to which the people of Virginia had been so frequently subjected, attracted the attention of King James. Desiring to recover the influence he had lost, by surrendering the government of the colony into other hands, he made these troubles a pretext for an examination into the affairs of the Company. The result was, that he attributed the want of commercial success and prosperity, to mismanagement by the corporation, and revoked the charter which he himself had given. The London Company thereby became dissolved, after expending large sums of money, which had as yet yielded no return.

The king now entrusted the control of the colony to a governor and twelve councillors, to be appointed by himself, and to be governed by his instructions. These imposed restrictions on the trade of the colony, which much retarded its prosperity. With regard to tobacco, now become the staple production, it was required that all raised in Virginia, should be sent to England, and there delivered to agents authorized to sell it.

The death of the king, which occurred in 1625, prevented the completion of a code of laws designed for the government of the colony.

## Exactions of Charles.

## Tyranny of Harvey.

1626

Charles I inherited the disposition of his father, and during the early part of his reign, the liberties of the colonists were greatly infringed. In 1626, he reappointed Sir George Yeardley to the office of governor, who, in conjunction with a council of twelve and a secretary, was to exercise supreme authority; and was enjoined to conform to instructions, which might, from time to time, be received from the king. Yeardley and his council carried out the views of their sovereign, and thus the representatives of the people were entirely prevented from enacting laws for their own government.

The next step of Charles was to monopolize the profits of the industry of the planters. With this view, a proclamation was issued, prohibiting the sale of tobacco to any person but commissioners appointed by himself.

The staple of Virginia thus sunk in value, while landed property was rendered insecure by grants made by Charles, which were not only of great extent, but, from imperfect acquaintance with the country, were often made to include districts already occupied and planted.

1627

Sir John Harvey succeeded Yeardley in the government of the colony. He had already rendered himself unpopular in Virginia by his political views, and after his appointment, he rigorously enforced every act of power, and paid no attention to the remonstrances of the people. The colonists submitted a long time to his tyranny. At length they seized him and sent him a prisoner to England, accompanied by two commissioners appointed to represent their grievances to the king. These, however, met with no favor from Charles, who considered the measure of the colonists an act of rebellion against his authority. Without hearing the charges of the commissioners, he sent Harvey back to Virginia, invested with his former powers.

---

 General Assembly re-established.

 Restrictions on commerce.
 

---

Although Charles thus asserted his authority in Virginia, he was not insensible to the grievances of the colonists, and soon after removed the governor. He named as a successor, Sir William Berkeley, a man of great abilities, prudent, virtuous and popular. Under his administration, the colony continued for many years prospering and increasing. 1639

The instructions of Berkeley were, in many respects, similar to those of his predecessor, yet he was empowered to declare that in all its affairs, civil as well as ecclesiastical, the colony was to be governed according to the laws of England. Representatives of the people were to be elected, who, in conjunction with the governor and council, were to form a general assembly, and to possess supreme legislative authority. Berkeley was directed to establish courts of justice, in which all causes should be decided agreeably to the forms of procedure in England.

The original plan of Charles to secure to himself the advantages arising from the sale of the productions of the colonists, was not altered. All commerce with foreign nations was therefore prohibited, and Berkeley was required to take a bond from the master of every vessel which sailed from Virginia, to land his cargo in some part of the king's dominions in Europe. Notwithstanding these restrictions, the colony advanced rapidly.

Tobacco was at this time generally used instead of coin. Great inconvenience resulted from the adoption of an article as currency, which fluctuated in price. Debts had been contracted to be paid in tobacco, and when the staple rose in value, in consequence of laws restricting its culture, the assembly enacted that no man need pay more than two-thirds of his debt.

## Hostilities with the Indians.

## Peace.

1644 Hostilities with the Indians had continued since the massacre of 1622, and the assembly would still suffer no terms of peace to be made. It was not an unfrequent practice to assault them by sudden marches against their settlements. In 1644, the natives resolved upon one more attempt to destroy the colony. They believed that by the destruction of the cattle and the fields of corn belonging to the English, they should be able to famish the remainder of the colonists whom they could not succeed in killing by surprise. But they had hardly commenced the massacre, before they began to fear the consequences of their brutality, and becoming intimidated, fled to a distance. About three hundred persons had been killed. The war was now vigorously conducted. The Indian king was made prisoner, and died in captivity.

The English, being again on their guard, felt little apprehension. Though the warfare continued, and the hunter and the solitary traveller often fell victims, no further attack was made on the colony.

1646 In the fall of 1646, peace was established, with the conditions of submission and a cession of lands by the natives, who now withdrew from the settlements. They have continued to retreat, as the white inhabitants have increased, until the names of the rivers and mountains have become their only memorial in Virginia.

The colonists now enjoyed a state of prosperity, and ships with emigrants were frequently arriving. Their commerce had increased so much, that in 1648 upwards of thirty ships were engaged in trade with New England and different parts of Europe. The population was 20,000.

When the disputes commenced between Charles I and the parliament, Virginia espoused the cause of the king ; and

---

Submission to the Commonwealth.

---

after his execution, recognized his son, not because they loved monarchy, but because they cherished the liberties Charles had bestowed upon them.

When the parliament had gained the ascendancy in England, it did not long permit its authority to be denied by the British colonies in America. A numerous squadron was sent to reduce the Virginians to submission; and at the same time a law was established prohibiting the intercourse between Virginia and the other colonies. The liberties of Englishmen were offered in case of adherence to the commonwealth, with a general pardon for their former loyalty. In case of resistance, war was threatened.

Under these circumstances the Virginians gave up all thoughts of opposition, and contended only for the freedom of their institutions, which was granted them, and the government continued to be entrusted to their own assembly. Although Episcopacy had been the religion of the colony, there were Puritans who had been left unmolested. When religion subsequently became a political question in England, conformity to the establishment was enforced in Virginia, by disfranchisement and exile. But under the commonwealth, religious liberty was again allowed.

1652

## CHAPTER IV.

### STATE OF THE CONTINENT WHEN FIRST VISITED BY EUROPEANS. SKETCH OF THE NORTH AMERI- CAN INDIANS.

---

Manner of subsistence.

Division into tribes, &c.

---

WHEN the continent of North America was first visited by Europeans, it was, with little exception, one unbroken forest.

In the woods, the natives gathered nuts and fruit of different kinds; and in small patches which had been cleared by means of fire and edged tools made of stone, they cultivated, among other vegetables, some now in common use, such as maize or Indian corn, pease, beans, pumpkins, etc. ; also some bulbous roots, which they dried, and used as bread ; and flax and hemp, equal in quality to that used in Great Britain. Their main dependence for food was on the chase and fisheries. Their only drink, before their intercourse with white men, was water.

The North American Indians, although divided into distinct tribes, differing in some respects from one another, and often at enmity, may be considered as one class, possessing in common most traits of character. Every town or village had a sachem or chief. Each tribe included a number of villages, with one chief over the whole. A nation or confederacy consisted of several tribes under one grand sachem, to whom all the others were subject. Their records were kept by strings of wampum. Their councils were orderly conducted, and their treaties, usually secured by smoking the calumet, or pipe of peace, were kept inviolate. The Indian was firm and

Their religion.

Dress.

faithful in friendship, strongly susceptible to kindness, but implacable as an enemy. Time among them was noted by the moon and sun.

Their religion was very simple. They worshipped a Great Spirit, whose power they believed to be infinite, and to whom their victories in battle, and their success in the chase, were ascribed. They also believed in an inferior spirit, whom they regarded as the author of all their misfortunes; and in a future state, where the pleasures of this life are enjoyed in greater perfection.

Their dress consisted of furs. One piece was fastened around the waist, another was thrown over the shoulders. They wore leggings of skins fitted to the shape of the leg, the seams being ornamented with porcupine quills. Their faces were often painted, generally red. Ornaments were worn in the nose and ears. The men sometimes plucked the hair from the head, excepting a round spot on the crown, of about two inches in diameter. To this they fastened large plumes, with quills of ivory or silver, and in some cases, an entire skin of a hawk, stuffed and with extended wings, has been thus worn. The dress of a warrior was very profuse in ornament, and was often a record of his deeds.

In rude and barbarous stages of society, where education is not known, and the mind is uncultivated, where the blessings of Christianity are experienced but in a small degree, we are not surprised at any of these things; but as nations advance in civilization and in religion, we look for less attention to the decoration of the person, and more to the cultivation of the mind and heart.

Their wigwams or huts were simply constructed, and were of various forms and dimensions. Some were made with long poles fixed in the ground, brought together and fastened at the

---

 Their dwellings.

---

 Wild animals of the country.
 

---

top, and covered with bark, or with mats made of long rushes. They were sometimes lined with embroidered mats. Others were built with the logs of whole trees, and covered with palmetto leaves; the door of each was usually a loose mat. The dwellings of the Indians have been stated to have been not much inferior to the houses of the common people in England, at a little earlier period.\* Mats on the floor, or the skins of wild beasts, formed their beds. The fire was kindled in the centre of the room, and the smoke escaped through the door. They had neither chair nor stool, but sat on the ground, commonly with their elbows on their knees. Iron was unknown to them. Their domestic utensils were of stone or wood, and fire was produced by continued friction.

The wild animals with which the country abounded were chiefly the following : — The Moose, which existed in New England and in the region of the Great Lakes; the Reindeer, found in great numbers in the northern regions; the Elk, which ranged at that time over most of the continent, but is now abundant only in the far west; the common Deer, found throughout the country between Canada and the Orinoco; the Black Bear, extending over the whole of North America; the Polar Bear, only in the polar regions; the Grizzly Bear, perhaps the most formidable and ferocious of all wild animals, now existing west of the Rocky Mountains, although there is some

---

\* The style of living of the aborigines of our country was not very dissimilar to that of the English in the reign of Queen Mary. At that time, according to Hume, "the dwellings of people, even of considerable estate, were of plank, badly put together, and chimneys were almost unknown in England. The fire was kindled by the wall, and the smoke found its way through the roof, door or windows. The furniture was appropriate. The people slept on straw pallets, having a log under their heads for a pillow, and almost every domestic utensil was of wood."

## Wild animals.

## Employments of the Indians.

reason to believe it was formerly found in the Atlantic regions ; the Wolf, then extending over the most of North America ; the Cougar, improperly called Panther, the largest animal of the cat kind in North America, sometimes designated the American Lion, formerly distributed over the warm and temperate regions ; and the Bison, commonly called the Buffalo, formerly found throughout the whole territory of the United States, excepting east of the Alleghanies. The buffalo is now mostly confined to the wilds of the West, where herds of them consisting of some thousands are sometimes seen together blackening the great plains as far as the eye can view, and in the night producing a noise by their movements, resembling distant thunder. The smaller and less important wild animals were chiefly the fox, otter, skunk, badger, raccoon, weasel, squirrel, muskrat, marmot or woodchuck, marten, beaver, opossum, dog, cat, mink and the mole, shrew, mouse and bat.

In the choice of a husband, the woman was controlled by her father. To him the suitor made a present, usually of game. Approbation being obtained, which was seldom refused to an expert hunter, a present was made to the woman, the acceptance of which signified consent. The match was then concluded, without any ceremony.

The Indian men did little but engage in the chase or in war. When not employed in this way, or in the preparation of things necessary to these exercises, they idled away their time. On woman they depended for the necessary domestic labor, thinking this unworthy of men. Her industry raised the corn and vegetables for food. She assisted in the construction of the canoes, and in the building of the wigwams, and, when journeying, carried them on her shoulders. When a wife died, the husband did not weep for her. According to the savages tears do not become men.

## Children.

## Implements of war.

The young children were provided for in a very summary manner. Their cradle consisted of a board to which they were laced after being wrapped in furs. This was hung up in the wigwams, or set in a corner, and often attached to the back of the mother, who carried her child about in this way. The erect stature of the Indian is doubtless in part owing to this mode of treatment.

The Indians had not the wholesale means of destroying one another which men in a civilized state have invented. Their arms, previously to their intercourse with Europeans, were bows and arrows, war clubs and tomahawks. Their boats were formed by hollowing out a large tree.

Every Indian was the protector of his own rights. When these were invaded, an opportunity for revenge was sought. Atoning presents were the signal for peace. A belt, painted red, or a bundle of bloody sticks, was a token of defiance; a hatchet, painted red, sent to the nation they were about to attack, was a declaration of war.\*

The Indians were distinguished for their oratory. In their public addresses they were animated, bold, eloquent and often pathetic.†

---

\* Most of the Indians retain, to a great extent, their former mode of life. Some few tribes and parts of others have become partially civilized. Many of them have been taught to subsist by agriculture.

† THE SPEECH OF RED JACKET, THE SENECA CHIEF, TO  
A MISSIONARY.

"Friend and Brother,—It was the will of the Great Spirit that we should meet together this day. He orders all things, and he has given us a fine day for our council. He has taken his garment from before the sun, and caused it to shine with brightness on us. Our eyes are opened, that we see clearly; our ears are unstopped, that we have been able to hear distinctly the words that you have spoken; for all these favors we thank the Great Spirit, and him only.

"Brother, this council fire was kindled by you; it was at your re-

---

Concluding remarks.

---

Such was the country, and such were the inhabitants, when the first permanent English settlement was made. Where

quest that we came together at this time; we have listened with attention to what you have said; you requested us to speak our minds freely; this gives us great joy, for we now consider that we stand upright before you, and can speak what we think; all have heard your voice, and all speak to you as one man; our minds are agreed.

“Brother, you say you want an answer to your talk before you leave this place. It is right you should have one, as you are a great distance from home, and we do not wish to detain you; but we will first look back a little and tell you what our fathers have told us, and what we have heard from the white people.

“Brother, listen to what we say. There was a time when our forefathers owned this great land. Their seats extended from the rising to the setting sun. The Great Spirit had made it for the use of the Indians. He had created the buffalo, the deer and other animals for food. He had made the bear and the beaver, and their skins served us for clothing. He had scattered them over the country and taught us how to take them. He had caused the earth to produce corn for bread; all this he had done for his red children, because he loved them.

“If we had any disputes about hunting grounds, they were generally settled without the shedding of much blood; but an evil day came upon us; your forefathers crossed the great waters, and landed on this island. Their numbers were small; they found tribes, and not enemies; they told us they had fled from their own country for fear of wicked men, and come here to enjoy their religions. They asked for a small seat; we took pity on them, granted their request, and they sat down among us. We gave them corn and meat; they gave us poison in return.

“The white people had now found our country; tidings were carried back and more came among us, yet we did not fear them, we took them to be friends; they called us brothers; we believed them and gave them a larger seat. At length their numbers had greatly increased; they wanted more land; they wanted our country. Our eyes were opened, and our minds became uneasy. Wars took place; Indians were hired to fight against Indians; and many of our people were destroyed. They also brought strong liquors among us; it was strong and powerful, and has slain thousands.

“Brother, our seats were once large, and yours were very small; you have now become a great people, and we have scarcely a place left to

---

Concluding remarks.

---

are the aborigines now ? Melted away at the approach of the white man. The record of their history is a melancholy tale.

---

spread our blankets ; you have got our country, but are not satisfied ; you want to force your religion upon us.

“ Brother, continue to listen. You say that you are sent to instruct us how to worship the Great Spirit agreeable to his mind, and if we do not take hold of the religion you white people teach, we shall be unhappy hereafter. You say that you are right and we are lost ; how do you know this to be true ? We understand that your religion is written in a book ; if it was intended for us as well as you, why has not the Great Spirit given it to us, and not only to us, but why did he not give to our forefathers the knowledge of that book, with the means of understanding it rightly ? We only know what you tell us about it ; how shall we know when to believe, being so often deceived by the white people ?

“ Brother, you say there is but one way to worship and serve the Great Spirit ; if there is but one religion, why do you white people differ so much about it ? Why not all agree, as you can all read the book ?

“ Brother, we do not understand these things ; we are told that your religion was given to your forefathers, and has been handed down from father to son. We also have a religion which was given to our forefathers, and has been handed down to us, their children. We worship that way. It teaches us to be thankful for all the favors we receive ; to love each other, and to be united ; we never quarrel about religion.

“ Brother, the Great Spirit has made us all ; but he has made a great difference between his white and red children ; he has given us a different complexion, and different customs ; to you he has given the arts ; to these he has not opened our eyes ; we know these things to be true. Since he has made so great a difference between us in other things, why may we not conclude that he has given us a different religion, according to our understanding ? The Great Spirit does right ; he knows what is best for his children ; we are satisfied.

“ Brother, we do not wish to destroy your religion, or take it from you ; we only want to enjoy our own.

“ Brother, you say that you have not come to get our land or our money, but to enlighten our minds. I will now tell you that I have been at your meetings, and saw you collecting money from the meeting. I cannot tell what this money was intended for, but suppose it

---

Specimens of Indian oratory.

---

was for your minister; and if we should conform to your way of thinking perhaps you may want some from us.

"Brother, we are told that you have been preaching to white people in this place; these people are our neighbors; we are acquainted with them; we will wait a little while and see what effect your preaching has upon them."

SPEECH OF META, CHIEF OF THE POTTOWATTOMIES,  
AT CHICAGO, BEFORE GOVERNOR CASS, AGAINST  
SELLING LAND.

"My father, we have listened to what you have said. We shall now retire to our camps and consult on it. You will hear nothing more from us at present. We met you here to-day because we had promised it, to tell you our minds, and what we have agreed upon among ourselves.

"You will listen to us with a good mind, and believe what we say. You know that we first came to this country a long time ago, and when we sat ourselves down upon it, we met with a great many hardships and difficulties. Our country then was very large, but it has dwindled away to a small spot, and you wish to purchase that. This has caused us to reflect much upon what is going forward. You know your children. Since you first came among them, they have listened to your words with an attentive ear, and have always hearkened to your counsels whenever you have had a proposal to make to us. Whenever you have had a favor to ask of us, we have always lent a favorable ear, and our invariable answer has been 'Yes.' This you know. A long time has passed since we first came on our lands, and our old people have sunk into their graves. They had sense. We are all young and foolish, and do not wish to do anything that they would not approve, were they living. We are fearful we shall offend their spirits if we sell our lands; and we are fearful we shall offend you if we do not sell them. This has caused us great perplexity of thought, because we have consulted among ourselves and do not know how we can part with the land. Our country was given to us by the Great Spirit, who gave it to us to hunt upon, to make our cornfields upon, to lie upon, and to make our beds upon when we die; he would never forgive us, should we bargain it away. When you first spoke to us for lands at St. Mary's, we said we had a little, and agreed to sell you a piece of it; but we told you we could spare no more. Now you ask us again. You are never satisfied! We have sold you a great tract of land already; but it is not enough! We sold it to you for the

---

Specimens of Indian oratory.

---

benefit of your children, to farm and to live upon. We have now but little left. We shall want it all for ourselves. We know not how long we may live, and we wish to have some lands for our children to hunt upon. You are gradually taking away our hunting grounds. Your children are driving us before them. We are growing uneasy. What lands you have, you may retain forever; but we shall sell no more. You think, perhaps, that I speak in passion; but my heart is good towards you. I speak like one of your own children. I am an Indian, a red skin, and live by hunting and fishing, but my country is already too small; and I do not know how to bring up my children, if I give it all away. We sold you a fine tract of land at St. Mary's. We said to you then, it was enough to satisfy your children, and the last we should sell; and we thought it would be the last you would ask for. We have now told you what we had to say. It is what was determined on in a council among ourselves; and what I have spoken is the voice of my nation. On this account all our people have come here to listen to me; but do not think we have a bad opinion of you. Where would we get a bad opinion of you? We speak to you with a good heart, and the feelings of a friend. You are acquainted with this piece of land—the country we live in. Shall we give it up? Take notice, it is a small piece of land, and if we give it away, what will become of us?

“The Great Spirit who has provided it for our use, allows us to keep it, to bring up our young men and support our families. We should incur his anger if we bartered it away. If we had more land you should get more; but our land has been wasting away ever since the white people became our neighbors, and we have now hardly enough to cover the bones of our tribes. You are in the midst of your red children. What is due to us in money, we wish, and I will receive it at this place, and we want nothing more. We shall shake hands with you. Behold our warriors, our women and children; take pity on us and on our words.”

## CHAPTER V.

### VIRGINIA. (*Continued.*)

---

Character of emigrants.

Laws relating to the colored race.

---

THE population of Virginia was of a different character from that of the other English settlements. The colonists were not refugees from persecution, but came out under the auspices of nobility, and brought with them an attachment to monarchy, as well as to the established religion of England.

There existed a marked division of society into two classes, to a degree unknown in any northern colony. Fifty acres of land had been allowed to the planters, for every individual whom they transported at their own charge. Thus a body of large proprietors arose, who formed an aristocracy. General education was not encouraged. The diffusion of knowledge being confined to the higher classes, these distinctions in society became stronger and more obvious.

Many of the lower classes had immigrated, bound to a temporary servitude. The liberation of these was secured at the expiration of their term of service. Great severity existed in the laws towards the colored race. Their enfranchisement was not encouraged, and even the early Anglo-Saxon rule, interpreting every doubtful question in favor of liberty, was superseded. The death of a slave from extremity of correction, was not accounted felony, and in 1672, the wounding or even killing of fugitive slaves in their pursuit was made lawful.

---

Restrictions on commerce.

---

1661

Although the Virginians had for a time renounced their allegiance to Charles II, yet the intelligence of his restoration to the British throne in 1660, was joyfully received ; and an assembly was called, in the name of the king, in the spring of 1661. Many important changes in judicial proceedings were introduced ; trial by jury was restored. The established religion of England, which had lost its supremacy during the protectorate, was again enforced by law, strict conformity being demanded, and that every one should contribute to its support. Severe laws were made against all non-conformists, and their meetings prohibited by the institution of heavy fines. All such residing in the colony, were threatened with banishment, and the shipmaster that received such as passengers, was punished.

Soon after the accession of Charles, the apprehensions of the people became awakened, by the restrictions on their trade, for rendering it subservient to English commerce and navigation. One of the first acts of parliament was to vote a duty of five per cent. on all merchandise exported from, or imported into any of the dominions belonging to the crown. This was followed by the memorable navigation act of Charles II.

By this act it was decreed, that “ no merchandise shall be imported into the plantations, but in English vessels, navigated by Englishmen, under penalty of forfeiture.” And no person, from whatever country, unless he had become a naturalized subject of Great Britain, was allowed to become a merchant in any English colony. All articles for exportation, which were raised in quantities in America only, and would not therefore interfere with the sale of English productions in their own market, were to be sent exclusively to England ; while, to prevent competition, a market should be found for

## Remonstrances.

## Manners of living.

all other articles in ports distant from the mother country. The colonists were allowed the exclusive privilege of raising tobacco, its cultivation being prohibited in England and Ireland. 1661

Restrictions were afterwards laid on trade between the different colonies, and finally the manufacture of any articles was prohibited, which might compete with the English in foreign markets.

This system of commercial monopoly was continued for more than a century, and was considered of great advantage to England ; but was regarded by the colonists as unjust and injurious, and a disposition was evinced to evade it, as far as possible. Yet no distrust of the royal power was excited ; freedom of trade was the object of their wishes ; and confidence was still felt in the favor of the king. The assembly remonstrated against these oppressions, and petitioned for relief ; but Charles enforced the acts of parliament, by erecting forts on the banks of the principal rivers, and sending vessels to cruise on the coast. In addition to grievances occasioned by restrictions on their commerce, Charles made grants of land, in violation of those previously made.

In those days the people lived in great simplicity. They were brought up in the freedom of the wilderness, and dwelt in cottages scattered along the rivers. No printing press was allowed, consequently they had no newspapers, and but few books. Education was much neglected. Travelling was performed by water, or on horseback through paths in the forest. There were no bridges, and rivers had to be crossed either by fording or swimming. The houses were often built of logs, with shutters to close the windows, instead of glass. A collection of several houses was rarely to be seen ; and Jamestown had but a State house, a house for public worship,

---

Popular discontent.War with the Indians.

---

and eighteen dwellings. The people were widely scattered, and rarely met in large numbers.

Among such a people, the pressure of increasing grievances began to excite open discontent. Some outbreaks appeared, which, however, were quickly suppressed by the decision of the governor. Yet the people were not satisfied. A deputation had been sent to England to endeavor to obtain some redress, and after a year's negotiation, intelligence was received that it had been unsuccessful.

1675

While matters were in this state, the colonists became engaged in a war with the Susquehannah Indians. Serious apprehensions had been excited in the minds of these, by the encroachments of the English, who at first had occupied only the borders of the bay. By degrees they had crossed the mountains and explored the interior. The Indians were not disposed to relinquish their right to the homes of their fathers, and resisted these aggressions by killing some of the whites, who had come in their way. These outrages had been avenged by militia stationed on the borders, and when six of the chieftains came as messengers to treat for peace, they were treacherously murdered. This again excited the passions of the Indians, who were not satisfied until ten English had been killed for each of their chiefs. Proposals of peace were then renewed by the Susquehannahs and their confederates, but were rejected.

1676

In 1676, a rebellion against the English government broke out. The governor was accused of unfaithfulness to the interests of the colony, in not resisting the oppressions of the mother country, and of a want of courage to repel the hostility of the savages; and, notwithstanding his former popularity, he was unable to maintain tranquillity, and for some months a civil war raged in Virginia.

Bacon's insurrection.

Order restored.

Having fled to a remote portion of the colony, Berkeley 1676 collected some forces, and entered the settlement. Several sharp conflicts ensued with various success. Jamestown was burned, and either party, as it suited their purpose, laid waste cultivated districts of country. Berkeley applied for assistance to the king. Charles despatched a squadron, with some regular troops, but they did not arrive until order had been restored. The death of Nathaniel Bacon, the leader of the insurgents, occasioned the dissolution of the party. Without any choice of a new leader, they laid down their arms, and submitted to the government of Berkeley, on condition of receiving a general pardon.

Reinstated in office, the governor called together the representatives of the people. The proceedings of the assembly were marked with moderation. The promise of general pardon was confirmed, with few exceptions. None were executed, a few were fined, and some others were prohibited from holding any office of trust.

The results of Bacon's rebellion were disastrous to Virginia. Many lives were lost, and much property was sacrificed; while it did not induce England to relax her restrictions upon the commerce of the colony, and furnished an excuse for refusing a liberal charter.

Soon after the rebellion, Berkeley returned to England, and the authority devolved on Jeffrys, the lieutenant governor. Under his administration, peace was concluded with the Indians, and notwithstanding the unfavorable circumstances to which the colony was subjected, wealth and population increased. In 1688, at the time of the revolution in the British government, which placed William and Mary on the throne of England, the number of inhabitants amounted to 60,000. 1688

---

College of William and Mary founded.Dissenters increase.

---

Under the patronage of the new sovereigns, the college of William and Mary was founded at Williamsburgh, the second institution of the kind established in the country,—Harvard University at Boston being the first. Episcopacy continued to be the established religion, and each priest was by law assigned a salary of sixteen thousand pounds of tobacco. Yet dissenters were increasing so rapidly, that before the independence of the colonies, they amounted to two-thirds of the whole population. The laws against them, though unrepealed, had ceased to be enforced.

## CHAPTER VI.

### COLONIZATION OF MARYLAND.

---

William Clayborne.

Lord Baltimore.

---

THE limits of Virginia included not only all the soil which subsequently belonged to Maryland, but extended as far north as the Dutch plantations on the Hudson. The country toward the head of the Chesapeake, had been explored, and a trade with the Indians commenced, as early as 1621. An attempt was made to monopolize this trade, by William Clayborne, who afterwards exerted an injurious influence in the new colony. He had come out from England as a surveyor; sent by the London Company to make a map of the country, and had held important offices in Virginia, till 1629, when he was employed to survey the Chesapeake Bay. The information obtained by him, in the prosecution of this undertaking, was the means of forming in England a company for trading with the natives. Clayborne obtained in 1631 a royal license, sanctioning the commerce, and trading establishments were formed on Kent Island in the Chesapeake, as far north as the present site of Annapolis, and also near the mouth of the Susquehannah; thus extending the limits of Virginia towards the boundary of New England. 1631

But a new government was about to be established on the borders of the old colony, under the patronage of the Calvert family. Sir George Calvert, afterwards Lord Baltimore, had obtained a special patent for the southern promontory of Newfoundland. He was careful in the selection of emigrants,

---

Grant of the province of Maryland to Lord Baltimore.

---

earnest to promote habits of order and domestic industry, and freely expended his estate in advancing the interests of his settlement. But numerous difficulties prevented success. The soil and climate were unfavorable, and there was a constant dread of attacks from the French, who were settled in the vicinity on the main land. This locality was therefore abandoned.

The attention of Lord Baltimore was next turned toward Virginia, the climate and soil of which had been so much extolled. During the reign of James I, popular feeling against the Papists ran high, and Lord Baltimore having embraced their belief, received no welcome in a colony with an established Protestant religion. The acts of the assembly made it evident that he could not peaceably form a distinct settlement under the jurisdiction of Virginia.

He therefore turned his attention to the country beyond the Potomac, of which James I once more had the control, by the cancelling of the Virginia patents. Calvert, sincere in his character, and a man of much moderation, succeeded in obtaining a liberal charter, establishing the rights of the colonists, as well as the privileges of the proprietary. The territory extended from the Atlantic to the Potomac, from its sources to its mouth; and was bounded on the north by the fortieth parallel of north latitude. The name of Maryland was given to the province from Henrietta Maria, wife of Charles I

The grant was made to Calvert, his heirs, or assigns, as absolute proprietary, to be held by the tenure of fealty only, paying a yearly rent of two Indian arrows, and one fifth of all the gold and silver ore which might be found. Perfect religious freedom was allowed to the colonists; and Maryland was the first State in which this liberty was fully enjoyed; no

---

 Death of Lord Baltimore.

 Roman Catholics sail for Maryland.
 

---

difference being made in the pecuniary, civil or religious rights of any English subject. The people of this colony were also exempted from British taxation.

Before the patent was executed, Calvert, then Lord Baltimore, died. His son, Cecil Calvert, the second Lord Baltimore, succeeded him, and became the proprietor of Maryland.\* Lord Baltimore, for some reason, abandoned his purpose of conducting the emigrants in person, and in the autumn of 1633, his brother, Leonard Calvert, sailed from England with about two hundred Roman Catholics. After stopping some time in the West Indies, they arrived in Virginia, in about three months, where they were well received by the governor. 1633

A site for a plantation was soon selected at an Indian town on the St. Mary's river. The natives who resided in that district of country, being at enmity with the Susquehannahs, a more powerful tribe, were preparing to remove into the interior. The right to the soil was secured by presents of implements of husbandry, knives and cloth; and it was agreed that the English might at once occupy one half of their town, and the remainder after harvest. Promises of friendship and peace were made, and on the twenty-seventh day of Third month, (March,) 1634, the emigrants took possession of their new home, which they called St. Mary's. The native chiefs soon visited them, and were so well received that they entered into a permanent treaty. The Indian women taught 1634

---

\* Of the founder of this State, Bancroft gives the following character. "Calvert deserves to be ranked among the most wise and benevolent lawgivers of all ages. He was the first in the history of the Christian world to seek for religious security and peace by the practice of justice, and not by the exercise of power; to plan the establishment of popular institutions with the enjoyment of liberty of conscience; to advance the career of civilization by recognizing the rightful equality of all Christian sects."

## Colony prosperous.

## Difficulties with Clayborne.

the wives of the English to make bread of maize, and the men joined the Indians in the chase. The ground being already subdued, and Virginia being able to furnish a temporary supply of food, no fears of want were felt ; and the colony was peacefully and happily commenced, advancing more within six months, than Virginia had done for some years. The proprietary spared neither pains nor expense to promote the interests of the settlements, and spent, within two years, upwards of forty thousand pounds sterling. Here the oppressed of England found a refuge, whether Papists or Protestants.

1635 Early in 1635, the first assembly was convened. One of the subjects claiming its attention, was the vindication of the province against the claims of Clayborne. He had resolved to maintain them by force, and a skirmish had taken place near the Isle of Kent, in which several lives had been lost. Clayborne's men were defeated and taken prisoners ; he fled to Virginia, and when demanded by the government of Maryland, was sent with the witnesses to England.

1638 The next assembly, in 1638, declared Clayborne a traitor, and pronounced his estates forfeited. His attempts to obtain redress in England were unsuccessful, and the rights of Lord Baltimore were fully confirmed.

1639 Meantime the spirit of popular liberty in Maryland was advancing. The third assembly, which met in 1639, framed a declaration of rights, in which they acknowledged their allegiance to the king of England, secured the rights of the proprietary, and confirmed to the inhabitants of the province, all the rights of Englishmen. They established for themselves a representative government, and asserted, for the assemblies, powers similar to those of the British House of Commons. Perhaps, with an apprehension of persecution at some future period, on account of their religion, at this session they se-

---

 Insurrection.

 Freedom of conscience established.
 

---

cured for themselves the right to the tranquil exercise of the Romish worship.

At this time the inhabitants were in the enjoyment of much happiness. They had a productive commerce, and a fertile soil ; emigration was increasing, and as a testimony of gratitude to the proprietary, for his solicitude and interest in the welfare of the people, and his protection of their liberties, they freely granted such a subsidy as the young and poor estate of the colony could bear. 1642

The aborigines, alarmed at the rapid increase of the Europeans, and instigated to jealousies by Clayborne, commenced hostilities. Ever susceptible to kindness, however, peace was again established, and the tranquillity of the colony secured by the prudent legislation and firm humanity of the government.

But Clayborne, influenced in part by a conviction of having been wronged, succeeded in exciting a rebellion in 1644, among some restless spirits, who, obtaining the ascendancy, the governor was compelled to fly, and more than a year elapsed before he could resume his authority and restore order. During this period, most of the public records were lost or embezzled. In 1647, peace was established, and an amnesty granted to those engaged in the insurrection.

The influence of the civil wars of England was felt in Maryland as well as in the other colonies. When the English monarchy was overthrown, and the violent opponents of papacy came into power under Cromwell, the rulers of this province began to fear that their own rights might be invaded. They determined, therefore, to place upon their statute book a law to secure more firmly the freedom of conscience. A leading part of this law declared that " No person within this province, professing to believe in Jesus Christ, shall be any 1647

---

 Disturbances.

Order restored.

Prosperity.

---

ways troubled, molested or discountenanced for his or her religion, or in the free exercise thereof."

At the time of the difficulties which existed in Virginia, during the Protectorate, when commissioners were sent to reduce the Virginians to obedience, Clayborne seized the opportunity of exciting fresh troubles in Maryland, and produced a long series of disturbances, which kept the province for years in a state of confusion. The deputy of Lord Baltimore was frequently deprived of his commission, and those who united with him in matters of religion were persecuted for their opinions.

1660 At length, finding no security but in asserting the power of the people, the representatives declared in 1660 their right of independent legislation, recognizing no other authority than the king of England. The assembly then passed an act making it felony to disturb the order they had established. Thus tranquillity was restored.

The population at this time was at least eight thousand. They lived principally along the rivers, and had nowhere settled in a considerable village. The navigation acts checked the prosperity of this province, as well as of Virginia; yet the colony increased and flourished.

At the restoration of Charles II, the authority of Philip Calvert, the deputy of the proprietary, was quietly recognized. Lord Baltimore lived to see prosperity and happiness in Maryland. The persecuted thronged from various countries, to the tolerant government which he had established. Huguenots from France, other religious sects from Holland, Sweden and Finland, found protection there.

The toleration had been complete, but for the sufferings of the Society of Friends. They were not persecuted for their religious worship, which was held publicly, and without mo-

---

Administration of affairs transferred to the Protestants.

---

lestation ; but their refusal to perform military duty, and to take an oath, subjected them to fines and harsh imprisonment.

Lord Baltimore died in 1675, after a supremacy of more than forty-three years. The commercial metropolis of Maryland commemorates his name.

Yet grateful as the people of Maryland had been towards the benevolent founder of their colony, his religious opinions had not spread among the inhabitants generally, neither was a proprietary government in unison with the republican feelings which had already become strong in the western world. In 1676, Charles, the son and heir of the proprietary, who had wisely administered the government for fourteen years, returned to England, in consequence of the death of his father. Symptoms of dissatisfaction had already become manifest ; and when, in 1676, the insurrection of Bacon broke out in Virginia, the feeling extended to Maryland, requiring the prompt energy of the government to preserve order.

1676

After the death of the first Lord Baltimore, efforts were made in England, for the establishment of the Episcopal mode of worship ; but the present proprietary was inflexible in his regard for religious toleration. Yet the differences between him and the people increased. The government was accused of favoring the Papists. This afforded an opportunity of interference from England, where it was agreed that the administration of affairs should be conducted exclusively by Protestants ; thus taking all power from those who had established the colony, and founded an asylum, not for themselves only, but also for the persecuted of other denominations.

The power of the proprietary could not be maintained against the spirit of popular liberty and the attachment of the people to Protestantism. The administration of the gov-

---

Maryland becomes a royal province.    Episcopacy established by law.

---

ernment was assumed by an association "for the Defence of the Protestant Religion," who, by an address to King William, induced him, in 1691, notwithstanding the remonstrances of the proprietary, to constitute Maryland a royal province.

1691    One of the first acts of the assembly, convened under the new commission, was to establish Episcopacy by law, to be supported by general taxation. The strong opposition towards the Papists, felt at this time in England, extended to this country, and while religious toleration was granted to all Protestant dissenters, it was denied to those by whose liberality they themselves had been received into the colony; and in 1704, an act was passed prohibiting their form of worship.

As a royal province, Maryland enjoyed comparative repose. The population increased, though not so rapidly as in some of the other colonies. Education was neglected. As in Virginia, tobacco was the staple production; hemp and flax were also raised, and all were sometimes used as currency.

1715    In 1715, the proprietary government was restored, and continued until the Revolution. Differences in religious opinions, still caused much difficulty; education continued to be neglected, nor was it until the independence of the colonies was established, that schools and academies began to be founded.

## CHAPTER VII.

### ATTEMPTS TO COLONIZE NEW ENGLAND. THE PILGRIMS.

---

Efforts of the Plymouth Company to establish colonies.

---

THE trading company of the west of England, incorporated at the same time with the London Company, under whose auspices the first settlements were made in Virginia, were unsuccessful in their efforts to establish colonies. The Spaniards claimed the exclusive right of navigation in the western seas, and captured the first vessel which was sent out. Another, however, which sailed nearly at the same time, reached America ; and, on their return, the voyagers renewed the favorable accounts of the country which had already been given.

The next year, the same in which Jamestown was found- 1607  
ed, two ships sailed for Northern Virginia. After a tedious voyage, they reached the coast of America, near the mouth of the river Kennebec, where they began their settlement. But the winter was intensely cold ; the natives, at first friendly, became restless ; the storehouse caught fire, and part of the provisions was consumed ; the colonists lost their president, and in 1608, dispirited by the hardships they had endured, they returned to England.

From this period no attempts were made, for a while, to 1608  
establish colonies, although the fisheries and fur trade continued to be prosecuted.

In 1614, Captain John Smith, whose name is so conspicu-

---

Charter granted to the Plymouth Company.

---

1614 ous in the history of Virginia, made a prosperous voyage to the country north of the lands embraced in the Virginia patent. While the rest of the company were engaged in fishing or trading, Smith was employed in examining the coast, and preparing a map of it from Penobscot to Cape Cod. On his return he gave so favorable an account of the country, that Prince Charles gave it the name of New England.

The following year, Smith endeavored, in the employment of members of the Plymouth Company, to establish a colony. But the vessel in which he and some others had embarked, was seized by French pirates, and Smith was taken to Rochelle, from which place he made his escape in an open boat.

1617 Having returned to England, he published his map, and a description of New England, and spent many months in endeavoring to excite zeal for enterprise in America. The attention of the Western Company was aroused, and application made for a charter, similar to that possessed by the Southern Company. Much difficulty was caused by each of these Companies being desirous of engrossing the greater proportion of the profits to be derived from America; but after two years, a charter was obtained, which incorporated this Company as "The Council established at Plymouth, in the county of Devon, for the planting, ruling, ordering, and governing New England in America." The territory granted by the charter, extended from the fortieth to the forty-eighth degree of north latitude, and from the Atlantic to the Pacific ocean. This included Canada, of which the French had already taken possession, and where they had planted colonies; and a country of vast extent to the west, altogether comprising much more than a million of square miles. All this territory was placed under the absolute control of the Company who resided in England.

---

Puritans.Independents go to Holland.

---

The extent of these powers delayed emigration, through a fear of infringing the rights of the Company; and while the English were disputing about charters and commissions, the traders of the French nation had been annually sending home rich freights of fur.

In the mean time, the first permanent colony was established without regard to the charter, or without the knowledge of the Company.

At that early period, uniformity of religion was considered essential to the well being of society. It was, therefore, expected that every sovereign should endeavor to preserve it in his dominions. But latterly, free inquiry had received a great impulse from the success of Luther and the other reformers; and various sects arose, differing from the established religion.

Among these, the Puritans desired a thorough reform, and to be widely severed from all Roman usages. They were strict in their interpretation of Scripture, and rigid in the use of the forms they considered there enforced; while conformity to the establishment of England was required by the government with unrelenting vigor, and their ministers were imprisoned, exiled or silenced. As a body, they had avoided a separation from "the church;" they desired a reform, not a schism.

From 1581 to 1583, there grew up among them a class of men who carried opposition to the establishment farther than had yet been done, and who refused to hold communion with a body of which they condemned the ceremonies and the government. A small number of these, of the sect afterwards called Independents, resolved to seek safety in exile. They removed to Leyden, in Holland, where they formed a distinct society, with John Robinson as their minister. The departure from England was effected with much suffering and

---

The Pilgrims desire to leave Holland.

---

1608 hazard. The first attempt was prevented, but the design was accomplished at night, the following spring, 1608.

The Pilgrims resided in Leyden eleven years, in great harmony, and by their rigid virtues and exemplary deportment, acquired the respect of the magistrates and citizens. But various considerations induced them to leave Holland. They had been accustomed to the pursuits of husbandry ; there they were compelled to learn mechanical trades. The language of the Dutch never became pleasant or familiar. The climate was not congenial, and they feared the contaminating influence of the disbanded soldiers upon their children. Neither was the desire of becoming the founders of a state without its weight, while a deeply seated love of their country, made them wish to live once more under the government of their native land.

They therefore sent two of their number to obtain the consent of the London Company to their emigration to Virginia. The messengers of the Pilgrims were favorably received, and a tract of land granted them. They also sought the favor of the king, but nothing more could be obtained than an informal promise of neglect.

The Pilgrims were not possessed of sufficient capital for the execution of their plans. Funds were therefore obtained in London, by a contract with persons of property there ; yet it was on severe terms. The services of each emigrant were considered equivalent to a capital of ten pounds, and all profits were to be reserved till the expiration of seven years, when the land, with all the houses and improvements of the emigrants, was to be divided, according to the respective interests of the parties ; so that he who had but risked ten pounds, would receive the same amount as he who had encountered all the hardships and privations, and given his entire services.

---

 Sail from Delft-Haven.

---

 Anchor near Cape Cod.
 

---

This arrangement, hard as it was, and likely to retard materially the prosperity of the colony, did not deter men of their determination and energy.

Two vessels were procured in England. These accom- 1620  
modated but a small proportion of the congregation; but as no others could be obtained either in England or elsewhere, Robinson remained at Leyden with those who were left behind, and Brewster, "the teaching elder," accompanied the emigrants. The farewell address of Robinson was solemn and impressive, and characteristic of the faith of the Pilgrims. Most of the brethren accompanied them from Leyden to Delft-Haven, where the night was passed in "friendly and christian converse." As morning dawned, Seventh month, (July,) 1620, the little band bade farewell to Holland, while Robinson knelt in prayer by the seaside. The beginning of their voyage was prosperous. They touched at Southampton, and in a fortnight afterwards, the Mayflower and the Speedwell, freighted with the first New England colony, sailed thence for America. But they were obliged to put back twice to repair the Speedwell, the smaller of their vessels, and finally to abandon her; such of their company as were dismayed at the dangers of the enterprise, remaining in England. Their numbers being thus lessened, the remainder, men, women and children, in all but one hundred and one individuals, sailed in the Mayflower alone, hired only to convey them across the Atlantic, on the 6th of Ninth month, (Sept.,) 1620, thirteen years after the first colonization of Virginia.

The Pilgrims had selected as the place for their settlement, the mouth of the Hudson, the best position on the whole coast. But by the ignorance or self-will of their captain, they were conducted to the most barren and inhospitable part

## Organization.

## Excursion into the country.

1620 of Massachusetts, and anchored in the harbor of Cape Cod, after a boisterous voyage of sixty-three days. This, they were aware, was beyond the limits of the London Company, but winter was approaching, and the hardships of a long voyage had rendered them unfit again to put to sea.

Before landing, the whole body of men, forty-one in number, signed a solemn covenant, forming themselves into a body politic, for the purpose of making such equal laws for the general good of the colony as should, from time to time, be thought best. A governor for one year was immediately chosen. The suffering and disappointment of the long voyage, had wasted their strength, and now, with a scanty supply of provisions, they were to commence a winter on this inhospitable shore, with no friendly hand to lend them aid, or bid them welcome. The Virginia colony was five hundred miles distant, and the nearest French settlement was Port Royal. The shallowness of the water obliged them to wade from the vessel. This, in inclement weather, laid the seeds of consumption and inflammatory diseases, which soon carried off many of their number.

The spot for their settlement had not been selected. Their vessel needed repairs, and it was sixteen or seventeen days before it was ready for service. During this interval, some of them determined to explore the country by land. They were armed, and meeting with some savages, they followed them; but not laying aside their arms, or manifesting any tokens of friendship, the Indians fled. Proceeding further, a heap of sand was discovered, which had the appearance of having something buried beneath. Here they dug, and discovered a basket curiously made, containing three or four bushels of corn. Whilst two or three were engaged in this work, the others were placed as sentinels. After much consultation, it was

---

Aggressions.

---

concluded to take as much of the corn as they could carry 1620 away, together with a ship's kettle, which they had found, being prevented by their arms from taking the whole. The latter proving heavy, they afterwards sunk it in a pond. The corn was delivered into the general store for seed, as they knew not how to procure any, and their intentions were to make the Indians satisfaction, when they should meet any of them. A few days afterwards, they returned to the place where they had left the corn, and, proceeding a little further, more corn, and some other provisions were found, buried in the same way, which the party seem unscrupulously to have appropriated to themselves, saying in excuse, "Sure, it was God's providence that we found this corn;" without reflecting that they had thus deprived the Indians of a part of their winter's store. Further search led to a burial-place. One of the graves they resolved to open. A variety of articles were bound up with the body; some of the most attractive of these, they carried away, after re-covering the body. They also entered some houses, the occupants being absent, and took possession of whatever they fancied.\* The Indians were afterwards offered some payment for the corn taken from their granaries, although it does not appear that any satisfaction was made for their other depredations. It is no matter of surprise that the impressions of the Indians were unfavorable towards those who had thus come among them.

The repairs of the vessel being completed, it was sent out to sail round the bay in pursuit of a location for the settlement. The first expedition was unsuccessful; another attempt was made. The cold was severe; the spray of the sea froze as it

---

\* See "Relation or Journal of the Beginning and Proceedings of the English Plantation, settled at Plimouth, in New England," etc., etc., said to have been written by Wm. Bradford and Edward Winslow.

Land on Plymouth rock.	Hardships.	Mortality.
------------------------	------------	------------

fell on the deck and rigging of the vessel. Part of the company travelled at times along the shore, where they were surprised by a war-whoop and flight of arrows from some Indians, who instantly disappeared on the discharge of the muskets. After three days' searching, during which they encountered much danger from a storm and from shoals, which the vessel narrowly escaped, they reached at night a small island. It was dark and rainy, yet a landing was effected. The next day being the first of the week, or "Christian Sabbath," all arrangements were deferred. On the day following, Twelfth month, (Dec.) 11th, 1620, they sounded the harbor, and found it fit for shipping. The party then selected a spot on the main land, favorable for a settlement, and in a few days, the Mayflower, with the rest of the emigrants, cast anchor in the harbor. In grateful recollection of the kindness they had received at the port in England whence they sailed, the Pilgrims gave the place the name of Plymouth.

On the 20th the whole party landed on Plymouth rock. It was in the depth of winter ; their stock of provisions was small, and they were suffering from colds and fevers. This was the feeble commencement of New England, with its present millions, and of New England institutions.

After some days, the new settlers began to build ; but being delayed by frost and stormy weather, they could seldom work half the week. Various hardships and exposures lessened their numbers through the winter, and it was not until 1621 the spring was far advanced, that the mortality began to cease. Half of them had perished by disease, and those in health had not been sufficient to take care of the sick. Carver, the governor, was of the number swept away ; Wm. Bradford was appointed in his stead.

The sickness subsided in summer, but want and privation

---

Trade with the Indians commenced.

---

remained ; and the arrival of additional emigrants in the autumn, who came without any supply of provisions, increased the scarcity of food. At times, the colonists were dependent for subsistence on the benevolence of fishermen off the coast.

The agreement made by the Pilgrims with the merchants of London, was calculated to protract the time of scarcity. It required a community of property. Individual interest being thus destroyed, there were many idlers to be supported by the industrious, as the law could not compel regular labor ; want consequently continued. In the spring of 1623, after an experiment of more than two years, the colonists ventured to vary from the agreement, each family being allowed a piece of ground to cultivate for themselves. Before long, sufficient corn was raised for trade with the Indians ; and European manufactures, trinkets, etc., were exchanged for furs. The commerce with the Indians, thus established, soon became more profitable than any other pursuit. The natives, being fond of the chase, were quite willing to leave the cultivation of the soil to those who could furnish them a supply of agricultural products.

The Indians were not numerous in the neighborhood of Plymouth. Before the arrival of the English, a sweeping pestilence had carried off whole tribes. Yet the colonists formed a military organization, and about ten days after getting on shore, they were engaged in constructing a fortification to protect themselves from those whose houses they had pillaged, whose burial-places they had disturbed. Dangers, however, were not at hand. The character of the Indian is not aggressive, and where the natives have been treated with uniform kindness, the peace has not been broken. Their deportment was now at first hospitable and conciliatory.

In the spring of 1621, a treaty of friendship was made with

---

Treaty with the Indians.Settlers at Weymouth.

---

1621

the tribe of Wampanoags, memorable in the history of New England, possessing the country north of Narragansett Bay. Samoset, one of their number, visited the colonists, and bade them welcome. He gave them permission to occupy the soil, which there were none of the original owners alive to claim. Soon afterwards Massasoit, the sachem of the tribe, and king of the Pokanoket confederacy, came to visit the Pilgrims, who, with their wives and children, were now reduced in number to fifty. A treaty of friendship was soon completed, which bound also all the confederates of the chief. This alliance was desired by Massasoit, the powerful Narragansetts being his enemies; while the emigrants secured a lucrative commerce.

The influence of the English over the aborigines, was extending; and nine chieftains were induced to acknowledge the authority of King James. Canonicus, chief of the Narragansetts, had at one time desired to treat of peace; but afterwards sent a bundle of arrows, wrapped in the skin of a rattlesnake, as emblematic of his feelings toward them. The colonists showed themselves determined to avenge even a threatened injury, and Bradford the governor returned the skin, filled with powder and shot.

The prospect of gain by the fur trade, induced an application from a merchant of London, for a grant of land on Massachusetts Bay, which was obtained, and a company of sixty men was sent over, who settled at Weymouth. They were idle and dissolute, and depended for support for some months, on the industry of their neighbors of Plymouth. By their unjust treatment of the Indians, they provoked hostility, and finally exasperated them so much, that a plot was formed for the destruction of all the English. Massasoit, who proved himself the friend of the Pilgrims, disclosed the design to them; and the planters at Weymouth were saved, though not

Destruction of the plantation.

New settlements.

without the loss of some life on the part of the Indians. A small number of men, who were sent from Plymouth to their assistance, being threatened by the natives, attacked them, killed several, and put the rest to flight. The plantation was broken up in less than one year from its commencement ; most of the men returned to England, and a few went to Plymouth. 1622

The partnership formed by the Pilgrims with the merchants in England, proved disadvantageous in many ways. Robinson and his friends in Leyden were very desirous of joining their brethren in America, but the English partners refused to provide them a passage, hoping thus to force on the emigrants, a preacher whose doctrines were more in accordance with those of the establishment of England. Divisions were the consequence ; until the merchants, discouraged by the small returns from their investments, lost their interest in the colony. They even attempted to injure its commerce, and goods which were sent to them, were sold at an enormous advance. At last the emigrants succeeded in purchasing the rights of the English adventurers ; thus relieving themselves from debt and its unpleasant consequences.

The colony was now firmly established, yet its progress was slow. At the end of ten years, its population was but three hundred. The settlements had, however, been extended, and trading stations established in various places, one of them as far east as the Kennebec.

Robinson did not live to reach Plymouth, but died in Leyden. His family, with the rest of those who remained behind, emigrated, as soon as means could be provided to defray the expenses of the voyage. 1625

No charter from the king was ever obtained for the Pilgrims. The frame of their government, adopted without his

---

Form of government.

---

sanction, was simple and republican. The governor was elected by the people ; his authority was restricted by a council of five, and afterwards of seven assistants. For eighteen years, the legislature was composed of all the men of the colony ; after which, the increase of population, and the extension of territory, led to the introduction of the representative system.

## CHAPTER VIII.

### FURTHER COLONIZATION OF NEW ENGLAND.

---

Grants of land by the Plymouth Company.

---

THE old Plymouth Company, whose extensive and very exclusive charter has already been mentioned, had made little use of its great privileges, except by attempting to exclude from the trade and fisheries, all who would not pay the Company a heavy tax. This monopoly was much opposed in the House of Commons. The Company continued, however, to issue grants of land, many of them productive of no permanent settlement. Sir Ferdinand Gorges, the most energetic member of the Council of Plymouth, with John Mason, who had been governor of a plantation on Newfoundland, took a patent for the country extending from the sea to the St. Lawrence, and from the Merrimac to the Kennebec. A company was formed, under whose auspices Portsmouth and Dover were settled in 1623, being among the oldest towns in New England. But their progress was very slow; thirty years afterward, Portsmouth contained not more than sixty families.

Rude shelters of fishermen began to be scattered along the coast, but, intent only on their immediate object, the cultivation of the soil was scarcely attempted; and it is difficult to ascertain the exact time when permanent settlements were made. These were first established at the mouths of the rivers, with a view to commerce, and not to agriculture.

Patents were granted, and efforts made to plant colonies in

---

 Religious persecution in England.

 Endicott's company.
 

---

Maine. But fishing and trading in lumber were found to be more profitable than the cultivation of the soil, and the settlers scattered themselves along the coast, independently of one another.

While the settlement of New England was thus very slowly extending, religious persecution continued to prevail in England. The number of Puritans increased, while the sufferings they endured tended but to confirm their faith ; and the religious liberty to be enjoyed in the new world, invited them to seek an asylum there.

1627 In 1627, a body of them, residing in the vicinity of Dorchester, concluded a treaty with the Plymouth Company, for the purchase of the territory lying between the Charles river and the Merrimack, and extending three miles south of the former and north of the latter, and from the Atlantic to the Pacific Ocean. In the following year, a small company went out, under the direction of John Endicott, and laid the foundation of Salem.

1628 A charter was soon after obtained from the crown, confirming the grant of the Plymouth Company. By it the association was constituted a corporation, with the title of "The Governor and Company of Massachusetts Bay in New England." The officers of the government were to be a governor, deputy governor, and eighteen assistants, the latter to be elected by the corporation. The colonists were to be released from taxes and duties, and considered entitled to the privileges of English citizens. No law was to be made opposed to any law of England.

The charter was received early in the spring. Preparations were immediately made for the embarkation of new emigrants ; and near the middle of summer, 1629, about two hundred arrived at Salem, which, at that time, consisted of but a few small tenements, with some cornfields attached.

---

Sufferings of the Massachusetts colony.

John Winthrop.

---

Not satisfied with the situation of the place, one hundred of 1629 the party laid the foundation of Charlestown, both settlements being united under the same government. Their organization as a religious body was one of the first objects of the new comers, and was soon effected.

The ensuing winter was a season of severe distress from the intensity of the cold, the incomplete state of their houses, and the want of sufficient food. These causes produced disease and death. Before spring, almost half the emigrants died.

In 1629, it was agreed by the Company, that the government of the colony should be confided to those freemen who would themselves reside there. This provision induced many to emigrate. In the course of the year 1630, seventeen vessels conveyed about fifteen hundred emigrants to a home in the new world. The excellent John Winthrop was appointed 1630 governor, and a complete board of assistants chosen. But as the time for leaving drew near, one after another became discouraged by the danger of the undertaking, and others had to be provided to supply their places. The mildness and energy of Winthrop encouraged his companions, and he afterwards proved himself ready to sacrifice his own comfort for their sakes. About eight hundred embarked with him. They were Puritans ; among them were men of education and fortune. They took with them the charter, the basis of their liberties, and before leaving England, published the reasons for their removal, which were various.

On their arrival in the summer, they encountered a scene of gloom and desolation. Those who had survived the sufferings of the winter were enfeebled and sickly ; their provisions were nearly exhausted, and they were soon entirely dependent for subsistence on those who had newly arrived.

---

 Boston commenced.

 Hardships.
 

---

The bay and adjacent rivers were examined for places of settlement, and Boston and some of the neighboring villages were commenced. The work of building progressed slowly ; sickness and death often arrested the exertions of the emigrants. They had various hardships to endure ; many who had been accustomed to plenty and ease, sank under privation. Before the end of summer, about one hundred, becoming disheartened by the misery around them, left their fellow sufferers, and returned to England. By the beginning of winter, two hundred had died.

The hope of better times did not forsake the survivors ; but many in England were deterred, who would otherwise have come over ; and for two years afterwards, fresh accessions to their number did not often cheer the colonists. Only between three and four hundred arrived during that period. It was also feared that their charter would be withdrawn, and their liberties thus circumscribed.

1631 At the general court, convened in Boston in the spring of 1631, it was agreed, in order that " the body of the commons may be preserved of honest and good men," " that for the time to come, no man shall be admitted to the freedom of this body politic, but such as are members of some of the churches within the limits of the same." This law has been severely censured, and it produced much dissension in the colony. It was not, however, inconsistent with the spirit of the age ; and, with a charter which placed these matters entirely under the control of the colonists, they expected, in the fervor of their zeal, that all who migrated should immediately join their standard. These feelings led to the development of that persecuting spirit, which the history of New England sorrowfully unfolds.

About this time, relations of friendship began to be established with the natives, the different tribes desiring to make

House of Representatives.

Roger Williams.

allies of the English, in the hope of being protected against their enemies. These were mostly at some distance, a pestilence having swept over this district of country, a few years previously ; and the small-pox, introduced by the English, had more recently destroyed many of the survivors.

Some intercourse was kept up with the earlier English settlements, and when the governor of Massachusetts visited Plymouth, for the sake of confirming friendship with the Pilgrims, the journey was performed on foot. Trade had been commenced with the Dutch on the Hudson river, and also with the settlers on the Chesapeake.

Circumstances now being more favorable, new emigrants were induced to embark. In 1633, two hundred arrived after a long voyage ; among them two "revered spiritual teachers," Cotton and Hooker, men of great endowments.

As the number of settlements increased, inconvenience arose by the assembling of all the freemen for the administration of the government. In 1634, deputies to the general court were chosen, who were invested with all the power which had previously belonged to the whole body. These were to assemble four times a year, and they constituted the second instance of a House of Representatives in America. 1634

One of the most remarkable of those who found their way to the colony, was Roger Williams ; "a young minister, godly and zealous, having precious gifts." He was a Puritan, one who had fled from persecution in England ; and although but little more than thirty years of age, his mind had become enlightened beyond most of his cotemporaries. He had studied the nature of intolerance, and had arrived at the great truth, which would put an end to all persecution, that the civil magistrate in the performance of his duties, should restrain crime by the punishment of guilt, but should

---

Roger Williams.

---

never attempt to influence opinions. This doctrine rendered Williams obnoxious to the magistrates.

The account given by Bancroft of this enlightened and amiable man, is so well suited to the purpose of this work, that parts of it are copied entire.

“In the unwavering assertion of his views, Williams never changed his position; the sanctity of conscience was the great tenet, which, with all its consequences, he defended, as he first trod the shores of New England; and in his extreme old age, it was the last pulsation of his heart. But it placed the young emigrant in direct opposition to the whole system on which Massachusetts was founded; and gentle and forgiving as was his temper, prompt as he was to concede every thing which honesty permitted, he always asserted his belief with temperate firmness and unbending benevolence.”

“He had written an essay on the nature of the tenure by which the colonists held their land in America; and he had argued that an English patent could not invalidate the rights of the native inhabitants. The opinion sounded at first like treason against the cherished charter of the colony,” but, on the explanation of Williams, the court became more satisfied.

“But the principles of Roger Williams led him into perpetual collision with the clergy and the government of Massachusetts. It had ever been their custom to respect the Church of England, and in the mother country, they frequented its service without scruple; yet its principles and its administration were still harshly exclusive. Williams would hold no communion with intolerance; for, said he, ‘the doctrine of persecution for cause of conscience, is most evidently and lamentably contrary to the doctrine of Christ Jesus.’ The magistrates insisted on the presence of every man at public worship; Williams reprobated the law.”

Roger Williams.	Banishment.	Leaves Salem.
-----------------	-------------	---------------

“But the controversy finally turned on the question of the 1634  
rights and duty of magistrates to guard the minds of the people against corruption, and to punish what would seem to them error and heresy. Magistrates, Williams asserted, are but the agents of the people, or its trustees, on whom no spiritual power, in matters of worship, can ever be conferred ; since conscience belongs to the individual, and is not the property of the body politic.”

The independence of Williams gave great offence to the magistrates. He was summoned to appear before the representatives of the State. There he reiterated his convictions, and expressed his readiness to be imprisoned, banished or 1635  
even to suffer death, rather than to “renounce the opinions which had dawned upon his mind in the clearness of light.”

The sentence of exile was pronounced against him, yet not by a large majority ; and was vindicated on the ground that the application of the new doctrine, “to the construction of the patent, to the discipline of the churches,” and to the oath for trying the fidelity of the people, which Williams had opposed, seemed about to subvert the government of the country.

As winter was approaching, permission was granted him to remain until spring ; but the people of Salem gave such strong evidence of their attachment to him, that the government thought it dangerous for him to remain where any influence could be exerted. It was therefore concluded to send him to England. But when the officers were sent for him, he was not to be found. He had left Salem, in the severity of winter, and for fourteen weeks he knew not where to find a home. “Often in the stormy night, he had neither [fire, nor food, nor company ; often he wandered without a guide, and had no house but a hollow tree. But he was not

---

 Befriended by the Indians.

 Finds Providence.
 

---

without friends. The same scrupulous respect for the rights of others, which had led him to defend freedom of conscience, had made him also the champion of the Indians. He had already been zealous to acquire their language, and knew it so well that he could debate with them in their own dialect. During his residence at Plymouth, he had often been the guest of the neighboring sachems, and now, when he came in winter to the cabin of the chief of Pokanoket, he was welcomed by Massasoit; and 'the barbarous heart of Canonieus, the chief of the Narragansetts, loved him as his son to the last gasp.' 'The ravens,' he relates with gratitude, 'fed me in the wilderness.' And in requital for their hospitality, he was ever through his long life, their friend and benefactor; the apostle of Christianity to them without hire, without weariness, and without impatience at their idolatry; the guardian of their rights; the pacificator, when their rude passions were inflamed; and their unflinching advocate and protector, whenever Europeans attempted an invasion of their rights;" and he affirms, that in all his intercourse with them, he never found one native American who denied the existence of a God.

Roger Williams found the Narragansetts at enmity with Massasoit, sachem of the Wampanoags. By his intervention and judicious management, he succeeded in restoring peace between them.

1636 When the spring opened, Williams selected a spot for building, which proved to be within the patent for Plymouth. This, therefore, was relinquished, and with five companions he proceeded a little farther where he could be entirely independent, and, in token of humble reliance on divine protection, he called the place Providence, intending to found a shelter for those who were persecuted for their

---

Increased emigration.

---

religion. Thus commenced the State of Rhode Island. Here some of his friends followed him, and in the course of two years, many had fled to the asylum thus originated.

The place where Williams had settled, was within the territory of the Narragansett Indians ; and it was not long before a deed from their chiefs conveyed to him a considerable extent of country.

In the conduct of the founder of Rhode Island towards his persecutors, may be seen an exemplification of the forgiving spirit of Christianity. Roger Williams never harbored feelings of revenge. On the contrary, he was ever ready to show kindness towards those who had treated him with so much intolerance.

The first difficulties having been surmounted in the settlement of New England, the liberties to be enjoyed induced many others to seek there a home. New settlements were therefore formed. The town of Concord was commenced about this time by a party who made its way through the woods along Indian paths.

In 1635, three thousand new settlers were added to the Massachusetts colony. Among them was Henry Vane, the younger, a man of high rank, represented to have been of pure mind and spotless integrity. He was soon elected governor ; but, although a man of great talent, his residence in the country had not been long enough to enable him properly to fulfil the duties of the office. 1635

Soon after his arrival proposals were received from other men of elevated rank, to remove to Massachusetts, if they could retain their hereditary dignity. A proposition so inconsistent with the spirit of republicanism, was considered, but declined.

Soon after the expulsion of Roger Williams, religious dis-

New religious dissensions.

Anne Hutchinson.

sensions again involved the colony in much difficulty. Another party arose, differing in some respects from the Puritans, and contending for freedom of religious opinion. Every man, said they, should act according to the dictates of his own conscience. The founder of this party was Anne Hutchinson, a woman of eloquence and ability, whose influence was extending to such a degree that the clergy became alarmed. John Wheelwright, her brother, and Henry Vane, governor of the colony, favored the new opinions.

1637 The subject assumed a high degree of political importance. The general court censured Wheelwright for sedition. This measure set the parties still further at variance. The dispute infused its spirit into every thing, and interfered with the administration of the government, until finally the magistrates concluded that the preservation of the peace demanded the suppression of the new party; and they proceeded to pass sentence on some of the most prominent members.

Anne Hutchinson and Wheelwright were exiled from Massachusetts; and their adherents, who, it was thought, were ready to rebel against the authority of the colonial government, were required to deliver up their arms.

1638 Wheelwright and his particular friends removed to the banks of the Piscataqua, and founded the town of Exeter. The larger proportion of the party, proceeding southward, were invited by Roger Williams to settle in his vicinity; and through his influence, and that of Henry Vane, the Narragansetts granted to them the island of Rhode Island.

Thus the intolerance of Massachusetts became the indirect means of extending the settlement of New England; while the persecution of the new party did not lessen their determination to uphold the right of conscience. Henry Vane having witnessed the exile of those whose views accorded with his own, soon after returned to England.

---

 Distinct settlements.

 Emigration from Massachusetts.
 

---

## SETTLEMENT OF CONNECTICUT.

The beauty and fertility of the valley of the Connecticut, had before this begun to attract attention, as well as the advantages which it possessed for an internal trade in furs. The first proprietary, under the Plymouth council, had assigned his grant to Lord Say and Seal, Lord Brooke, and some others, in 1631. Before they had established any colony, a trading house at Windsor had been built by the people of Plymouth in 1633, and a profitable trade in furs commenced. Emigrants from the neighborhood of Boston had begun the settlement of Wethersfield, and the Dutch from Manhattan had made a station at Hartford, in the same year, under the name of Good Hope.

In 1635, the younger Winthrop, son of the governor of Massachusetts, was sent from England by the proprietaries, to erect a fort at the mouth of the Connecticut, and thus enforce their claim to the territory. This purpose was accomplished, and the fort was called Saybrook from the united names of the proprietaries.

In the autumn of the same year, a company of about sixty from the Massachusetts colony, began their journey to the valley of the Connecticut.

But it was too late in the season, and much suffering, privation and hardship were encountered. Early in the next year, 1636, the same in which Roger Williams settled Providence, a government was organized under a commission from Massachusetts, and the first openings of spring were the signals for preparations to depart. The arrangements being completed, early in summer, the company, consisting of about a hundred, with their wives and children, many of whom had been accustomed to affluence and ease in England, began their

---

Danger from the Indians.

---

1636 journey, led by Thomas Hooker, with no guide but a compass; and driving their cattle before them, they pursued their march through the trackless wilderness, advancing about ten miles a day, and not allowing the swamps or streams they encountered to intercept their progress.

Two distinct claims were already made to the tract, each party entirely regardless of the only rightful owners of the soil; one by the Dutch, who indulged a hope of dispossessing the English; the other by Lord Say and Seal, and Lord Brooke, who had taken possession by building a fort at the mouth of the river.

The new colony had dangers to encounter from savage warfare. The rapid progress of the English settlements alarmed the native inhabitants. They had welcomed without fear the emigrants who first landed; but the experience of a few years convinced them that the extermination of their entire race would be the consequence of their permitting Europeans to spread over the continent.

In no part of New England were the aborigines more numerous than in Connecticut. Within the boundaries of that colony lived the powerful Pequods. Although friendly at first, they began to manifest hostile intentions, and proposed to their enemies, the Narragansetts, that old animosities between them should be forgotten, and that their united strength should be directed against the invaders, before they had become too strong to be resisted.

The design had become known to Roger Williams, who immediately communicated the intelligence to the governor of Massachusetts. The known friendship of Williams for the Indians was such, that it was thought he alone might be able to frustrate it. Having received letters from the governor and council, requesting his intervention in the case, he, who had

---

Intervention of Roger Williams.The Pequods.

---

been persecuted, exiled, driven from home in the midst of a severe winter, was now willing to risk his own life to save his persecutors. There was no time to be lost. Starting alone in a poor canoe, in the midst of a storm of wind, and with a tumultuous sea, in constant danger of being overturned, he proceeded to the house of the sachem of the Narragansetts. The Pequod ambassadors had already arrived. For three days did this devoted man remain in this perilous situation, when he succeeded in breaking up the conspiracy ; thus affording another evidence that the Indians could be won by kindness, and that faithfulness to their friends formed a part of their character. Had the system of Roger Williams towards the aboriginal inhabitants of this country been invariably pursued, where would have been the cruel and bloody wars with the Indians, which now stamp with blackness the page of our history ?

Although the Narragansetts had withdrawn, the Pequods were unwilling to desist, and, enraged at the disappointment, resolved to contend alone with the English. Their warriors occupied two fortified stations, against one of which, a force of ninety Connecticut men made an attack. About day-break they approached the encampment, and found the Indians sleeping without apprehension, it having been rumored among them, that the English had retired through fear ; and, but for the barking of a dog, they would have been destroyed without resistance. The war-whoop was instantly sounded, and a strong defence made. The superiority of numbers gave them some chance of escape, until firebrands being cast upon the cabins, the whole encampment was soon in a blaze. Those who attempted to escape, were cut down by the English, and four hundred of the Indians, men, women and children, perished, most of them in the flames. In an hour the work of destruction was finished.

---

Pequod war.New Haven colony.

---

Incredible as it may seem to those who regard the Christian religion as emphatically a religion of peace, mercy and love to enemies, we are told that the English spent the night before their march on this merciless errand, in "importunate prayer!"

The resistance the colonists met with after this was considerable. The Indians were not formidable in open battle. It has belonged to civilization to invent instruments potent for the destruction of human life. It was the ambush, the secret surprise of the Indian, that was mainly to be dreaded.

"In a few days," says Bancroft, "the troops from Massachusetts arrived, attended by Wilson; for the ministers always shared every hardship, and every danger. The remnants of the Pequods were pursued into their hiding places; every wigwam was burned, every settlement was broken up, every cornfield laid waste. Sassachus, their sachem, was murdered by the Mohawks, to whom he had fled for protection. The few that survived, about two hundred, surrendering in despair, were enslaved by the English," or, dispersing themselves among the neighboring tribes, lost their existence as a separate people. The depopulated territory was claimed by right of conquest. The destruction of the Pequods struck terror into the remaining tribes, and a long season of peace succeeded, during which the colonies increased and flourished.

1637

The arrival of fresh emigrants was of frequent occurrence, and many new settlements were formed. In 1638, a Puritan colony was planted at New Haven, and annually elected a governor, independently of any other settlements. They obtained a title to the land by a treaty with the natives. This formed the third distinct political organization within the limits of the present State of Connecticut; the two others

Saybrook.

Connecticut colony.

being Saybrook, founded by the proprietaries, and Connecticut colony, under a commission from Massachusetts.\*

\* The following are some of the most striking of the laws which were passed by the New Haven dominion at an early period of its history, and being originally printed on blue paper, they were called "Blue Laws." They may serve to give the reader some idea of the character and manners of the people of those early times.

"No one shall be a freeman, or give a vote, unless he be converted, and a member in full communion of one of the churches allowed in this dominion. Each freeman shall swear by the blessed God to bear true allegiance to this dominion, and that Jesus is the only king. No Quaker, or dissenter from the established worship of this dominion, shall be allowed to give a vote for the election of magistrates or any officer. No food or lodging shall be offered to any Quaker, Adamite or other heretic. If any person turns Quaker, he shall be banished, and not suffered to return but on pain of death. No one shall run on the Sabbath day, or walk in his garden, or elsewhere, except reverently to and from meeting. No one shall travel, cook victuals, make beds, sweep houses, cut hair, or shave, on the Sabbath day. No woman shall kiss her children on the Sabbath or fasting day. The Sabbath shall begin at sunset on Saturday. A person accused of trespass in the night, shall be judged guilty, unless he clears himself by his oath. When it appears that the accused has confederates, and he refuses to discover them, he may be racked. Whosoever publishes a lie, to the prejudice of his neighbor, shall be set in the stocks, or be whipped ten stripes. No minister shall keep a school. Men-stealers shall suffer death. Whosoever wears clothes trimmed with gold, silver, or bone lace, above 2s. per yard, shall be presented by the grand jurors; and the selectmen shall tax the offender at £300 estate. No one shall read common-prayer books, keep Christmas or set days, make minced-pies, dance, play cards, or play on any instrument of music, except the drum, trumpet, and Jews-harp. When parents refuse their children convenient marriages, the magistrates shall determine the point. The selectmen, on finding children ignorant, may take them away from their parents, and put them into better hands, at the expense of their parents. A man that strikes his wife, shall pay a fine of ten pounds. A woman that strikes her husband, shall be punished as the court directs. No man shall court a maid in person, or by letter, without first obtaining the consent of her parents; £5 penalty for the first offence, £10 for the second, and for the third,

---

Blue laws of Connecticut.

---

imprisonment during the pleasure of the court. Married persons must live together or be imprisoned. Every male shall have his hair cut round according to a cap."—*Hutchinson's Hist. Mass.*

## CHAPTER IX.

### THE UNITED COLONIES OF NEW ENGLAND.

---

#### Bold measures of Massachusetts.

---

THE increase of the American colonies had attracted considerable attention in England. While the emigrants were wasting away by the hardships they endured, there was no inducement to interfere with them. But now the success of the Puritans in the new world, excited opposition from the high church party, and rendered them not unwilling to listen to unfavorable reports brought by those who had returned, after having fallen under the censure of the government in Massachusetts.

It was said that the colonists aimed at sovereignty, and that it was accounted treason to speak of appeals to the king. A requisition was therefore made for producing the letters patent of the company, in England. To this the colonists returned no reply. The archbishop of Canterbury, and others associated with him, then received full power to regulate the civil and ecclesiastical affairs of the colonies, and to revoke any charter which had been unfairly obtained, or which had conceded liberties prejudicial to the royal prerogative.

The news of this commission soon reached Boston, and it was rumored that a governor-general was on his way. The intelligence led to the boldest measures. Money was raised for erecting fortifications; the colonists resolved on resistance, and unanimously declared against the reception of a governor-general.

---

Emigration forbidden in England.

---

Meantime restraints were placed on emigration, and ships laden with passengers for New England, were stopped in the Thames by order of the council. No one above the rank of a serving-man, was allowed to emigrate, and all such were required to take the oaths of supremacy and allegiance.

1635 The council of Plymouth, having made grants to its members individually, of all the land under its jurisdiction, including that occupied by the Massachusetts colony, now resigned its charter, which had thus been rendered valueless. It was more difficult for the different parties to obtain possession of the lands thus granted them. They argued, however, that the lands belonged to Gorges, one of the proprietaries of New Hampshire, by a deed previously granted, and therefore that to the Massachusetts company was invalid. The effort was consequently made by the members of the Plymouth Company to obtain from the king a confirmation of their respective grants. They succeeded in obtaining a *quo warranto*\* against the company of Massachusetts Bay; but further movements in opposition to the colony, were suspended, in consequence of the civil difficulties in England, as well as by the death of Mason, one of the proprietaries of New Hampshire, who had been the chief instigator of these aggressive movements.

The persecution of the Puritans still continued in England, and while scourging, imprisonment, mutilation and the pillory, were inflicted on them there, the king, Charles I, prohibited their flying to the home which had now become so inviting in America, and frequently detained ships in which they had proposed to embark.

During the civil wars in which Charles I, then king of

---

\* A demand for the proof of their title; literally meaning *by what warrant*.

---

Prosperity.

---

England, became engaged, the colonies were left in a state of peace and prosperity. Through the industry and enterprise of the settlers, scarcity had yielded to abundance; the rude tenements constructed on their arrival, had given place to well built houses; and not less than fifty towns and villages had been established. Commerce as well as agriculture engaged attention. The principal exports were furs, lumber, grain and fish. The business of ship-building had been commenced at an early day, and in 1643, the manufacture of cotton received from Barbadoes, was commenced, provision having already been made for woollen and linen manufactories.

The first printing-press was established in 1639, at Cambridge; the first newspaper printed in the Boston colonies, was the Boston News Letter, a weekly paper, originated in 1704. In 1719, another paper was commenced, the Boston Gazette. A censorship of the press was then exercised, and nothing allowed to be published unless satisfactory to the colonial government.

Among the members of the English Long Parliament, were many who favored the Puritan plantations, and who were disposed to extend encouragement to them. But the people of New England were very cautious of placing themselves under its protection, being willing to forego the benefit, rather than to be subject to such laws as might be imposed upon them. Yet such commercial advantages as might be obtained without the surrender of any rights guaranteed to them in their charter, were of too much importance to be overlooked by so shrewd a people. Agents were therefore sent to England, who were favorably received, and in 1643 the Parliament released from taxation all imports and exports of the colony.

In 1642, by the request of the people of New Hampshire, that territory was annexed to Massachusetts, on equal terms.

---

Union of the colonies.

---

Not having been settled by Puritans, the system which Massachusetts had adopted, requiring that church members alone should participate in the administration of the government, was not applied to them.

1643 As early as 1637, at a time when the leading magistrates and elders of Connecticut were in Boston, a union of the colonies of New England had been proposed. In 1643 a confederation was effected, embracing the several governments of Massachusetts, Plymouth, Connecticut and New Haven, under the title of The United Colonies of New England.

The object of the alliance was mutual protection of their lives, property and liberties against dangers at home or abroad ; the local government being carefully reserved to each. Two commissioners were appointed from each colony, who were to meet annually for deliberation on the affairs of the confederacy. The subjects of peace and war, and especially Indian affairs, exclusively belonged to them. But they possessed no executive power, and it remained for the States to carry their votes into effect. Rhode Island was not admitted into the union, because it was not willing to come under the jurisdiction of Plymouth. Maine was also excluded, on account of the religious opinions of its inhabitants being different from those of the Puritans, as well as its civil administration.

The power of the natives had been increasing, as they became acquainted with the arts of civilized life. Yet they were weakened by dissensions among themselves. The Narragansetts and the Mohegans had their quarrels. Miantonomoh, chief of the Narragansetts, was at enmity with the English ; and therefore regarded Uncas, chief of the Mohegans, who were allies of the English, as doubly his enemy. Collecting his warriors together, he made a sudden attack on the Mohegans, but was defeated and taken prisoner.

---

Death of Miantonomoh.

---

Uncas applied to the commissioners of the United Colonies for advice, in the disposal of the chieftain, who finding that he had taken the life of a servant of Uncas, that he had fanned the flame of discontent with the English, in Massachusetts, as well as plunged into a bloody war, recommended his death; and Miantonomoh, who had given an asylum to Roger Williams, and befriended the settlers in Rhode Island, thus perished. His tribe was greatly exasperated, and only prevented from avenging his death, by the fear of a conflict with the English, who persevered in protecting the Mohegans. 1643

The Connecticut colony, founded by emigrants from Massachusetts, had never received a charter from England, but felt secure by its admission into the confederacy, and purchased a title to the soil, from the assigns of the Earl of Warwick, the original proprietary. Saybrook thus became incorporated with Connecticut. Rhode Island, however, excluded from the confederacy, sought the protection of England, and sent Roger Williams as its agent. His character and labors as a missionary were known in that country. He was well received there, and found no difficulty in obtaining from the Long Parliament "a free and absolute charter of civil government." On his return, letters from Parliament insured him a safe reception at Boston, from those who had passed sentence of banishment on him. In the province which he had founded, he was warmly welcomed, and large numbers of the people of Providence came out in canoes to hail his return.

The difficulties of the province were not yet over. A separate governor for the islands was appointed by the executive council in England. Fearing that this division of the territory of their small State, would lead to the annexation of the remaining soil to the adjacent governments, Williams was once more sent to England, in 1652, with a colleague, and

---

Maine annexed to Massachusetts.

---

1652 was again successful. The governor's commission was rescinded, and the charter of what now forms the State of Rhode Island, confirmed. The entire success of Williams with the executive council was in a great measure owing to the powerful intercession of Henry Vane, who had continued a warm friend of republican liberty.

In the mean time Maine had made but little progress. Sir Ferdinand Gorges, the proprietary, had expended much time and money in efforts for colonization. He had granted a city charter to the town of York, which contained about three hundred inhabitants, and sent out as deputy governor, his cousin Thomas Gorges.

The patent for Lygonia had been purchased by Rigby, and a dispute ensued between the deputies of the two proprietaries. The magistrates of Massachusetts were solicited to act as umpires, who decided, after investigating the subject, that neither party had a clear right, and they were enjoined to live in peace.

After the death of Gorges, his heirs paid no attention to the colony, and such commissioners as acted under authority from Europe, gradually withdrew. Under these circumstances, the inhabitants of Piscataqua, York and Wells, following the example of their neighbors, formed themselves into a body politic, for the purposes of self-government. Massachusetts offered her protection, and subsequently, on an examination of the great charter of the Massachusetts Bay Company, by the general court in Boston, it was voted that their jurisdiction extended over a large part of the territory of Maine. Commissioners were therefore sent to establish their claim and to settle the government; and the whole country gradually submitted to the authority of Massachusetts. The Episcopalians were not disturbed in the enjoyment of their religious liberty.

---

The right of appeal to Parliament denied.

---

In 1646, the nature of the relations with the mother country, became a subject of discussion by the general court. In consequence of an appeal to Parliament, by some disaffected persons, that body had claimed the right to reverse the decisions, and control the government of Massachusetts. This was considered as striking at the foundation of the rising commonwealth. After much deliberation, the degree of allegiance which they considered due to England was agreed upon ; and the colony proceeded to exercise the independence which it claimed.

The legislature frankly remonstrated against any assertion of the paramount authority of Parliament : “ We have not admitted,” say they, “ appeals to your authority, being assured they cannot stand with the liberty and power granted us by our charter, and would be destructive to all government.” The doctrines of colonial equality were received with favor by the committee of Parliament, and after ample deliberation they replied, “ We encourage no appeals from your justice. We leave you with all the freedom and latitude that may, in any respect, be duly claimed by you.” The establishment of a mint in 1652, was somewhat of an exercise of sovereignty.

The religious sentiments of the Puritan colonists gave a character to their institutions. Although friends of toleration had arisen in Boston, they were in the minority, and intolerance continued. Religion was still an affair of state, and to preserve its purity was considered the duty of the civil magistrate ; absence from public worship was purchased by a fine.

Baptists were prevented from preaching by fines or whipping ; but the severity of persecution fell on the Friends or Quakers. Two female members of this Society, the first who attempted

## Persecution of the Friends.

## Education.

1656 to come to Boston, and who arrived in 1656, were taken from the vessel to prison, where they were detained five weeks, and then sent from the country. A law was passed forbidding all persons of this persuasion from coming into the colony, and imposing a fine on such as should receive them at their houses. This law, not being effectual, they were banished under penalty of death for their return ; and three men and one woman suffered martyrdom by hanging, under its enactment. They pleaded that it was their especial religious duty to testify against the unrighteous laws of the colony. One of them, after being condemned to death, said, " Blessed be God, who calls me to testify against wicked and unjust men." The last words of another were, " We suffer not as evil-doers, but for conscience' sake."

On every subject but religion, Puritan legislation was mild. Its criminal law was humane ; various offences were taken from the catalogue of capital crimes. Cruelty towards animals was a civil offence. Although the first years of the residence of the Puritans in America, were years of great hardship and affliction, yet, owing to their industry, enterprise and frugality, this season of distress was soon followed by prosperity and plenty ; and when persecution ceased in England, the colonists did not feel disposed to leave the home of their adoption.

The importance of general education early impressed the minds of the New England republicans. In 1647, a law was passed in the colony of Massachusetts, requiring the establishment of a public school in every township containing fifty families, and a school of superior order for preparing boys for college, in every township containing one hundred families. The public schools of the State of Massachusetts, at this day, rank higher than those of any other State in the Union. They are supported at the public expense, and are open to all her

---

Public schools.

---

children. Some of her most influential citizens have received their education at these schools, and it is seldom, perhaps never, that a son of Massachusetts is found, in whatever part of the world, who has not sufficient education for the ordinary purposes of life.

In 1636, an appropriation was made for the building of a college, and two years afterwards, John Harvard, whose name the institution has since borne, bequeathed to it his large library and half his estate. The rest of the New England confederacy soon followed the example of Massachusetts in the adoption of a system of public school instruction.

## CHAPTER X.

### THE UNITED COLONIES OF NEW ENGLAND.

(Continued.)

---

Goffe and Whalley.

Complaints against the colony.

---

1660 THE information of the restoration of Charles II to the throne of England, was brought to Boston by the ships which conveyed as passengers, Goffe and Whalley, two of the judges who condemned Charles I. It was received with great anxiety, yet no notice was immediately taken of the event, as affairs in England were regarded as unsettled.

Goffe and Whalley having left England before Charles II was proclaimed king, did not conceal their names or characters. They were allowed to reside unmolested within the limits of Massachusetts for nearly a year, until warrants arrived from England for their apprehension. They then fled to New Haven, and concealed themselves in different places, until the zeal of the search being over, they retired to Hadley, where they passed the remainder of their lives. John Dixwell, another of the regicides, who made his escape, lived undiscovered, and by changing his name, became identified with the inhabitants of New Haven.

Massachusetts, trusting in the liberties guaranteed by its charter, was in no haste to profess allegiance to the king. When, however, it became known that the authority of Charles II was firmly established, and that complaints against the colony had been presented to both houses of Parliament, the necessity of decisive action was evident. A gen-

---

 Agents sent to England.

---

 Navigation act re-enacted.
 

---

eral court was convened, and addresses were prepared for Parliament and the monarch. The colonists petitioned for the continuance of civil and religious liberties, and requested an opportunity for defence against complaints. An agent was sent to influence Parliament on their behalf, and to intercede for a continuance of the commercial privileges granted by the Long Parliament. But the navigation act had been re-enacted, and Massachusetts could not gain an exemption from its severity.\* An expression of good will from the king was the reply to the colonial address, but this alone could not quiet the apprehensions of the colonists; and when it was rumored soon after, that a governor-general for all North America had been appointed, the general court published a declaration of rights, in which were defined the power and duty of the colony, as founded on their charter. Having in this way declared the terms on which the authority of the king should be recognized, Charles II, more than a year after his restoration, was acknowledged king by public proclamation.

Agents were then sent to England to protect the interests of the colony, who were instructed to propitiate the sovereign as far as possible, without sacrificing the independence of the country. Although favorably received they could not obtain all that the colonists desired; and they soon returned, bringing a letter from the king, containing a confirmation of the charter, and granting a general amnesty to all political offenders, during the late troubles. But the oath of allegiance

---

\* This act not only gave to the British merchant the entire trade of the colonies, but it went further, and provided that "No merchandise shall be imported into the plantations, but in English vessels, navigated by Englishmen, under penalty of forfeiture." Thus all trade with the Dutch, or any other foreign nation, was entirely prohibited.

---

The younger Winthrop sent to England.

---

was required, the administration of justice in the king's name, the complete toleration of the Church of England and a concession of the elective franchise to every inhabitant possessing a competent estate. The only one of these which was complied with, was that which required justice to be administered in the king's name.

1660 The remaining New England colonies pursued a different course toward the British government from that which Massachusetts so fearlessly adopted. The authority of Charles II was early acknowledged in Plymouth, Connecticut, New Haven and Rhode Island.

The news of the restoration awakened a desire for a patent in the Connecticut colony, and the younger Winthrop, son of the estimable governor of Massachusetts, John Winthrop, was sent to England as their agent. They had purchased their territory from the Mohegans, and had also bought the claim of the British proprietaries. This they pleaded with the king, and drew up a charter which it was hoped he would ratify.

The colonists could not perhaps have selected a better or more suitable agent. Such had been his interest in the colonies, that he had allowed his large estate to be sacrificed in "furthering the great work" in Massachusetts, and had afterwards been instrumental in planting Connecticut. Confidence in his integrity and uprightness was universal; extending to all who had intercourse with him, the Dutch at New York, as well as the English. Of expanded mind, he respected virtue wherever found; and when the Friends or Quakers had become objects of persecution, his influence was used in their behalf.

Such was the person to whom Connecticut confided its interests; and he was successful. An ample patent was obtained. The charter connected New Haven with Hartford

---

He is successful.Ample patent obtained.

---

in one colony, of which the limits were extended from the Narragansett river to the Pacific Ocean. It conferred on the colonists, unqualified power to govern themselves, and no provision was made for the interference of the English government, in any event whatever. Connecticut was virtually independent. On his return to America, Winthrop was cordially welcomed. The union of the two colonies could not be effected without collision, but the wise moderation of Winthrop reconciled the difficulties and blended their interests. He enjoyed the confidence of the colony through the remainder of his life, and was annually chosen governor for fourteen years. Connecticut was happy in its charter; and this one act of Charles II, says Bancroft, is sufficient to "redeem his life from the charge of having been unproductive of public happiness." For more than a century peace existed within its borders, and with short exceptions, its history is the picture of colonial happiness. Its government was exercised by a community of farmers, with leisure to reflect, who cherished education, and who had neither a nobility nor an ignorant and turbulent populace. For a long time there was hardly a lawyer in the land. In those days of simplicity, the best house required no fastening but a latch lifted by a string; bolts and locks were unknown. For a century, its population doubled in each successive twenty years. The fields, the hills and the rivers supplied the settlers with food; little was produced for a foreign market, and few imported luxuries were admitted. Their clothing was the result of domestic industry in spinning and weaving.

Education claimed attention, and common schools were early established. Yale College, at New Haven, was commenced in 1700. It was small at first, in proportion to the means of the inhabitants, but it is now one of the first literary institutions in the country.

---

Commissioners are appointed in England.

---

A charter for Rhode Island was obtained by its agent from Charles II, which included all the privileges that had been granted to Connecticut, and, in some respects, was still more liberal. No oath of allegiance was required, and complete religious toleration was established.

When the news was received that the charter had arrived, joy spread throughout the colony, and the whole body of the people gathered together, formally to receive the letters patent. Massachusetts had been unwilling to admit Rhode Island into the confederacy, as a separate colony; now without her aid, she was secure, with a liberal charter.

The English government had always questioned the right of the Dutch to their settlements on the Hudson river. Charles II being resolved to dispossess them, granted the territory to his brother, the Duke of York, who sent four ships for their reduction. The same vessels conveyed also commissioners, who had been appointed to regulate the affairs of New England.

1664 The people of Massachusetts were not insensible to the dangers they had incurred by their refusal to comply with the demands of the king, and they soon had occasion for the exercise of much firmness. False reports had been mingled with correct information, concerning the colony, and it was rumored that they had formed themselves into a confederacy for the purpose of throwing off the dominion of England. The appointment of the commissioners was the consequence.

When this information was circulated in Boston, and there was reason to fear that ships of war would soon anchor in the harbor, precautionary measures were taken for the preservation of the charter, and strict obedience to the laws of Massachusetts was required. A day of fasting and prayer was

---

 Their arrival.

---

 They are opposed.
 

---

appointed. The information thus became diffused throughout 1664 the colony.

On the arrival of the commissioners, no immediate exertion of power on their part was attempted, but the general court was assembled. A letter from the king was laid before them, requiring prompt assistance in the expedition against New Netherlands, and it was agreed to levy two hundred men. This was done, although the men were not called to actual service.

But, as the charter did not require the establishment of a commission, the general court resolved to resist the orders of the king. They therefore prohibited all reference to the commissioners by the people, and prepared a remonstrance to the king, in which they set forth the privileges granted to them under their charter, the dangers to which they would be exposed from the arbitrary power of strangers, and the loss to the king if the plantation should be ruined. It was hoped to weary the English government by a tedious correspondence, which might be continued till some change there should occur favorable to liberty in America.

The authority of the commissioners having been denied in Massachusetts, they were particularly desirous of avoiding collisions in the other colonies. Rhode Island received them favorably, and the people of Plymouth did not actively oppose them. In Connecticut they attempted nothing but for the benefit of the colony. In New Hampshire they endeavored to establish the claims of royalty, but here again Massachusetts resisted, and forbade the towns on the Piscataqua to meet, or in any thing to obey the commission. In Maine they were more successful for a time, but soon after their departure, Massachusetts again established her authority.

Notwithstanding the decisive action of Massachusetts, New

---

Attempts to convert the natives.John Eliot.

---

England after this enjoyed a season of prosperous tranquillity, the king being too much engaged with disturbances at home to interfere with the government of the colonies.

The villages of New England already excited admiration. Massachusetts possessed a widely extended trade, commerce had increased, and such was the prosperity of the country that, after the great fire in London, large contributions were sent to the sufferers from their transatlantic brethren. The population has been variously estimated. It may have been, in 1675, about fifty-five thousand, of which the government of Massachusetts comprised about one half.

Some attempts had been made to convert the natives, and instil into them habits of industry. But it was left for John Eliot to give the work a leading impulse. This devoted man labored faithfully, giving his time and energies to the cause. The Indians were taught to read and write. Some of them spoke English tolerably well; and Eliot endeavored to gather them into permanent villages, and to induce them to adopt the customs of civilized life. He prepared an Indian grammar, and made and published a translation of the whole Bible in the Massachusetts dialect. He taught the men how to cultivate the ground, and the women habits of domestic industry. He established for them simple forms of government, and instructed them in the principles of Christianity, while his simplicity of life and manners and the sweetness of his temper won the affections of the natives and emigrants.

There were others who endeavored to instruct the natives in the Christian religion, and with happy results. The Indians, under these favorable influences, preserved in some instances an unbroken friendship with the whites in their immediate neighborhood, although they were many times more numerous, and, had they chosen, might probably have entirely exterminated their white neighbors.

## Apprehensions of the Indians.

## Philip of Pokanoket.

Yet the influence of Christianity did not extend far, and the Narragansetts, a powerful tribe, with Philip of Pokanoket and his warriors, retained their adhesion to paganism. The increase of the English alarmed those Indians who were unwilling to change their manner of life, and who now found themselves deprived of their usual means of subsistence, hemmed in between the colony of Connecticut on one side, and Plymouth on the other.

Although the inhabitants of New England had, in most instances, obtained a title to the soil from the native inhabitants, yet in the sales of land, great advantages had been taken of them; the worth of their grounds had not been given them, but sundry articles of little value, and less use, with which their untutored minds were for the time pleased. The Indians had also been crowded into narrow necks of land, where they could be more readily watched; and we may suppose that the unlettered savage could hardly realize that by affixing "a shapeless mark to a bond" he was to lose his entire claim to large tracts of land.

The Confederacy of the Pokanokets appears to have been the first to awaken to a sense of the danger of extermination. Its aged chief Massasoit, who had in the first place welcomed the Pilgrims to New England, and afterwards given an asylum to the founder of Rhode Island, was now deceased. His son Philip had succeeded him as chief over allied tribes.

As the villages of the English drew nearer and nearer to them, they found themselves deprived of their land by their own legal contracts, and confined to small sections. Collisions and mutual distrust were the consequences, and when expressions of passion on the part of the Indians reached the ears of the English, their fears magnified the designs into an organized scheme of resistance. The wrath of the Pokanokets had

---

King Philip's war.

---

1676 been excited by one of their chieftains being obliged to submit to an examination of the English, and to the judgment of an English tribunal. This led to the murder of eight or nine of the colonists, and the alarm of war rapidly spread.

When the intelligence reached Philip, he is said to have wept. He found himself involved in war against his judgment and his will ; for he felt that there was no prospect of success. The news of the rising of the Pokanokets was the signal for the commencement of devastations, and within a few weeks the war extended over a space of three hundred miles.

The minds of the New Englanders were alive to the horrors of savage warfare, and superstition lent its aid to increase the excitement. "The sighing of the wind was like the whistling of bullets," and invisible troops of horses were said to have been distinctly heard galloping through the air.

The Pokanokets were soon driven from their quarters at Mount Hope, and Philip became a wanderer among other tribes. A treaty of neutrality was then extorted from the Narragansetts, but Philip with his warriors spread through the country, exciting the natives to an exterminating warfare.

The Indians could not cope with the English in open battle ; their strength lay in ambushes and surprises. They were fleet, and acquainted with all the paths of the forest ; they could hide in the thickets, or retreat into the swamps. By their rapid movements they seemed to be everywhere. Many of the English were shot dead without a moment's warning ; town after town was burned, others were deserted, and for a year New England was kept in a state of terror and excitement.

The English were not the only sufferers ; and war, as it always does, brought a catalogue of evils in its train, much

---

Burning of the cabins.

---

greater than those it is designed to avert. We shall see by 1676 the history of Pennsylvania, whether uniform kindness and conciliatory measures might not have preserved the peace, and thereby prevented the suffering and anguish, the loss of life and of property, as well as the corruption of morals, consequent upon war. Roger Williams, although he could not prevent the war, was assured by Philip and his confederates that he should never be injured, for "he was a good man, and had been kind to them formerly."

The commissioners of the United Colonies now declared the Narragansetts to be accessory to the outrages perpetrated by the Indians that were at open war. It was therefore determined to consider them as enemies, and their cabins, where the warriors were receiving shelter during the winter, were set on fire. All their winter stores were consumed, their wigwams and all the little comforts of savage life; and their men, women, and children, "no man knoweth how many hundred of them," were burned to death. "The scene was horrible. The yells and shouts of the savages were mingled with the roar of the musketry, the crackling of fire, and the screams and wailings of the women, children and old men, who were roasting in the wigwams; for if they escaped for a moment from their burning shelter, they were driven back by the muskets." Those who did escape hid themselves in a swamp, where, without food or shelter, many of them perished in the snow.

Scenes like the foregoing were better buried in oblivion, but that the record of them is necessary to the proper solution of the question, why the red man fades away at the approach of civilization.

The English seemed bent upon the destruction of the Indians and made use of those who were their allies, in the work of death. At length, many of them became suppliants for peace;

---

Narragansetts destroyed.Death of Philip.

---

1676 to use the words of Cotton Mather, having "neither strength nor sense left them to do any thing for their own defence." But Philip refused to submit. He was still a wanderer, chased from one hiding place to another. Finding at length his wife and only son were taken prisoners, "My heart breaks," the chieftain exclaimed, "now I am ready to die." The colonists were at a loss how to dispose of the son, an interesting boy of about nine years of age, but they concluded to sell him into bondage; and the last of the family of Massasoit, of him who had welcomed the Pilgrims to the shores of New England, and had ever after been their friend, was sold to toil as a slave in the Island of Bermuda.

The sword, fire, famine and sickness had now nearly swept the once powerful Narragansetts from the earth. Scarcely one hundred men remained of the tribe. This cruel war was brought to a close by the death of Philip. He and his few remaining men were surprised in their encampment, and so surrounded by whites and Indians in ambush, that there was no escape. Thus perished Philip of Pokanoket.\*

To certain of the tribes the colonists would grant no terms of capitulation. Even some who had surrendered on condition of life being spared, were executed by the government. In the disposition of the prisoners taken in the war, many were put to death, and others sold as slaves, most of whom were sent to Bermuda. The land belonging to the tribe of the Pokanokets, was annexed to the colony by right of conquest.

The estimated number of the English who fell in battle, who were massacred in their houses, or who were taken pris-

---

\* See "History of King Philip's War," by Captain Church.

---

Results of the war.

---

oners and afterwards expired under torture, is six hundred. There was scarcely a family that had not lost one of its members. Besides this loss of life, we find the following summary of the cost of the war : "Thirteen towns in Massachusetts, Plymouth and Rhode Island, destroyed, and many others greatly injured ; six hundred dwelling houses burned ; a vast amount of goods and cattle, one hundred thousand pounds in money, and an incalculable amount in crippled limbs, broken health, ruined morals, and the conversion of men, who might have been producers, into worthless drones, wasteful spend-thrifts, or unprincipled plunderers. The loss to the Indians cannot be told. It is estimated that not less than three thousand of them were slaughtered during this terrible struggle." \*

The Mohegans remained faithful to the English, and the soil of Connecticut escaped these disasters ; not a drop of blood was there shed.

During this perilous period, the Society of Friends, who believe all wars, both offensive and defensive, to be contrary to the spirit of Christianity, refused to take any part against the Indians, or to place themselves under the protection of English garrisons. Those who were faithful to these principles, were preserved, without an exception. Their peaceable aspect invited no aggression ; and the evident confidence which they reposed in the Indians, disarmed all feeling of hostility.

One of the unhappy results of this war, was the breaking up of the settlements of the "Praying Indians," converted through the labors of Eliot. Through difficulties and discouragements he had for thirty years pressed forward in his labors, and had

---

\* Review of Graham's Colonial History.

---

Further results of the war.

---

been cheered by the blessing that had crowned his exertions. But the scene was now changed, and the close of his life was saddened by a dark cloud upon his hopes.

Possessing the confidence of neither party, Eliot's converts suffered harsh injustice. The Indians looked upon them as allies of the English; the English regarded them with suspicion. It was believed that they would at any moment render assistance to the hostile Indians, and being acquainted with the habits and force of the English, would be the more dangerous should they go over to the enemy. This opinion was strengthened by the fact, that a few actually joined Philip, though by far the greater number remained true to the English. On the most groundless suspicion, they were attacked, and in one instance a lad was killed, and some other persons wounded. One who had acted as guide and interpreter, was killed, another taken prisoner, and sold as a slave. A number were seized and sent to Boston for trial, on an accusation without any foundation, and those who befriended them during the trial, brought indignation upon themselves.

In consequence of the excitement against them, one company was removed to Deer Island, where they necessarily endured much suffering; others, forsaking their settlement, fled far into the forest, where they were exposed to cold and hunger. "We are sorry," said they, "that the English have driven us from our praying to God, and from our teacher."

At the close of the war the survivors were allowed to return to their settlements, but a blow had been inflicted on the progress of Christianity among the Indians, from which it never recovered.

In relation to this disastrous result, Cotton Mather remarks: "Had we but done half so much as the French papists have

---

Controversy with Charles II.

---

done to proselyte the Indians unto the Christian faith, instead of being snares and traps unto us, and scourges in our sides, and thorns in our eyes, they would have been a wall unto us both by night and by day. What a sting was there in those words which the Indians have used unto some of our captives: 'Had the English been as careful to instruct us as the French, we had been of your religion.' "

During these difficulties, Massachusetts did not apply to the parent country for assistance, and nothing was received to repair the losses. While the war raged, Charles II was endeavoring to re-assume the government of Massachusetts and to regain possession of New Hampshire and Maine. He had been treating with the heirs of Gorges; but before any negotiation was completed, Massachusetts purchased their claims, and thus came into possession of the State of Maine as far as the Kennebec. New Hampshire became a royal province, but through its general assembly, expressed its sense of the kindness of Massachusetts, while under its government.

The merchants and manufacturers of England feared the colony as their rival. Their complaints had been received with favor, and laws restricting commerce hence became a subject of dispute between the colony and the crown. The controversy with Charles II was continued until 1684, when 1684 Massachusetts, unwilling to submit to the arbitrary requisitions of the king, which she considered inconsistent with her chartered rights, was compelled to relinquish that charter, which had been cherished with so much anxiety, and on which the liberties of New England had rested.

In 1686, after the accession of James II to the throne of England, Sir Edmond Andros was appointed governor of all New England. James wished to break the several charters,

---

Oppressive regulations.      Andros governor-general of the northern colonies.

---

and by uniting the northern colonies in one, more effectually  
 1686 to resist the encroachments of the French from Canada. The  
 governor was authorized to make laws and levy taxes, with  
 the approbation of a council to be originally appointed by the  
 crown, but the members of which might be removed by  
 Andros. He was also instructed to sustain his authority by  
 force, to allow no printing-press in the colony, and to encour-  
 age Episcopacy.

A series of oppressive regulations followed. Land titles  
 were declared void, and great profits anticipated from the new  
 grants which must be taken. Additional taxes and duties  
 were imposed. None were allowed to leave the country with-  
 out special permission, and the schools of learning were left  
 unsustained.

In Rhode Island, Andros dissolved the government. In  
 the fall of 1687, he proceeded to Connecticut to assume the  
 control of that colony. He demanded the surrender of the  
 1687 charter, but that was concealed in the hollow of an oak, the  
 "Charter Oak," held in remembrance to this day. Yet the  
 colonists were obliged to submit to his jurisdiction.

In 1688, the provinces of New York and New Jersey were  
 added to the dominion of Andros. He quickly hastened  
 1688 south to take possession ; and now the whole territory from  
 Maine to the Delaware was united under his despotic rule.

The New England colonies could not submit without a  
 struggle. Increase Mather, son of Cotton Mather, was sent  
 to England to make an appeal to the king, and embarked  
 without detection.

But relief came by the revolution of 1688. When the  
 news arrived in Boston of the invasion of England, and  
 that the Prince of Orange had been declared king, the  
 whole town rose, with determined resolution ; the former

---

Andros imprisoned.Former government restored.

---

magistrates were reinstated, and Andros, with his most prominent adherents, was imprisoned. Town meetings were held throughout the colony, when nearly all the towns voted to restore the former government. The example of Massachusetts was followed by the other New England colonies. 1689

## CHAPTER XI.

NEW ENGLAND. (*Continued.*)

---

Regulations of king William.

---

By the revolution of 1688, the people of Massachusetts had anticipated the restoration of their charter. In this they were disappointed, although king William was finally induced to grant another, less liberal in its nature than the former. He reserved to himself the appointment of governor, who might call and dissolve the legislature at his pleasure. The judicial officers were also to be appointed by him, with the consent of his council. A considerable addition was made to the territory of Massachusetts. The new charter embraced Plymouth colony, and the Elizabeth islands, Maine and Nova Scotia ; also the country extending north to the river St. Lawrence. New Hampshire was omitted, and ever afterwards remained a separate government.

1692 Sir William Phipps, the first governor appointed by king William, arrived in Boston in 1692. The general court was immediately convened and the new charter accepted without opposition.

Meantime difficulties with the Indians continued, and attacks were frequently made on the settlements and forts. Deep in feelings of revenge, as well as of friendship, they were led in some instances to particular massacres, which of course only increased hostilities. In 1689, the natives found an opportunity of avenging a violation of good faith which had occurred some years before, when three hundred and fifty

---

Expedition against the French at P. Royal.    General Congress in N. Y.

---

Indians, who had come to Dover to trade, after having entered into a treaty, were seized, and sent to Boston to be sold as slaves. The same person then in command was now stationed at Dover. The Indians surprised the people by night, gained access to the forts, and destroyed those who opposed them. The commanding officer and about twenty others were killed; nearly thirty were taken into Canada, and sold to the French.

War between France and England was deemed sufficient cause for corresponding aggressions on this side of the Atlantic. French privateers from Acadia, now Nova Scotia, were destroying the shipping on the coast. This induced the general court of Massachusetts to send an expedition against Port Royal, its chief town, which was successful, and the whole of Acadia submitted, but was recovered by France in 1696.

The history of these times is fraught with difficulties and dissensions, skirmishes and surprises, between the English on the one hand, and the French alone, or the French and Indians combined, on the other. The spirit of Him who commanded "Love your enemies," found little place in the feelings of the English or French colonists toward one another. On the 1st of Fifth month, (May,) 1690, at the instigation of Massachusetts, a general congress, the first held in America, 1690 assembled in New York. Danger, it was thought, showed the necessity of union. The design was formed of reducing all Canada to the British government; in pursuance of which an army was sent against Montreal, by way of Lake Champlain, while Massachusetts sent a fleet to attack Quebec. Both expeditions entirely failed; the ships on their return were scattered by storms, and some were wrecked. The loss to Massachusetts is estimated to have been one thousand men, and by the undertaking, the colony was involved in great

---

Superstition.Delusion not confined to New England.

---

expenses, to defray which, it became necessary to issue bills of credit. This afterwards caused much dissatisfaction, as their value greatly depreciated.

1690 At this time the minds of the people were deeply imbued with superstition. Imagination, aided by this powerful stimulus, produced mysterious appearances, and a belief in witchcraft spread throughout the land. In more recent times, also, we have perceived traces of the same feeling when we have heard of spectres rising up among the tombs.

This strange delusion was not confined to New England; it existed to a greater or less extent in many civilized countries. In England, a law had been enacted punishing witchcraft with death, and many had there been tried and executed. In France still more were condemned, and in Scotland much persecution and suffering were endured on this account. Narrations of trials and confessions had been published, and having reached New England, were widely circulated. "They were read in a time of deep distress and gloom, by a people naturally sedate, and accustomed to regard with awe the surprising and unaccountable incidents and appearances, which, in this new world, were often presented to their contemplation."

But whatever may have been the cause of this remarkable superstition, it prevailed to an astonishing extent. It was used as a means of oppression and cruelty, and under the same commission, persons were punished for heresy and witchcraft, and Cotton Mather, a prominent preacher, asserted that the "devils broke in upon the country after as astonishing a manner as was ever heard of." Soon after the arrival of the new governor, a court was instituted for the trial of persons accused of the evil influence.

In 1688, Cotton Mather drew up an account of the investigation of a case, said to have been conducted "with a de-

---

A case at Danvers.

---

gree of solemnity, that made a deep impression on the minds of the people." This was printed and circulated throughout New England, and published also in England, where Richard Baxter wrote a preface to the narrative, in which he concluded "every one who refused to believe it an obdurate Sadducee."

It may not be uninteresting to trace particularly one case. Early in 1692, two children in the family of Samuel Parris, the minister of Salem village, now Danvers, his daughter and his niece, "began to behave in a strange manner; they would creep under chairs, sit in uncommon attitudes, and utter languages which none could understand. As they were pitied and indulged, their freaks increased, until it was thought they must be bewitched, and the physicians, when called in, confirmed the opinion." In this family were two Indian slaves, John and Tituba, his wife; the latter informed Parris that "although no witch herself, she once served a mistress who was, and who taught her how to find them out; and she would try upon the children without hurting them. Parris eagerly took with her scheme, and saw her take rye meal and knead a cake, which she salted in a peculiar manner, and which she said, when baked in green cabbage leaves in the embers, and eaten by the two girls, would make them see their tormentors; and she continued the experiment. But although she and her master affected to talk and act mysteriously, yet the children, as they crept about shrewdly under the chairs, eyed the cooking with a very jealous interest; and when they became conscious that the unsavory morsel was for their mouths, they grew restive, for no necromancy could satisfy them that Tituba's briny bread was like gingerbread, or any thing good, and they began to show a rational opposition. But Tituba said they must eat, and Parris began to use authority. One of the children said she would smell of the cake, and begged for

---

A case at Danvers.

---

1692

that to answer. But the girl shook her head. Said the father, 'How natural they seem!' About the same time the girl pulled the rank cake from the embers, and as the hot scent filled the room, Abigail cried out, 'There, there, I see them as plain as day.' 'And so do I,' said little Elizabeth; 'O how many! and there's old Tit, too; she torments us.' 'Old Tit torments us,' said they both. It was now all over with the magician. In vain she frowned and coaxed by turns, or denied that the girls could see witch spectres by the smell of her cake only. She discredited her own magic. The more she labored, the more they professed to be tormented; until Parris himself took their part, and threatened Tituba with punishment, unless she confessed and disclosed her confederate witches. And John, too, her husband, when he saw her in distress, meanly deserted her. He told master Parris that the girls no doubt spoke the truth; that she had a long time tormented him, and was an old hand at it. But discouraged and deserted as she was, her master's whip alone, as she afterwards affirmed, brought her to lie, and to confess that the devil had engaged her to sign his book, and to afflict the children." Tituba was saved as a living witness to the reality of witchcraft. She was imprisoned, and afterward sold as a slave. These persons were thought to have made "a covenant with the devil," resigning to him "both soul and body," promising "to honor and serve him forever," and signing "his book." The book in which their signatures were said to have been written, or marks made, sometimes with blood, is minutely described by Cotton Mather, giving the length, breadth, color, etc. The delusion spread, and accusations increased. "So firmly convinced were the magistrates, that the prince of darkness was in the midst of them, using human instruments to accomplish his purposes, that the slightest

---

The delusion spreads.

---

testimony was deemed sufficient to justify commitment for trial."

Children accused their parents ; one of the ministers, Geo. Burroughs, and an aged man named George Jacobs, were condemned on account partly of the evidence of the granddaughter of Jacobs, who was terrified into confession by the threat of being hanged, and used as a witness, for which she was liberated. But upon their being condemned to death, she sent to the magistrates a recantation, and was again committed to prison. "There on her knees, and with many tears, she begged pardon of those whom she had so deeply injured ; they kindly strove to console her, prayed with her, and forgave her." But her statement to the magistrates was of no avail ; her grandfather and Burroughs were hung."

Those who confessed witchcraft, after having been condemned, were released ; while those who retracted a confession, were either hung, or imprisoned for trial. The life of this young woman, however, was saved by a fit of sickness, which necessarily deferred her trial, until the last session of the court had terminated, which so readily condemned those brought up before it ; and she was tried before one newly organized, where she was found not guilty.

Burroughs declared his innocence to the last, and denied that there could be such a thing as witchcraft. It was a new thing to hang a minister as a witch, and the spectators were much affected ; but Cotton Mather asserted that "the devil could sometimes assume the appearance of an angel of light," and the proceedings continued.

In the commencement of this delusion, the persons accused were in the lower walks of life, and in many cases, guilty of some crime, but now no one seemed exempt, and every one became alarmed for himself or his friends ; twenty persons had been put to death ; the jails were full of the accused.

---

Calef ridicules the subject.Recantations.

---

1693 But the night of darkness soon began to pass away. The error was combated by writers of ability. In the autumn of 1693, Robert Calef, a Boston merchant, published a narrative in which he boldly exposed the whole subject to ridicule, and for which he brought upon himself the displeasure of those who had taken an active part in the trials. But a new court had been instituted. Those brought up for trial were in most instances acquitted, others were reprieved by the governor, and those in prison were set at liberty. Many of the witnesses afterward came forward and published "the most solemn recantations of the testimony they formerly gave, both against themselves and others, apologizing for their perjury by a protestation, of which all were constrained to admit the force, that no other means of saving their lives had been left them." But the dead could not be recalled; and the loss of a father or mother, a brother or sister, remained to remind many families of the dark days of New England superstition.

Under the new charter, all former acts restricting colonial commerce were renewed; this being deemed necessary to protect the interests of the landholders at home. The industry of the colonists was much restrained by taxation, and the conveyance of wool in any form to any of the other colonies, was entirely prohibited. At this early day, the increasing power and wealth of the colonists began to excite apprehension in the minds of the English, that their dependence on the mother country would, after a few years, be entirely thrown off; and that they would declare themselves an independent nation, if not now kept in check by being made subject to the king.

The horrors of savage warfare were not yet over in New England; New York was spared by being at peace with the Five Nations, with whom the French also had executed a treaty. The renewal of war in Europe increased the hostil-

---

Incursions of the French and Indians.

---

ity between the French and English colonies. The French from Canada, with their Indian allies, after a long march through the snow, would suddenly burst upon some peaceful village, setting fire to the houses, and either killing or making captives of men, women and children. In this way Deerfield was destroyed. Forty-seven of the inhabitants 1704 were killed, and one hundred and twelve made prisoners. Of these, if any became fatigued or feeble, while on their march to Canada, the tomahawk ended their temporal sorrows. For two years or more after this, the Indians roamed stealthily over the country, executing their murderous work, and then suddenly disappearing.

In 1708, a general attack on New England was planned. The French were ready, but many of their Indian allies gave out, and did not meet at the place of rendezvous. Although prevented from carrying out their original designs, they re- 1708 solved to accomplish a part of their object, and with those Indian allies who were not yet weary of the cruel work, they suddenly burst on the town of Haverhill, at daybreak, attacking simultaneously different parts of the village. The tomahawk and the rifle spared not their victims, and many of the inhabitants were slaughtered on the spot.

The heart sickens at the relation of these barbarities; yet they form a part of the history of our country, and are recorded in that book which human eye sees not. The desire was excited among the New Englanders to exterminate the natives, and a reward was offered for every Indian scalp.

The conquest of Newfoundland had been repeatedly attempted by the English, and unsuccessful expeditions against Canada and Acadia, now Nova Scotia, had been fitted out by the colonies. At length in 1710, the New England colonies, with some assistance from England, succeeded in taking

---

Subjugation of Nova Scotia. Expedition against Quebec and Montreal.

---

Port Royal, and gave to the place the name of Annapolis, in honor of Queen Anne. From this period, the British government has retained possession of Nova Scotia; her right to it having been confirmed by the treaty of Utrecht in 1713. Encouraged by success, as well as stimulated by fear, on account of the extent of the possessions of the French on the west and southwest, by which they could pass from Canada to the Gulf of Mexico, an expedition was fitted out the following year, against Quebec and Montreal. Information of this was timely received by the French. Friendship was renewed with the natives, and through the influence of the Jesuits, who had been as missionaries among them, extended to other tribes. The British fleet, however, never reached Quebec. Eight ships were wrecked in the St. Lawrence, with the loss of upwards of eight hundred lives; the remainder returned home.

1713 At length the European war terminated, and the treaty of Utrecht put an end for a time to hostilities between the English and French colonies in America.

The New Englanders now found themselves encumbered with a heavy public debt. Bills of credit were allowed to be issued, the value of which depreciated, notwithstanding the exertions of the different legislatures, occasioning much dissatisfaction to the holders of those bills.

The people of Massachusetts, always firm in the maintenance of whatever they considered their rights, after the reception of their second charter, and when they were required to receive a governor appointed by the king, had refused him any fixed salary, but had voted annually such donations as his services appeared to deserve, with the view of attaching him to the interests of the people by rendering him dependent on them. All efforts for a fixed salary had been strenuously resisted. In 1728, the

---

Attacks by the French.

Louisburg besieged by the British.

---

controversy was renewed ; Burnet, the governor, being instructed by the king to insist on an established sum. The people were firm. Burnet threatened an appeal to Parliament, and the possible dissolution of the charter. The general court persevered, until finally leave was obtained from the king to accept the annual donations. Massachusetts had gained her point.

In 1744, war was renewed between France and England. Before information of this was received in New England, the French from Cape Breton attacked the English settlement at Canseau, in Nova Scotia, destroyed the buildings and took the garrison and inhabitants prisoners of war to Louisburg, on Cape Breton. The French then attacked Annapolis, and from this town were with difficulty driven back. 1744

These attacks led the governor of Massachusetts to fear that by a revolt of the inhabitants, who were of French descent, the province might again revert to France. He therefore formed the design of attacking Louisburg, a strong fortress on the Island of Cape Breton, which protected the French commerce and fisheries. The general court, after much deliberation, and influenced by the people, who feared for the safety of their fisheries, united with the proposition. Assistance from England was solicited, and Commodore Warren, from Antigua, with a considerable fleet, joined the army which had been raised in New England and proceeded to Canseau.

The walls of Louisburg were forty feet thick at the base, and from twenty to thirty feet high, surrounded by a ditch eighty feet wide. The fortifications of the place had cost nearly six millions of dollars, and a number of years had been spent in their construction. The English, however, knew not their strength.

---

Surrender of Louisburg.Peace between England and France.

---

The New Englanders succeeded in landing, and approached the town. Hedges were constructed for dragging the cannon over the bogs, which the men accomplished, sinking to their knees in mud, and the siege was commenced.

No breach had been made in the walls, and it was only after the capture of a French frigate, which had been decoyed into the English fleet, and which had on board a supply of military stores and of provisions, that the French governor began to despond, and soon afterwards offered to capitulate. The terms were accepted, every thing was surrendered, and as the New England troops beheld the fortifications, they were satisfied that no assault could have been successful.

The news of this conquest was received in New England with great joy. France, however, not only laid plans for the recovery of this strong fortress, from which they had been able to annoy the British in the prosecution of their commerce and fisheries, but also for the destruction of the English colonies. In 1746, a large fleet was sent for this purpose, but encountering severe storms and disease, having lost their commander, and some of the vessels being wrecked, the remainder returned to France. In the following year a fleet was sent out with troops for Canada and Nova Scotia, but was encountered and overcome by the English.

1748      Soon afterward, the treaty of Aix la Chapelle restored peace to France and England. As is often the case, nothing had been gained by the war. In the colonies, the treaty restored to the French the possessions that had been taken by the New Englanders, so that the victory at Louisburg availed nothing. The boundaries between the French and English colonies remained unsettled.

From this period New England enjoyed a season of repose.

---

Advancement of the colonies.

---

In 1760 the population numbered half a million, and the colonies had acquired considerable importance. Their trade had very much increased, notwithstanding the restrictions laid upon it by the British government. Hats were to some extent manufactured, but the transportation of them from one colony to another was forbidden, as it interfered with the hatters of England; and in 1719, it was declared by the House of Commons, that "the erecting of manufactories in the colonies, tended to lessen their dependence on Great Britain."

Large quantities of lumber and fish were sent annually to the West Indies. Linen cloth was manufactured to a considerable extent. Ship-building was carried on from an early period. A large part of the trade of the other American colonies was conducted by means of vessels owned in New England.

The first periodical published in the country was the Boston News Letter, commenced in Boston in 1704, issued weekly on a sheet of foolscap size. After fourteen years, an extra sheet was issued each fortnight, to enable the publisher to keep up with the news from Europe, in which the paper had fallen behind thirteen months. Some of the first numbers of this paper may now be seen at the Antiquarian Hall at Worcester.

Another paper was commenced in 1719; and in the same year one in Philadelphia, being the third in the country. The New England Courant was next published by James Franklin, in 1721, assisted, as an apprentice, by his brother Benjamin, whose talents contributed to the interest of the paper, until, wishing for greater liberty of the press than was there allowed, he left New England, and found his way to Philadelphia.

---

Remarks.

---

Accustomed as we are in the nineteenth century, to floods of newspapers and other periodicals, many of them far worse than useless, we can scarcely imagine the avidity with which the first efforts of the kind must have been greeted, with no other means of information from distant points than the product of the pen, or the relation of an occasional traveller.

## CHAPTER XII.

### NEW NETHERLANDS, UNTIL ITS FINAL TRANSFER TO ENGLAND.

---

Henry Hudson.

Discovers the Hudson River.

---

THE Dutch partook of the desire of other commercial nations to discover a northwest passage to India. It was in one of the voyages made for this purpose, that the Hudson river was discovered and explored.

In 1609, Henry Hudson, an Englishman, in the employ- 1609  
ment of the Dutch East India Company, sailed in search of the long sought passage in a small vessel manned with Hollanders and Englishmen. Hudson had made two voyages to the arctic regions with the same object, and had been within eight degrees of the pole. Passing by Greenland he now sailed along the coast as far south as Virginia; then turning to the north, he discovered and examined Delaware Bay, and in five months after leaving Holland, anchored within Sandy Hook. Passing through the Narrows, ten days were employed in exploring the river as far as the site of the present city of Hudson, and a boat advanced to the site of Albany. Having completed the discovery, Hudson sailed down the river which now bears his name, and returned to Europe. Frequent intercourse had been held with the Indians who welcomed these strange visitors among them.

Although Hudson had not attained the object of his voyage, he gave a glowing account of his discoveries to the

---

Trading establishments at Manhattan and Albany.

---

Dutch East India Company, but never himself revisited that part of the continent, and perished in one of his voyages amid seas of ice.

The Dutch claimed the country bordering on the Hudson river by right of discovery, and a vessel from Amsterdam was fitted out by a body of merchants to trade with the natives. The voyage was prosperous and was renewed. Thus commenced the trading establishment on the Island of Manhattan, now New York.

1614 The States-general granted a patent for the exclusive trade of the newly-discovered lands, and in consequence, several ships sailed for America. Careful records of these voyages have not been preserved, but the coast appears to have been examined as far as Cape Cod, and the Connecticut river explored.

A trading station was established on an island just below the present city of Albany in 1615; and, although a fort had been erected on Manhattan Island, now New York, as yet there was no colony. Families had not emigrated; and it was not until 1621, when the disturbances at home had subsided, that the attention of the Dutch West India Company was turned toward colonization. In that year the Dutch republic granted them an extensive territory on both sides of the Hudson river, extending as far south as the Delaware, and east to the Connecticut.

For some years the settlement at Manhattan was little more than a trading establishment. Indians from a distance came to procure articles of European manufacture in exchange for their furs.

In 1627, a delegation was sent to the Pilgrims of Plymouth, proposing to establish a treaty of friendship and commerce. It was well received; but the Pilgrims, in common

---

 Conveyance of land by the Indians.

 Good Hope.
 

---

with other English, questioned the right of the Dutch to the Hudson river, and recommended a treaty with England. With the expression of mutual good wishes the parties separated.

It had been stipulated by the Directors of the Company that the soil should be purchased of the Indians; and in 1629, a deed was ratified and duly recorded for the purchase of the territory extending from Cape Henlopen, thirty miles north. The opposite shore in New Jersey, Staten Island, the country round Hoboken, and the land from Albany to the mouth of the Mohawk, were also conveyed. 1629

The Company had designed to favor colonization, and yet retain the trade of the province; and that the monopoly of the Dutch manufacturers might not be impaired, the colonists were forbidden to make any woollen, linen, or cotton fabrics.

An attempt was made to establish a colony in the tract on Delaware Bay, purchased from the natives. Vessels sailed laden with seeds, cattle and agricultural implements, and a settlement was planted near Lewistown. But those to whom the colony was entrusted during the absence of the founder, could not avoid contests with the Indians. The life of a chief was lost, and the death of every emigrant was the consequence.

The Dutch had been the first to discover the Connecticut. They had purchased of the natives the country around Hartford, and commenced a small settlement there called Good Hope, two years before the emigrants from Boston began the commonwealth of Connecticut. But this was not considered sufficient to secure the territory against other settlers on a soil which England claimed as her exclusive right. Alterations continued for years, until the Dutch were obliged to

---

New Sweden.

---

yield the land they had first visited, which they had also purchased from the natives, and where they had first traded.

The territory claimed by the Dutch was also encroached upon at its southern extremity. A commercial company, with the right of planting colonies, had been incorporated by the States of Sweden, and received the favor of the king, Gustavus Adolphus. Men of different nations were invited to join in the enterprise. Slave labor was not to be allowed. The Swedes appeared to be sensible of the advantages of free, compensated labor, performed by persons of intelligence.

1638 In 1638, a little company of Swedes and Fins arrived in Delaware Bay. The Swedish government had provided them with provisions and merchandise for traffic with the natives. The lands from the southern cape to the falls in the river near Trenton, were purchased of the Indians; and near the mouth of Christiana Creek, within the limits of the present State of Delaware, they began their settlement. The plantations were gradually extended, and to preserve their ascendancy over the Dutch, who protested against their occupancy of the land, the governor established his residence at Tinicum, a few miles below the subsequent location of Philadelphia. The whole country occupied by them became known as New Sweden.

While the limits of New Netherlands were thus becoming narrowed on the east and on the south, the colony was almost annihilated by the neighboring Algonquin tribes. Bloody quarrels had arisen between dishonest traders and natives to whom they had sold intoxicating liquors. Revenge dwells in the bosom of the savage, and the son of a chief, in return for the murder of one of his friends, sought the first opportunity of killing a Hollander. The river chieftains expressed their sorrow, and offered to console the grief of the

## Massacre of the Indians.

## War.

widow by "two hundred fathom of the best wampum," but refused to deliver the murderer to the Dutch, reminding them that they were the cause of the evil, by "crazing the young Indians with brandy."

Just at this time, the Algonquins were alarmed by the 1643 approach of the formidable warriors of the Mohawks, and begged assistance of the Dutch against their Indian enemies. But governor Kieft, instead of improving the opportunity of making friends of the Algonquins, and acting as arbiter between them and the Mohawks, chose an exterminating massacre.

In the stillness of a dark winter's night, led by a guide who knew every by-path, the soldiers from the fort, joined by others from Dutch privateers, crossed the Hudson for the purpose of destruction. Nearly a hundred of the unsuspecting Indians were killed.

The massacre was held in detestation by the colonists, who, after a treaty of peace had been made with the natives, deposed their governor, and sent him to Holland. The ship in which he sailed was dashed to pieces on the coast of Wales.

As might have been expected, the unsubdued savages burned with revenge for the midnight attack; and by their ambushes, surprised the Dutch in every direction. Villages were destroyed, men were murdered in the open country, children were carried into captivity.

The Dutch colony was threatened with ruin, and some of the settlers returned to Holland. A convention of sachems met envoys from Manhattan in the woods of Rockaway, to deliberate on terms of peace. The issue would have remained uncertain, but for the presence of Roger Williams, on his way to England. Through his mediation, terms of peace were settled. But the young men among the Indians were still

Adjustment of claims.

Subjection of the Swedish colony.

unsatisfied, and the war was renewed. With this little intermission, it lasted two years, until, both parties desiring peace, a solemn treaty was signed.

The Dutch had now learned by sorrowful experience, to pursue a different system toward the natives, and when Peter Stuyvesant became governor of the province, in 1646, it was resolved to treat them with lenity.

1648 The monopoly in regard to trade, established by the Dutch West India Company, they had not been able to enforce. Some restrictions were taken off, and the prosperity of the colony increased. In 1650, Stuyvesant entered into negotiation for the preservation of the Dutch claims on the Connecticut. He repaired to Hartford, and after several days' controversy on the subject, articles of agreement were signed, by which the Dutch were to retain possession of Long Island as far as Oyster Bay, and of those lands on the Connecticut which they were actually occupying.

The governor next turned his attention to the banks of the Delaware, where the Swedes had established themselves; and for the security of their commerce, he built a fort on the site of New Castle, near the mouth of the Brandywine, within five miles of Christiana, a Swedish settlement.

Jealousies resulted from this encroachment. The garrison at the fort was attacked, and a war followed, which ended in the subjection of the Swedish colony to the Dutch, after having maintained a separate existence for seventeen years. They had succeeded in making permanent settlements on the Delaware, and had preserved peace with the Indians. Emigration to the country near the Hudson increased. Religious toleration was allowed. Although the zeal of Stuyvesant for Calvinism had led him sometimes to persecute Lutherans and others, yet the Directors of the Company wrote to him,

Slave trade.

British squadron at New Amsterdam.

“ Let every peaceful citizen enjoy freedom of conscience,” so that wanderers from many a country found a home on the Island of Manhattan. French Protestants came in great numbers, and the Hollanders themselves, being of various origin, made the population indeed a mixed people.

Amid the tide of voluntary emigration, there was another class, torn from their homes and transported to the New World, to serve only as slaves. The Dutch West India Company did not scruple to engage in the slave trade, and in proportion to the population, New York in 1664 had imported as many Africans as Virginia. They were sold at public auction, to the highest bidder.

Many discontents had arisen in the colony by the un- 1664 willingness of the people to submit to the arbitrary laws of the home government. There were many English at Manhattan, whole towns had been settled by New England men, and the colonists listened with complacency to the hope of obtaining English liberties, by submitting to English jurisdiction. That country had never been satisfied with the possession of New Netherlands by the Dutch. Cromwell had planned its conquest, and now it was threatened with danger from Charles II. Massachusetts had not relinquished its claim to an unlimited extent of territory to the west, and Connecticut by its charter extended to the Pacific ; that colony was advancing, not only on Long Island, but toward the Hudson. Stuyvesant remonstrated, and repaired to Boston ; but with no success.

In 1664, Charles II granted to his brother, the Duke of York, the whole territory from the Connecticut river to the shores of the Delaware. In order to enforce this claim, the English squadron which carried the commissioners for New England to Boston, was sent out. Having touched at that

---

Surrender of the colony to Great Britain.New Jersey.

---

1664 place, the fleet proceeded to New Amsterdam, the name by which the town on Manhattan Island was then known, and demanded its surrender. The governor endeavored to assert the rights of the Dutch ; but the local government, knowing that resistance would be useless, wished to surrender without bloodshed. The British commander, Nichols, offered security to life, liberty and property, on condition of England's sovereignty being acknowledged. A capitulation was finally agreed upon, and quietly effected. Security was promised to the customs, religion and local government of the Dutch, and Manhattan now first became known as New York. The colonists were satisfied ; very few embarked for Holland. The surrender extended to Albany, and to the settlements on the Delaware.

The tract between that river and the Hudson had already been conveyed to Lord Berkely and Sir George Carteret, proprietaries of Carolina, and received the name of New Jersey. New England Puritans, as well as some of the Society of Friends, had already established themselves on the Raritan. To encourage the rapid settlement of the province, the proprietaries allowed the establishment of a representative government, with freedom from all taxation, except by the act of the colonial assembly, and the undisturbed enjoyment of liberty of conscience, by every peaceful citizen. Lands were promised at a very low quitrent, payable after 1670. The proprietaries of New Jersey not only encouraged the slave trade, but added to the injustice, by offering a bounty on the importation of every able-bodied slave.

Nichols, who had assumed the command of the territory he had conquered, as deputy-governor for the Duke of York, protested against the division of his province. But the people of New Jersey were satisfied with the liberties they had received, and acknowledged Philip Carteret as their governor.

---

Surrender to the Dutch and re-transfer to the English.

---

The population and prosperity increased. Elizabethtown became the capital. The rights of the natives were respected, and in the sale of their lands they were satisfied. The vicinity of older settlements saved the emigrants from distress, and no difficulty occurred until the quitrents became due. 1670 These were objected to on the ground that a purchase from the native inhabitants gave a title to the soil. Disputes ensued; the authority of the governor could not be maintained; the colonists appointed their own magistrates, and Carteret withdrew to England.

In New York, all the concessions expected by English jurisdiction had not been obtained. The city of New York was incorporated in 1665, but no representation of the people was allowed. The government of the Duke of York was so unpopular, that when war again broke out between England and the Netherlands, the latter country sent a squadron to New York, and the city immediately surrendered. New Jersey offered no resistance, and the whole colony once more fell into the hands of the Dutch, to be held only for fifteen months, when it was finally transferred to England in 1674.

## CHAPTER XIII.

### NEW JERSEY AS A SEPARATE PROVINCE.

---

Division into East and West New Jersey

The Society of Friends.

---

ON the final transfer of New Netherlands to England, Berkely and Carteret again entered into possession of New Jersey. Berkely sold his half of the province to a few individuals of the Society of Friends, who desired to establish a refuge there from the persecution to which the Society was exposed throughout all Europe, as well as in New England. The following year a large company set sail for this asylum, and landing at a pleasant spot on the Delaware, called it Salem. The control of that part of the province sold by Berkely, soon afterward fell into the hands of William Penn, and two other members of the Society of Friends. They desired a division of the province, in order to establish a government. This was readily effected. Their portion received the name of West New Jersey, and that of Carteret, East New Jersey. A constitution was then sent out by the proprietaries, called the "Concessions," which granted civil and religious liberty. The rights of the natives were protected, and orphans, who should be needy, were to be educated by the State.

In 1677, several hundred Friends arrived from England. Lands were purchased of the Indians, and religious meetings were held in peace, at Burlington, their first settlement. The Indian chiefs were rejoiced at the prospect of permanent peace, and declared their intention of living like brothers with the English.

---

The whole province purchased by William Penn and other Friends.

---

Andros, governor of New York, afterward governor-general of New England, continued, on behalf of the Duke of York, to claim New Jersey as a part of his territory, and exacted customs of the ships ascending the Delaware. The question was referred for settlement in England, where a formal recognition of independence was procured. The Duke of York after this relinquished all claim to the territory.

The settlement of the State rapidly progressed. In 1681, the first representative assembly was held, and the government framed on the basis of humanity. The sale of ardent spirits to the Indians was prohibited.

In the mean time, William Penn, with eleven others of the Society of Friends, purchased East New Jersey of the heirs of Carteret. On the organization of their government, Robert Barclay, one of the Society, known also as an eminent writer, was appointed governor for life, of whom George Bancroft says, "a man whose soul breathed enthusiasm and love," and "whose merits as chief proprietary are attested by his wise selection of deputies, and by the peace and happiness of the colony." 1682

This part of the State, heretofore peopled chiefly by Puritans from New England, now became the asylum of Scottish Presbyterians, driven from their own country by the violence of persecution. Both parts of the State were blessed with peace and abundance. The education of children was not neglected, and in a few years a system of free schools was established.

On the accession of James II to the throne, he attempted to deprive New Jersey of its chartered privileges, in entire disregard of the engagements he had made while Duke of York. A series of collisions was the consequence, until the proprietaries, at the commencement of the reign of Queen

---

New Jersey becomes a royal province.

---

1702 Anne, weary of continued disputes, resigned their rights to the crown. The queen united East and West New Jersey in one province under the government of her cousin, Lord Cornbury, whom she had also appointed governor of New York. His administration, in both these provinces, was rendered unpopular by his encroachments on the rights of the people, which the colonial legislatures were ever ready to resist.

The queen, considering that inconvenience might arise by allowing liberty of the press, prohibited the printing of any book, pamphlet or other matters, without a license.

After this, New York and New Jersey continued united under the same governor, each province however having a separate assembly, until 1738, when, on a petition of the inhabitants, a separate governor was appointed. The population of New Jersey at this time, amounted to about forty thousand.

## CHAPTER XIV.

NEW YORK. (*Continued from New Netherlands.*)

---

### Arbitrary government of Andros.

---

ON the re-conquest of New Netherlands by the English, the country was again conveyed to the Duke of York. He appointed Edmund Andros governor, who renewed the absolute authority of the proprietary. Trade was prohibited without the permission of the Duke of York, and duties were established on exports and imports. No representative government had been allowed, and the legality of customs assessed in this way was denied. The Duke of York was earnestly entreated to grant to the people a share in the government, and in 1683, perceiving unequivocal symptoms of discontent with the arbitrary course that had been pursued, he yielded, and appointed Thomas Dongan governor, with instructions to call an assembly of the representatives of the people. 1674

In the fall of the same year, the representatives met and established for themselves a "Charter of Liberties." But this state of things was of short duration. On the accession of James II to the throne, in 1685, he not only retracted the liberties which he himself had conceded, but imposed additional taxes. He also forbade the existence of a printing-press in the colony.

In 1678, the province contained about twenty thousand inhabitants; the island of New York, perhaps about three thousand. Those were days of primitive simplicity; luxury

---

Iroquois or Five Nations.

---

was unknown, wagons were used instead of carriages, and the inhabitants had to depend on home-made cloth for their wearing apparel. They were hospitable and ready to relieve the poor. The professions of religion were very various. About fifteen vessels traded yearly to the port, bringing English manufactures, and carrying, in return, the productions of the soil, chiefly wheat, lumber and tobacco, as well as some furs procured from the Indians.

The attention of Dongan was necessarily turned towards Indian affairs. The five nations, dwelling within the present limits of the State of New York, the Mohawks, Oneidas, Onondagos, Cayugas and Senecas, had formed a strong confederacy, and had attained a greater degree of power than any other North American tribes. They had extended their conquests from the St. Lawrence to Virginia, and had subjugated the Eries and the Hurons, the Miamis and the Illinois, having become more formidable, by receiving fire-arms from the Dutch, and incorporating their enemies among themselves. Hostilities had for a long series of years existed between the Iroquois or Five Nations, and the French in Canada. The territory of the Indians had been invaded, but the Canadians had been driven back, and the destruction of the French settlements was afterward contemplated by the natives.

The friendship of the Mohawks for the Dutch, had served as some protection against encroachments from Canada; and the struggle with the French increased the desire of the Iroquois for a treaty with the English. Deputies from the Five Nations met the governors of New York and Virginia, at Albany, and a treaty of peace and friendship was made in the summer of 1684.

In 1688, the colonies of New York and New Jersey, as

---

Burning of Schenectady.

---

already related, were added to the dominion of Andros, 1688 governor-general of New England. He was equally unpopular here ; his arbitrary measures and the annexation of the colony to New England, caused great dissatisfaction.

On receiving the intelligence of the accession of William and Mary to the throne of England, and of the successful resistance in Boston to the government of Andros, the authority of those sovereigns was proclaimed in New York, and the agent of the governor-general fled to England. Jacob Leisler, who assumed the chief power, was a Dutchman, and relied for his support on the less educated classes of the Dutch. Of these he possessed the confidence and esteem, but he was not at all qualified to govern, and was opposed by the rest of the inhabitants, who were yet willing to submit to William and Mary.

On the declaration of war between England and France, the governor of Canada considered himself authorized to attack the English settlements, and having obtained a treaty of neutrality with the Five Nations, he sent a company of French and Indians into New York, early in 1690. After wandering through the snow, they approached Schenectady at night, and finding the town without a guard, set fire to it in various places, attacking the inhabitants as they endeavored to fly from the flames. Sixty persons were killed, and nearly half as many made prisoners. The sufferings of those who escaped to Albany through a snow storm were intense, and many limbs were lost by the frost. 1690

This outrage roused the indignation of the colonies, and a general congress assembled at New York on the 1st of Fifth month, (May,) 1690. A combined expedition against Canada was projected, but failed for want of unanimity of action.

In 1691, Henry Sloughter, having been appointed gover-

---

Expeditions against Canada.Slow progress of the colony.

---

1691 nor by king William, arrived in New York. Leisler, unwilling to surrender the authority he had exercised, was arrested, and finally sentenced to death, on a charge of high treason. During the administration of Sloughter, a new treaty was executed with the Five Nations.

The strong passion for the conquest of Canada remained unabated. Difficulties between the French and English colonies were continually occurring; and under different governors, expeditions were sent into Canada, causing on both sides suffering and heavy losses.

The succession of governors, their various controversies with the people, the unsuccessful attempts to establish the Episcopal religion, need not here be recapitulated. The wars which prevailed on the frontiers, prevented the extensive settlement of the interior, and in the middle of the eighteenth century, the whole population of the province did not exceed one hundred thousand.

## CHAPTER XV.

### CAROLINA.

---

Carolina granted by Charles II.

Various claimants for the district.

---

IN 1663, the province of Carolina, extending from the 1663 thirty-sixth to the thirty-first degree of north latitude, was erected into one territory, and granted by Charles II, to eight of his courtiers, as proprietaries. Their authority was nearly absolute, and their object, the increase of their own wealth and dignity.

The grant was made without any reference to the claims of Spain, who included the territory within the limits of Florida. Nor was Spain the only claimant for Carolina. Emigrants from New England had already planted themselves on Cape Fear river, far to the south of any English settlement on the continent, and had purchased the soil of the Indian chiefs. Their agents in London pleaded the purchase and occupancy of the soil, as affording a valid title. The proprietaries promised them religious freedom, a representative assembly and land at a very low rent. These offers, however, were not sufficiently inviting to induce them to remain, and having a vast extent of territory before them, the emigrants mostly deserted. The sufferings of those that were left became such, that relief was sent from Massachusetts, by a general contribution among her people.

The proprietaries claimed, by a second grant, all the land lying between twenty-nine degrees and thirty-six degrees thirty minutes, north latitude, embracing the present limits of

Distinct settlements.

North Carolina.

Constitution of Locke.

North and South Carolina and Georgia, and extending westward to the Pacific Ocean. Within these limits, on the north side of Albemarle Sound, a number of families from Virginia had settled, and Berkely, governor of Virginia, was commissioned to establish a government over this part of the territory. He visited the colony, confirmed the titles to the land, instituted a general assembly, and appointed a governor of North Carolina.

Still another independent settlement was made. Several planters of Barbadoes, dissatisfied with their condition, and desiring to plant a colony under their exclusive direction, sent a vessel with persons to examine the country on Cape Fear river. Hearing a favorable report of the climate and soil, and that the natives promised peace, they purchased a tract of land near the neglected settlement of the New Englanders, and petitioned of the proprietaries a confirmation of the purchase, and a separate charter of government. Liberal terms were acceded to, and a governor was appointed. The country was called Clarendon. In the fall of 1665, a band of  
 1665 emigrants from Barbadoes laid the foundation of a town, which, however, did not flourish. Yet the colony made some advances ; it exported boards, shingles and staves to Barbadoes ; emigration increased, and in 1666, the plantation is said to have contained eight hundred persons. These two colonies were afterward united, and formed the foundation of the State of North Carolina.

Meantime designs were formed by the proprietaries of establishing a vast empire in the west ; and John Locke, the philosopher, was engaged in drafting a constitution, which should be worthy of enduring throughout all ages. An attempt was made to connect hereditary wealth and political power ; and to form a government on other principles than those of

---

Enforcement of the navigation acts. Rebellion. Tranquillity restored.

---

republicanism. Orders of nobility were created. But the magnificent model of a constitution did not comport with the humble settlements of Carolina. All attempts to introduce it were unsuccessful.

The plantation of Albemarle was increasing. Emigrants had arrived from New England and from the Bermudas. The colony was contented. Freedom of religion was conceded, and no taxation required, except by the colonial legislature.

But this happy state of things did not long continue. The trade of the province was small, and carried on principally with New England. Yet, inconsiderable as it was, the navigation acts must be enforced ; and a tax of a penny was levied on every pound of tobacco sent to New England. This created much dissatisfaction, and, added to the oppressive measures of the deputy governor, led to an open rebellion in 1678. The proprietary officers were imprisoned, and the royal revenue seized. A government was then organized, and courts of justice established ; after which agents were appointed to represent the grievances of the people in England, and to offer submission, on condition of having their past proceedings confirmed. The proprietaries sent out one of their number to restore order in the colony. But he was faithless toward his partners, and tyrannical in the government. After five years, he was deposed, and an appeal once more made to the proprietaries. The planters immediately recovered tranquillity, and esteemed themselves happy.

The first settlement in South Carolina was made by the proprietaries in 1670. After a short delay at Port Royal, the emigrants sailed into Ashley river, and selecting what they considered a good situation, began their first town. A representative government was established. The settlement

---

Dissensions in South Carolina.   Slavery.   Refugees from persecution.

---

1670 was attended with great privations, yet supplies were received from the proprietaries.

For a few years, comparative independence was enjoyed, but civil dissensions afterward arose, in consequence of an attempt, on the part of the proprietaries, to establish Episcopacy. This was resisted by the colonists, who were of different religious persuasions, and scenes of discord ensued. Although the Establishment of England became, by law, the religion of the country, it could not be forced upon the people. Meantime the population steadily increased, and began to extend their settlements along the rivers.

Slavery in Carolina commenced with the settlements on Ashley river. A few Africans were at first introduced from Barbadoes; but the importations were so great, that before many years, they far outnumbered the white inhabitants. The labor of felling the forests, and of tilling the soil, was imposed upon this class of the population. It was early observed that the climate here was more congenial to the African, than that of the more northern colonies, and to this fact, in part, may be attributed the more rapid extension of this system of oppression in the southern provinces.

Emigrants of various religious persuasions, continued to arrive from England, Ireland and Holland. Huguenots, or French Protestants, escaping from persecution, after the revocation of the edict of Nantz, here found a refuge. Some fled to New York, others to Massachusetts; but South Carolina was their principal resort, the warmer climate being more inviting to fugitives from the south of France. The city of Charleston was founded in 1672, and steadily increased.

A settlement of Scots on the Island of Port Royal, made in 1684, was entirely laid waste by the Spaniards, who considered this a part of their territory. Some of the emigrants

returned to Scotland, others mingled with the earlier settlers 1686 of the province, further north.

Disputes frequently arose with the proprietaries, of which the recital is not important, and would be uninteresting. Their power over the colony, never very strong, became gradually weaker, until the colonists were virtually independent.

In 1695, during a season of much discord, John Archdale, a member of the Society of Friends, was appointed governor of South Carolina. His administration was marked by wisdom and prudence, and his conciliatory measures were successful. The friendship of the Indians was cultivated, and a board of arbitrators appointed to settle all disputes with them. It had been the practice for some years past, but opposed by the proprietaries, to kidnap Indians and sell them in the West Indies for slaves. Governor Archdale protected the Indians against this outrage, and in their turn, they befriended mariners, shipwrecked on their coast. The governor also liberated four Indians, converts of the Spanish priests, who were offered for sale, and sent them to St. Augustine. This was the foundation of friendly feelings between the two colonies; and the act was reciprocated when an English vessel was wrecked on the coast of Florida.

Meantime Carolina prospered. The rice plant had, at an early period, been introduced from Madagascar. New modes of cleaning it were invented, and the rice of Carolina began to be esteemed the best in the world. Furs were soon exported, and the valuable pine, applied to its various uses, gave rise to additional trade.

After the termination of Archdale's administration, and his return to England, a successful attempt was made to establish the Episcopal religion, and all dissenters were disfran-

---

The Tuscaroras.Indian wars.

---

chised, notwithstanding they formed by far the larger part of the colony. An appeal to the queen resulted in the intolerant acts being declared void ; but the religion established in England, became by law the religion of this province, and continued so until the American Revolution.

- 1711 The Tuscaroras, residing within the limits of North Carolina, had become jealous of the encroachments of the whites, and indignant at their lands being given to others, without their relinquishment of the right to them. Two of the colonists ascending the Neuse river in a boat, were seized by a party of Indians, conveyed to a village of the Tuscaroras and delivered to their chief. After a discussion of two days, their death was decreed.

One of them, the surveyor-general, who had divided their land for settlers, was killed. The other, after having been detained prisoner for about five weeks, was allowed to return, on condition that his people should occupy no land without the consent of the tribe. But during his absence, a work of desolation had been effected. The Indians had made an attack on the cabins of the settlers. For three days they scoured the country, murdering men, women and children, and setting fire to their dwellings.

Assistance was sent from South Carolina, the Indians were overcome, and a treaty of peace was negotiated. But the treaty being violated by the troops from South Carolina, hostilities were renewed. The Tuscaroras being again defeated, became disheartened, and finally, abandoning their old hunting grounds, migrated to the north, in the neighborhood of Oneida lake, where they were welcomed by the Iroquois, and became the sixth nation of their confederacy.

After the administration of Archdale in South Carolina had terminated, Indian wars involved the colony in a series

---

War with the Yamassees.

---

of difficulties. A heavy debt was occasioned by an expedition against St. Augustine, and religious disputes agitated the settlers.

In 1715, a war occurred with the Yamassees, a tribe of 1715 Indians residing within the limits of South Carolina. A considerable trade had been carried on with them, and they had become largely in debt to the planters, who now pressed them for payment. The Indians considered that they had been wronged; a feeling was excited, which rapidly spread among them, and led them to meditate revenge, and even to plan a massacre. A number of traders were murdered. One of them escaped to Port Royal, where he gave the alarm, and the inhabitants fled to Charleston, in canoes and one ship, which was at the time in the harbor. Bands of Indians wandered over the country, attacking different settlements by night, killing some of the inhabitants, and taking others prisoners. Charleston was in danger. At last, after a conflict had taken place, the Indians gave way and were pushed beyond the limits of Carolina.

Frequent difficulties continued to occur between the proprietaries and the colonists until 1719, when the assembly resolved "to have no more to do with the proprietors." Their agents were quietly dismissed, an appeal was made to the government at home, and South Carolina became a royal province. One of the first acts of the new governor, was to establish a treaty of peace and commerce with the natives.

This revolution was confined to South Carolina. The proprietary government became entirely dissolved in 1729, the jurisdiction over the territory of North Carolina being sold to the crown, and a royal governor also appointed for this province. The two colonies, although with separate governors and assemblies, had remained under the same proprietaries. They now became entirely distinct, and the prosperity of

---

Treaties with the Indians.

---

both was promoted. Attempts were immediately made to secure the friendship of the neighboring Indian tribes. A delegation of the English met a council of the chiefs of the Cherokees, in the valley of the Tennessee. A deputation of the Indians was appointed to visit England, where a treaty of friendship was ratified. By this treaty no white men, except the English, were to occupy the lands of the Cherokees.

The population of both North and South Carolina had been mostly confined to the neighborhood of the sea-coast; but the fertility of the interior was discovered, emigrants from the more northern colonies soon brought it under cultivation, and the population rapidly increased.

## CHAPTER XVI.

### PENNSYLVANIA AND DELAWARE.

---

#### Grant to William Penn.

---

WILLIAM PENN, son of Admiral Penn of the British navy, having become much interested in the colonization on the Delaware by his connection with New Jersey, and learning that a tract of land, lying between the possessions of the Duke of York and those of Lord Baltimore, was still unoccupied, presented a petition for a grant of that section. Although Penn met with opposition in the pursuit of his object, yet he was sustained by friends high in authority, and a grant was finally made. The tract extended west from the Delaware, including five degrees of longitude and three degrees of latitude, and was named by the king, Pennsylvania. The charter constituted William Penn and his heirs, absolute proprietaries of the province, and conceded powers of government similar to those of the charter for Maryland. In relation to this projected colony, William Penn writes thus: "God will bless and make it the seed of a nation. I shall have a tender care of the government, that it be well laid at first."

Pennsylvania included the principal settlements of the Swedes. Penn, on assuming the government, addressed all the inhabitants of the province, assuring them that he should "heartily comply" with whatever "sober and free men" could "reasonably desire for the security and improvement of their own happiness." This promise was ever faithfully

---

Friends emigrate.Letter to the Indians.

---

1681 kept. William Markham, a relative of Penn, who had been appointed his agent, conveyed this letter to America.

In the summer of 1681, a company of emigrants, principally Friends, sailed for a home in the western world. With them were forwarded instructions respecting planting a city. At the same time Penn addressed the natives of the country, expressing to them that he and they were answerable to one God, having the same law written in their hearts, by which they were commanded to love and do good to one another; stating his desire to enjoy the province with their love and consent, and that they might live together as neighbors and friends. In the following spring he published a frame of government to be submitted to the freemen in Pennsylvania.

Penn desired to possess the shores of the Delaware to the ocean, to increase the commercial prosperity of his colony. The "Territories" or "Three Lower Counties," now forming the State of Delaware, were in possession of the Duke of York, and esteemed a part of his province. His claim also extended further up the river. To prevent all difficulty, Penn obtained from him a release of his claim on Pennsylvania, and after much negotiation, purchased the "Three Lower Counties."

1682 Having completed his arrangements, and taken leave of his family, Penn embarked for America, and after a long passage, arrived at Newcastle, in the fall of 1682. The Society of Friends, to which he belonged, watched his departure with anxiety; for they felt the responsibility of his situation, as the founder of a government, on principles differing in many respects from any in previous existence.

This remarkable man had renounced prospects of worldly preferment which were open to him through the influence of his father and the favor of Charles II. His mind had become

---

 Penn arrives at Newcastle.

 Freedom of conscience established.
 

---

dissatisfied with the delusive pleasures of a vain world, and he sought enduring peace in religion, as embraced by the Society of Friends. This he was permitted to find, though persecuted, imprisoned for conscience' sake, and scorned by his former associates and friends. His father closed his doors against him, but finally relented, and on his death-bed encouraged his son to faithfulness in the cause he had espoused.

On arriving at Newcastle, Penn was warmly received by the Swedes, Dutch and English, and the agent of the Duke of York formally surrendered the territory. From Newcastle, Penn ascended the Delaware to Upland, now called Chester, where he was also well received. An assembly of the people was summoned to meet in a few weeks. During the interim, Penn visited West and East New Jersey, New York and Long Island. Returning to Chester, the work of legislation occupied three days. The charter from the king did not include the "Three Lower Counties;" these were now annexed to the province with equal privileges. Freedom of conscience was established, with the same liberties to settlers from whatever country. The statute ran thus: "All persons living in this province, who confess and acknowledge the one Almighty and eternal God to be the Creator, upholder and Ruler of the world, and that hold themselves obliged to live peaceably and justly in civil society, shall in no way be molested or prejudiced for their religious persuasion, or practice in matters of faith or worship." The principle adopted by Penn was, that every person has an *inherent right* to worship God according to the dictates of his conscience. 1682

The first day of the week was to be observed as a day of rest from worldly occupations; oaths were not required, stage plays, bull fights and some other similar amusements were pro-

---

Lord Baltimore.Meeting with the Indians.

---

1682 hibited, and industry was encouraged ; murder only was punishable by death. The prisons for convicts were to be work-houses, where offenders might be reclaimed by judicious treatment and instruction. Poor rates and tithes were abolished.

The assembly having adjourned, Penn visited Lord Baltimore, to settle the limits of their respective provinces. The grant to Lord Baltimore had embraced only territory not previously occupied, yet he claimed the whole country as far north as the fortieth degree of latitude. The banks of the Delaware had been previously colonized by the Dutch, who had always resisted his claim. Penn could not give up the right to Delaware Bay, to which he knew himself entitled ; and after three days' discussion, the subject was left for arbitration in England, where it was decided that the tract of Delaware was not included in Maryland. The proper boundaries remained to be settled by compromise.

The next step of the proprietary was to make a treaty of peace and friendship with the Indians. At Shackamaxon, just north of Philadelphia, he met a large company of the Lenni Lenape tribes, and there, under the spreading branches of a large elm tree, he proclaimed to the sons of the forest, the terms on which he proposed they should live together, telling them that as it was not their custom to use hostile weapons against their fellow creatures, he and his friends had come unarmed. He remarked that the Great Spirit, who created him and them, who ruled the heavens and the earth, knew that he had a hearty desire to live in peace and friendship with them, and all should be openness, brotherhood and love. Every difference should be adjusted by a peaceful tribunal, composed of an equal number of men from both parties. " I will not call you children,

---

Treaty of friendship.

---

for parents sometimes chide their children too severely ; nor 1682  
brothers only, for brothers differ. The friendship between  
me and you, I will not compare to a chain, for that the rains  
might rust, or the falling tree might break. We are the  
same as if one man's body were to be divided into two  
parts ; we are all one flesh and blood."

This doctrine of love affected the hearts of the natives.  
They received presents from Penn, and gave him the belt of  
wampum, promising to live "in love with William Penn and  
his children as long as the moon and the sun shall endure."

This treaty was executed without the formality of an oath,  
and was sacredly kept by both parties. The colony of Friends  
lived in perfect peace with the natives ; while the history of  
the other colonies is darkened with accounts of Indian hostil-  
ities and massacres. One instance occurred in the colony, of  
a white man killed by an Indian. It was at a trading station,  
where ardent spirits had been the exciting cause of a quarrel.  
The government endeavored to prevent the repetition of such  
scenes, by prohibiting the sale of intoxicating liquors to the  
natives.

Regarding the Indians as the true owners of the soil, Wil-  
liam Penn purchased from them their lands, giving in ex-  
change such valuable commodities as would be useful to them ;  
and the name of Onas, which they had given him, was long  
held in reverence among them. This benevolent man contin-  
ued to feel the interest and concern for the souls of the na-  
tives, which had been evinced by the members of the Society of  
Friends, from the time of their first acquaintance with them,  
and labored for their spiritual improvement. He also fre-  
quently visited them in a social way, partaking of their sim-  
ple repasts, and in his conferences with them, endeavored to

---

Philadelphia founded.Advances rapidly.

---

1683 imbue their minds with a sense of the benefits of Christianity.\*

Early in 1683, the site for a city was selected, to which Penn gave the name of Philadelphia; and the place was laid out on which it should be built. Houses multiplied rapidly. In the spring, a representative assembly was held, and the frame of government, which he had prepared in England for the colony, was adopted. It was gratefully received, as conferring more liberty than was expected. A revenue was offered to the governor to arise from the export of tobacco, and was declined. The government of Pennsylvania remains to the present time substantially the same.

The early settlers of Pennsylvania had not the New England superstition to contend with. The only case of a person brought to trial on a charge of witchcraft, was so judiciously treated, that, to use the words of Bancroft, "In Penn's domain, from that day to this, neither demon nor hag ever rode through the air on goat or broomstick."

The progress of the province was rapid, and settlements were early formed along the banks of the Delaware. The emigrants were mostly Friends from Great Britain and Ireland, or from Germany and Holland. Two years after the commencement of Philadelphia, it contained six hundred houses. Germantown was settled in 1682.

The business of the governor now required his presence in England. The government of the province having been duly organized, and peace with the natives established by treaties of friendship with no less than nineteen district tribes,

---

\* The Society of Friends had early been much interested in the promotion of the welfare of the Indians, both spiritual and temporal. Ministers of the Society travelled in gospel love, preaching the word of life among them, as early as 1659.

---

Penn returns to England.

Slavery.

Penn sailed for England in the summer of 1684, after having entrusted the executive power to commissioners. 1684

Previously to his departure, the second assembly was held in Philadelphia, in which the frame of government was somewhat altered, and regulations were made, tending to promote general prosperity.

The influence of Friends in the assembly began gradually to diminish. The governor, almost from the commencement, had found great difficulty in persuading "thorough bred Quakers" to take an active part in the administration of public affairs. "Having turned their backs upon the honors of the world," they withdrew from the assembly, until it became composed, in a great measure, of those who had no connection with the Society. Penn could never, but in one instance, prevail on such a member of the Society as he could approve, to fill the executive chair, and this was only for a limited time.

The proprietary had retained for himself the exclusive privilege of purchasing the soil from the Indians, and reserved quitrents on land which he sold. This gave rise to considerable dissatisfaction, and for a long time the assembly were endeavoring to compel an appropriation of the revenue arising from this source, or at least a part of it, to the public service.

Pennsylvania, though founded by Friends, was at one time a slave State. That religious Society early became awakened to the sinfulness of slavery, and prohibited its members first from purchasing slaves, and finally from holding them. In this province the slaves were kindly treated, and the laws prove a desire to protect them from outrage and violence.

At the time of the colonization of this country, the rights of the laboring classes were little understood or respected;

## Education.

## Penn's trials in England.

and the condition of the slave so nearly resembled in some respects that of the laborer in Europe, that the eyes of many benevolent persons were blinded for a while to the evils of slavery. They did not at once perceive the iniquity of the system which lowers man from the position in which his Creator placed him, to a level with the beasts that perish, where every right may be violated under the sanction of law, and which, in its essential nature, far exceeds in injustice the cruelty of the lash or overtasking.

As early as 1683, when the colonists were scarcely comfortably settled in their new homes, the subject of education engaged their attention, and a school was established. In 1689, a public school was chartered by William Penn, with the motto, "Good instruction is better than riches." In this institution, the poor were taught gratuitously ; others paid for the instruction of their children.

Penn's attachment to the royal family of the Stuarts rendered him an object of suspicion after the Revolution, and of much persecution, though nothing could be proved against him. Three times during the space of the two years immediately following the accession of William and Mary, he was arrested and brought before court, and as often openly liberated. The king took the government of the colony into his own hands. In 1690, Penn was preparing to embark for America, when he was again apprehended. After this he went into retirement, waiting until justice should be done him. At length it became apparent to the king, that the attachment of Penn to the Stuarts was not connected with any treasonable design ; his province was restored to him in 1694, but the pressure of poverty, the result of his disinterested labors, now delayed his return, and William Markham was appointed deputy governor.

Penn in the colony.

New Constitution.

Death of Penn.

In 1699, the governor was again in Pennsylvania design- 1699  
ing to spend the remainder of his days, and to give a home  
to his family in the land of his adoption.

The members of the assembly, desirous of establishing  
political liberties, which the recent changes had threatened to  
efface, proposed a new constitution. Penn readily conceded  
many privileges. The right of originating laws, heretofore  
belonging to the governor, was now vested in the assembly,  
subject to his approval. The executive power was confided  
to the governor. A purely democratic government was  
formed, but Penn remained its feudal sovereign; his resig-  
nation would have made the colony again a royal province.  
The three Lower Counties refused to accept the new consti- 1703  
tution, and from that time forward became separated from  
Pennsylvania under the name of Delaware.

On information being received that the English parliament  
were about to annul every colonial charter, Penn returned to  
England to defend the rights of himself and his province.  
Here he was harassed by complaints against the deputy  
governor. These discontents Penn wisely and judiciously  
endeavored to soothe; and that the causes of dissatisfaction  
were but slight, the unparalleled prosperity of the colony  
abundantly proves. Population and wealth increased. There  
were no forts, no armed police, no militia, "no established  
church," and "a harbor opened for the reception of all man-  
kind." Penn after this did not revisit America, and a series  
of apoplectic fits terminated his life, a large proportion of 1718  
which had been devoted to the good of his fellow creatures.

The third newspaper published in America was com-  
menced at Philadelphia in 1719; the first two being in  
Boston. Soon afterward Benjamin Franklin became the pro-  
prietor and editor of another periodical, in which he advo-

---

 Peace with the natives broken.

 Indian war.
 

---

cated "absolute freedom of thought and speech." He afterward, in 1752, performed the world-renowned experiment of drawing electricity from the clouds, by means of a kite, and hence established the fact, that lightning is electricity, and thunder but the noise caused by its rapid flight.

The upright conduct of William Penn, and of those who immediately succeeded him in the administration of the government, in their intercourse with the Indians, was the means of preserving peace with the native tribes ; so that for seventy years the growth of the colony was not retarded by Indian wars, but uninterrupted harmony existed between them and the whites.

1756 When at last the Friends ceased to control the government, and an Indian war broke out in 1756, "the poor Indians throughout their troubles, habitually recurred to Friends for counsel and aid." The members of this Society were not prevented by the war from travelling among them, but went freely, "preaching the Word," visiting stations upwards of one hundred miles beyond the Ohio. They continued to watch over the interests of the Indians ; some of them were frequently present when treaties were made with them. In 1793, in consequence of earnest solicitations from several Indian tribes, expressed by Indian messengers, and by a letter, a number of Friends undertook a journey of great exposure to Sandusky, where it was contemplated forming a treaty. This object was not effected, yet the opportunity of mingling with the natives tended to renew friendship for them.

The same year two Friends visited the Delawares, and received from them renewed assurances of gratitude. "Brothers," said they, "we are glad, and rejoice in our hearts to see our brothers, the Quakers, speaking before us." "We wish to be of the same religion." "We hope you will have pity

---

Proprietary government discontinued.

---

on us, and instruct us how we may come to obtain everlasting happiness.”

The proprietary government was continued until near the commencement of the Revolution, when a new constitution was adopted by the people, which excluded the proprietary from all share in the government. The sum of five hundred and seventy thousand dollars was accepted in discharge of all quitrents due from the inhabitants.

## CHAPTER XVII.

### GEORGIA.

---

Charter granted.

Oglethorpe embarks.

---

THE last settled of the original thirteen colonies was Georgia. The Spaniards continued to regard with a jealous eye the spreading of the British colonies toward the Savannah river. They claimed as their territory the country as far north as St. Helena Sound, and had dispersed the Scottish settlers on the Island of Port Royal.

But England now resolved to extend her settlements still farther south. The sympathies of James Oglethorpe, a member of Parliament, and a man of benevolent feelings, had been enlisted, on account of the large number of debtors confined in the prisons of England, as well as with the poor, who for petty thefts were immured there, perhaps for life. For this class of British subjects, and for all Protestants who were denied the free exercise of their religion at home, he planned an asylum in America.

1732 In 1732, a charter was granted by George II, constituting the province of Georgia, to comprise the territory between the Savannah and the Altamaha rivers, and extending due west from their sources to the Pacific Ocean. The province was placed for twenty-one years under the control of the corporation, Oglethorpe being the most prominent member. Parliament contributed ten thousand pounds.

In the fall of the same year Oglethorpe embarked with one hundred and twenty emigrants. Arriving off Charleston,

---

Treaty with the Indians.

---

they did not remain there, but proceeded to Port Royal, and after examining the country selected a bluff on the Savannah river for their infant settlement, the town of Savannah.

One of the first subjects which claimed the attention 1733 of Oglethorpe, was the establishment of a treaty with the Indians. In the immediate neighborhood dwelt the Yamacraws, a branch of the Creeks. A delegation from them met the English, and after an interchange of presents, and mutual promises of love and good-will, it was agreed that Oglethorpe should be allowed to purchase as much land as was required for the use of the colony. Tomo-chichi, the chief, addressed him as he offered a buffalo skin, with the head and feathers of an eagle painted on the inside. "Here is a little present. The feathers of the eagle are soft, and signify love; the buffalo skin is warm, and is the emblem of protection. Therefore love and protect our little families."

Soon afterward a treaty with the Creeks was signed, which gave the English the control of the land as far south as the river St. Johns. Friendly relations were also established with the Cherokees and Choctaws, and a trade with them was commenced. Meantime favorable offers being made to the persecuted Moravians of Germany, a large number of them prepared to emigrate, and early in 1734 set sail for their new 1734 homes. Oglethorpe accompanied them in the selection of a suitable place for their settlement, and on the Savannah river they commenced a village which they called Ebenezer.

The wisdom and prudence of Oglethorpe were the means of the rapid advancement of the colony. The governor of South Carolina said of him, "He nobly devotes all his powers to serve the poor." After spending about fifteen months in the colony, Oglethorpe returned to England, taking with him Tomo-chichi and his queen, with several

---

Wesley and Whitefield in America.

Slavery prohibited.

---

other Indians. They received much attention at court, and after a visit of about four months, returned to their native country, where it is probable that their influence contributed to the good understanding which continued to prevail between the colonists and the native tribes. The town of Augusta was one of the oldest in the province.

1736 In 1735, a company of mountaineers from the Highlands of Scotland established Darien. The following year, Oglethorpe again arrived in the colony, with about three hundred emigrants. They were accompanied by John Wesley, the founder of the Society of Methodists, who, after remaining nearly two years, engaged in preaching to the colonists and Indians, returned to England. Soon afterward the celebrated George Whitefield arrived in the colony. He travelled over England and the colonies, soliciting subscriptions for the establishment and maintenance of an Orphan House at Savannah, which is still in existence.

An early law of the colony forbade the introduction of slaves, slavery being, in the opinion of Oglethorpe, "against the gospel, as well as against the fundamental law of England." It was also said that as the colony was an asylum for the distressed, it was necessary to prohibit slavery, "for slaves starve the poor laborer;" and in 1738, when the request was made for the use of slave labor, Oglethorpe rejected it, declaring that if negroes should be introduced, he would have nothing further to do with the province.

The Moravians demonstrated that whites could labor in that southern clime, and sternly remonstrated against the introduction of slavery. The value of raw silk raised by them, soon amounted to ten thousand pounds a year. Indigo was a staple production.

But Oglethorpe, with his many good qualities, was in favor

---

Contentions with the Spanish colonies.Slavery introduced.

---

of the law of force, and was willing to settle the rights of property by the destruction of human life. Forts were built in various places for the protection of the colony, and the boundaries of Georgia not being settled, he resolved to sustain the claims of the English to the territory as far south as the St. Johns. In the dissensions which ensued during the war between England and Spain, the English were indebted to their friendship with the Indians for the preservation of their settlements, and the St. Mary's river became the boundary of the colony of Georgia.

In 1740, St. Augustine was besieged by Oglethorpe, who was soon obliged to withdraw without effecting his object; and in 1742, the Spaniards in retaliation sent a large land and naval force to break up the settlements in Georgia. The number of Oglethorpe's men was much smaller than the 1742 Spanish force. By an ingenious stratagem, he succeeded in discouraging and alarming the Spaniards, so far that they entirely withdrew from the English territory. After one year of tranquillity, Oglethorpe returned to England, and never revisited Georgia.

After the connection of Oglethorpe with the colony had ceased, slavery was soon introduced; even the Moravians began to think that slaves "might be employed in a Christian spirit."

In 1752 the charter was surrendered to the king, and Georgia became a royal colony.

## CHAPTER XVIII.

### THE FRENCH WAR, AND SOME OF THE CAUSES WHICH LED TO IT.

---

Efforts to secure the fur trade.

---

THE settlement of the north-eastern boundaries between the English and French colonies, early became a subject of dispute. The coast from the Kennebec to Nova Scotia was claimed by the French ; and that part of the States of Vermont and New York, watered by rivers flowing into the St. Lawrence, was considered by them as a part of their possessions. They could claim the latter by right of discovery and prior occupation. The lake forming part of the boundary line between these two States, was entered from the north, and named by Champlain, as early as 1609, the same year that Hudson explored the North river.

Both parties were anxious to secure the fur trade. For this purpose a station was established by New York at Oswego, in 1722 ; and four years afterward, the French built Fort Niagara, with a view of having a settlement there. This, they thought, would give them the command of western New York, and exclude the English from the trade. They already had the jurisdiction of the north-west country, whence the furs were brought, and with the exception of Oswego, of the entire country watered by the St. Lawrence.

France, through its colony in Canada, had been the first to enter the Mississippi from the sea. In 1698, a company from that province, with about two hundred settlers, succeed-

---

French settlers in the valley of the Mississippi.

---

ed in finding the mouth of the river, which they ascended perhaps as far as the Red river, visited some Indians, and returned. On the Bay of Biloxi, within the present limits of the State of Mississippi, they erected a fort, which they considered the sign of French jurisdiction over the territory from near the Rio del Norte to the neighborhood of Pensacola. Alliances were made with the natives of that part of the country. A line of communication existed from Quebec to the Gulf of Mexico, and by means of French missionaries scattered along the route, more distant tribes were conciliated. The French had possessed Detroit as early as 1701, and still earlier had had military stations in Illinois. A Jesuit mission was established at Kaskaskia, the oldest permanent European settlement in the valley of the Mississippi. Natchez was soon after settled.

The French at Biloxi, in the midst of sands, were soon dependent on the Indians for provisions. Their number became reduced. In 1702, there were, within the limits of Louisiana, which name the territory had received, perhaps about thirty families. The early settlers in this part of the country spent their time in roaming about in search of mines; agriculture does not appear to have been their object.

In 1717, eight hundred emigrants from France laid the foundation of New Orleans. The unhealthfulness of the climate and other causes swept away a large proportion of their number, so that at the expiration of three years there were but a few tents and cottages. 1717

Wars with the Indians were provoked by the French. The best land of the tribe of the Natchez was demanded for plantations. This the Indians could not bear. A war commenced, in which the French, being joined by other Indian tribes, completely exterminated the Natchez; about four

Indian wars.

The French build Fort Du Quesne.

1732 hundred of them being sent to Hispaniola, as slaves. Nor was this the only war. To maintain the connection of their posts, it was necessary to reduce the Indians located on the eastern side of the Mississippi; and at this the French did not hesitate. But the Chickasas, assisted by other Indian tribes and by the English, were too powerful for them. The French were obliged to retreat, and the natives retained possession of the country.

1735 The foundation of Vincennes is thought to have been laid as early as 1735.

The extent of the claims of France on the west alarmed the English colonies; and the Virginians aimed at extending their settlements far enough to interrupt the communication formed by the French, between Canada and the Gulf of Mexico. The charters to the English had embraced the territory extending from the Atlantic to the Pacific, and they could not consent to be thus circumscribed.

At this time the number of inhabitants in the English colonies was upwards of 1,000,000; in the French, about 52,000. The Five Nations were almost the only Indian allies of the English; the French had established peace with the numerous tribes of the North and West.

The French, in order to strengthen their position and confine the English to the territory east of the Alleghanies, conceived the design of erecting a chain of forts along the banks of the Ohio and Mississippi. In pursuance of this plan they built a fort at the confluence of the Alleghany and Monongahela rivers, which they called Du Quesne, in honor of the governor of Canada.

In the mean time a company of English traders had established stations on the Ohio river in the vicinity of Fort Du Quesne. The governor of Canada regarding this step

---

English traders imprisoned.George Washington.

---

as an encroachment on the territory of the French, expostulated with the governors of New York and Pennsylvania, and threatened to seize the traders if they did not withdraw. No attention being paid to this requisition, some of them were carried prisoners to Presque Isle, on Lake Erie, one of the posts of the French, where they were engaged in constructing another fort.

The trading stations being within the limits of the colony of Virginia, complaints were made to Governor Dinwiddie of that province, who, after laying the subject before the assembly, determined to send an envoy to the French commander on the Ohio, demanding of him a reason for these hostile proceedings, and requesting him to withdraw his troops from a fort recently erected in that neighborhood.

For this arduous and dangerous undertaking, George Washington, at that time about twenty-one years of age, offered his services. The distance was above four hundred miles, and much of the route was through a wilderness inhabited by hostile Indians. The difficulties of the journey were such that it occupied about six weeks, and was performed partly on horseback and partly on foot, with a single companion. The communication was delivered to the French commander, who, after several days, returned for answer, that he acted under the direction of his general, then in Canada, and that he was responsible only to him. This reply was conveyed to the governor of Virginia by Washington and his companion, after a fatiguing and perilous journey. They were once fired upon by an Indian in concealment, but not injured. 1753

This embassy was the means of introducing George Washington as an actor in the history of our country. He was born at Mount Vernon, in Virginia, on the 22d of Second month, (Feb.,) 1732. His father, Augustine Washington,

---

Rencounter of the French and English.

---

was a planter of distinguished integrity, descended from a family in Cheshire, England. By the decease of his two elder brothers, George Washington inherited the patrimonial estate of Mount Vernon.

1754 The answer of the French commander induced the governor of Virginia to take forcible means of expelling the French from the disputed territory. A regiment was raised, of which Washington, on the death of the first in command, was appointed colonel. On the way toward Fort Du Quesne, he surprised and defeated a party of French and Indians who were advancing toward the English settlements. Approaching the fort, a large body of French and Indians marched out to attack him. Washington hastily erected some fortifications, in the hope of prolonging his defence until the arrival of reinforcements. After a contest of nine hours, in which the Americans killed two hundred of their opponents, terms of capitulation were agreed on. The French consented to retire to Fort Du Quesne, the English were allowed to return with their arms and luggage to Virginia.

The British government now perceived that their occupancy of the territory on the Ohio must either be relinquished or maintained by the sword. Preparations were immediately made in England for active warfare, and the Secretary of State wrote to the governors of the different provinces, recommending united action, and urging them to secure the friendship of the Five Nations. He also directed them to repel the French by force, and, if possible, to drive them from their posts on the Ohio.

In the summer, a convention of delegates met at Albany. A treaty with the Five Nations was effected; after which a plan of union was proposed. It provided for a general assembly of delegates from all the colonies, to be chosen by the

---

Plan of warfare.

---

representatives of the people ; and that a president-general should be appointed by the crown, who was to have the power of placing a negative on the proceedings of the delegates. The plan was not acceptable to the colonists, because it gave too much power to the king ; the English government disapproved of it on the ground of its throwing too much power into the hands of the representatives of the people, whose increasing influence they already began to fear. It was therefore not adopted. Another was suggested by the British government, but not being accepted by the colonists, it was determined to carry on the war by British troops, aided by such reinforcements as could be raised in the colonies.

Early in 1755, General Braddock was sent to America, 1755 with a considerable force, to protect the frontier. The governors of the several provinces were convened to make arrangements for the campaign. It was decided to make three expeditions ; one against Fort Du Quesne, to be commanded by Braddock, aided by provincial militia to be raised in Maryland and Virginia ; another against Forts Niagara and Frontignac, the latter situated on the Canada side of the St. Lawrence, near Lake Ontario ; and a third against Crown Point.

Preparations for the attack on Fort Du Quesne proceeded slowly. In a new country, horses, wagons and provisions in sufficient quantities were not readily obtained ; and Braddock, impatient of delay, having proceeded to Fort Cumberland, in the western part of Virginia, resolved to march to Fort Du Quesne with twelve hundred men ; the remainder were to follow as soon as arrangements could be made. Braddock had also learned that the French at the fort were expecting a reinforcement of five hundred men. Before he left England, he had been repeatedly warned to guard against

---

Defeat of Braddock.

---

1755 surprises, and now Washington and other American officers advised him to send forward the provincial troops to scour the woods in search of ambuscades. But Braddock, who had been educated in the science of war as taught in Europe, and confident in his own skill, disdained the advice of the provincial officers, and could not be persuaded of the inapplicability of his system to the wilds of America.

As they approached the fort, Washington made a last attempt to induce him to change his plan. He explained the Indian mode of warfare, and offered to place himself in advance of the army, with the provincials under his command. The offer was declined, and Washington and his soldiers were ordered to form in the rear of the British troops.

When within a few miles of the fort, and passing a defile through which their route led, a sudden discharge of fire-arms burst upon them from an invisible foe, accompanied by a tremendous yell. Confusion immediately followed ; the general, however, succeeded in restoring order for a short time, and a temporary cessation of fire induced the belief that the danger was over. The attack was soon renewed, and from behind rocks, trees and logs, a deadly fire was poured upon them. Confusion spread among the British troops. In attempting to restore order, Braddock received a mortal wound, and in a short time most of the officers had fallen. Being mounted on horses, they were easily selected and shot by the Indians. Washington had two horses killed under him, and four bullets passed through his coat, but he remained unhurt. The battle lasted nearly three hours. Upwards of seven hundred of the private soldiers were killed ; of eighty-five officers, sixty-four were either killed or wounded.

The English troops now fled precipitately ; the provincials, being rallied by Washington, retreated under his command.

---

Retreat from Fort Du Quesne.Unsuccessful expeditions.

---

Sixty miles from the scene of action they came up with the 1755 division of the army which had remained behind, and although no enemy had been seen at all, either during the engagement or afterward, the troops hurried to Fort Cumberland. Remaining there a short time, the remnant of the army, having destroyed the greater part of their stores, retreated to Philadelphia, leaving the entire frontier open to the incursions of the Indians, who, having complete ascendancy, the settlements were broken up, and the inhabitants who were not murdered or carried into captivity, escaped to the seaboard.

The two northern expeditions, though less disastrous than that against Fort Du Quesne, were both unsuccessful, and the three campaigns produced nothing but suffering and death, expense and disappointment.

The expedition against Niagara was delayed by heavy rains and other causes, until the season became too far advanced to proceed. Some of the troops remained in Oswego; the others retired to Albany. The force to be directed against Crown Point, was also delayed until the latter part of summer, when the two hostile parties met on the march of the colonial troops to Crown Point. The Americans were at first obliged to retire. The French pursued, but were soon after put to flight. The loss of the latter, in killed and wounded, was estimated at one thousand men; that of the former, one hundred and thirty. The object of the expedition, the taking of Crown Point, was not effected.

During the occurrence of these events, Massachusetts had projected an invasion of Nova Scotia. Although the possession of that province had been confirmed to the English by the treaty of Utrecht, yet much jealousy was felt of the Acadians or French inhabitants, who had secured the friendship of the Indians, and maintained neutrality in the differences

---

Cruel treatment of the Acadians.

---

1755 between the French and English colonies. They had offered no resistance to the new government, but had refused to take the oath of allegiance to the English sovereign, which might oblige them to take up arms against their native country. They were an agricultural people, living in much comfort and happiness. The unsuccessful movements of the English armies increased the fear that they would unite with their fellow countrymen in Canada, to restore the province to the dominion of the French. In the early part of the year, a large force, raised in the New England colonies, had reduced the ports still in the hands of the French, notwithstanding war between France and England had not yet been declared. The surrender was made on the condition that the inhabitants were to be left unmolested. The Acadians generally took no part in the military movement, but surrendered their arms, and complied with all the requisitions of the commander, except that of taking the oath of allegiance. They were, however, treated with great severity; their property was confiscated, orders were given to the troops to occupy their villages, convert their places of worship into barracks, and to remove them from their homes and disperse them through the English colonies. Vessels had been provided to convey these once happy people into perpetual exile, and those who should escape were to be deprived of all means of shelter and support by the burning of their houses, and the destruction of any thing that might afford them the means of subsistence. The ships were scantily furnished with provisions, and no comforts were provided for the sick and aged; and in the hurry of embarkation families were separated, and in some instances, fruitless search for one another was made for the remainder of their lives. The amount of misery caused by these unjustifiable measures cannot be estimated. A few of the inhabitants found a refuge

---

 War declared.
 

---

from the persecution of professing Christians, among the Indians; some others escaped to Canada, while many died from fatigue, exposure and starvation. Upwards of fifteen hundred were conveyed as prisoners, from the comforts of life, to suffer poverty and exile among a people of another religion and another language.

Notwithstanding the hostile proceedings of the French and English colonies, intercourse between the two countries in Europe had remained uninterrupted, and war was not declared until the following spring. In a council of war held early in the season, it was resolved again to attempt the reduction of Crown Point and of Forts Du Quesne and Niagara; and for this purpose to raise an army of 19,000 men. During the delay occasioned by the collecting of so large body, the French and Indians besieged Oswego; the garrison was soon compelled to surrender, and the fortress was destroyed. 1756

This measure disconcerted the plans of the English; an invasion was expected, and attention was now turned to security against further losses. The small-pox also broke out in Albany, so that it was found necessary to discharge most of the provincial troops. Thus ended another season of excitement and expense.

The colonists were not sufficiently discouraged by the results of the war thus far, to prevent them from making active preparations for the campaign of this year. The losses were attributed to mismanagement on the part of the English officers, and to the orders of the British ministry, to remove the provincial officers from the command. It was designed this year to concentrate the forces against Louisburg, on Cape Breton Island. A large army accordingly sailed from New York, and was joined at Halifax by a reinforcement from England; but learning that a large land and naval force had been 1757

---

Attack of Fort William Henry.Surrender.

---

1757 sent out from France, and the strength of the fortifications being well known to the Americans, the proposed attack was abandoned, and the British Admiral returned to New York.

The French commander had determined to gain entire possession of Lake George. Collecting a large force he attacked Fort William Henry, situated at the south end of the lake. Although at first driven back, the attack was renewed ; assistance expected by the English was most unaccountably delayed, and after six days, the commander capitulated to the French, with the stipulation that the prisoners should be protected from the savages, and that the sick and wounded should be treated with humanity. This provision appeared to be entirely disregarded. The troops were left exposed to the attacks of the Indians, and a scene of horror ensued. The groans of the dying, the shrieks of others at the uplifted tomahawk, from which there was no escape, were mingled with the yells of the savages ; nor did the work cease until fifteen hundred had been slaughtered, or carried into captivity.

The French were now in possession of the lakes, and it was justly apprehended that they would make good their claim to the whole valley of the Mississippi, thus fulfilling their design of confining the English settlements to the borders of the Atlantic. The British nation became alarmed ; the king decided to change the ministry, and placed William Pitt at the head of the new administration. Pitt had risen to distinction by his talents, and was popular both in England and America. Possessing the confidence of both countries, his energy and decision, with his promise that past losses and disappointments should be repaired, were the means of once more encouraging the colonists, so that his requisitions were promptly complied with.

Accordingly in the summer, General Abercrombie, who

---

Expeditions against Louisburg and Ticonderoga.

---

had been appointed commander-in-chief of the British forces 1758 in America, was at the head of an army of fifty thousand men ; of these, twenty thousand were provincials. The British fleets had also blocked up in the French ports, or captured at sea, the men and stores designed for Canada. Three expeditions were again undertaken, against Louisburg, Ticonderoga and Crown Point, and against Fort Du Quesne. In the siege of Louisburg, fourteen thousand men, twenty ships of the line, and eighteen frigates, were engaged for nearly two months, when the fortress was surrendered.

The attack of Ticonderoga was unsuccessful. General Abercrombie, with sixteen thousand men, crossed Lake George in boats, and for four hours his men were attempting to scale the walls, exposed to a destructive fire from the fort. Despairing of success, a retreat was ordered, after two thousand of the assailants had been killed or wounded.

After this repulse and serious waste of human life, a detachment of the army was sent against Fort Frontignac, a French post on Lake Ontario, containing large quantities of merchandise, provisions and military stores. The fort fell into the hands of the English, and was destroyed. This loss was severely felt by the French ; the troops at Du Quesne suffered from the want of the provisions, while the Indians, not receiving their supplies, and terrified at the approach of an army of eight thousand men, began to desert in great numbers.

The forces designed for the expedition against Du Quesne had left Philadelphia early in Seventh month, (July,) and after a fatiguing march through deep morasses, and over unexplored mountains, arrived within ninety miles of the fort, whence a detachment of eight hundred men was sent forward to reconnoitre. These were met by a body of French and Indians, and nearly half of them were killed or wounded.

---

The British obtain possession of Fort Du Quesne.

---

Not dismayed by this occurrence, the British army cautiously advanced, when the garrison at the fort, determining not to wait the event of a siege, escaped down the Ohio, and retired to their settlements on the Mississippi. Nearly five months after the army had left Philadelphia, the British flag was hoisted at Fort Du Quesne, and the place received the name of Pittsburg, in commemoration of William Pitt. Treaties with the Indians were then made, which gave security to the frontiers of the middle provinces.

1759 The following year was commemorated by very bold measures of the British ministry. The three strongest holds of the French were to be attacked — Quebec, Ticonderoga and Niagara. The forces directed against the two latter places, if successful, were afterward to join General Wolfe before Quebec.

The forts at Ticonderoga and Crown Point were deserted on the approach of the enemy. An unsuccessful attempt was then made by the British commander to gain possession of Lake Champlain; a series of storms, however, and the advanced season of the year, compelled him to go into winter quarters.

Fort Niagara was closely besieged; the English commander was soon killed, after which a battle took place in which the French were completely routed, and the British gained possession of the place. The garrison, consisting of six hundred and seven men, were carried prisoners to New York; the women and children were sent to Montreal.

Neither of the armies engaged in the reduction of the foregoing places, succeeded in joining General Wolfe; his detachment alone proceeded to the strong fortress, Quebec, the Gibraltar of America. Every expedition against it had heretofore failed; and Montcalm, the officer now in command, was

Wolfe at Quebec.	His death.	Surrender of the city.	Peace.
------------------	------------	------------------------	--------

of distinguished military reputation. Having landed his 1759 army, consisting of eight thousand men, on an island in the St. Lawrence, a few miles below Quebec, Wolfe from this place surveyed the difficulties to be encountered, but without being discouraged.

Quebec stands on the north side of the river, and consists of an upper and lower town, divided by a bold and lofty eminence, running parallel with the river. After several unsuccessful attempts at different points, the whole army succeeded, at night, in ascending the Heights unobserved ; a battle then ensued. The English fire was reserved until the French were within forty yards, when it was poured forth with great destruction. In the engagement Wolfe received a mortal wound, as well as his successor in command ; the French general, Montcalm, was also killed. The French were driven from the field, and five days afterward the city surrendered. In the engagement, a very large portion of the French army was destroyed ; the loss of the English was about six hundred.

The following year Montreal and its dependencies were 1760 taken, and Canada became a British province.

A general treaty of peace, signed at Paris in 1763, and soon 1763 afterward ratified by the respective governments, confirmed to Great Britain the conquests she had made in the north. The division between the English and French possessions, was fixed by a line drawn through the middle of the river Mississippi, from its source to the river Iberville, which connects the Lakes Maurepas and Ponchartrain with the Mississippi, thence through that river and the lakes to the sea. This arrangement ceded to England all the territory east of the Mississippi, excepting New Orleans, with a small tract of country around it. The French were allowed, under certain restrictions, to fish off the Island of Newfoundland ; and Havana,

---

Remarks.

---

which had been taken from Spain during the war, was returned by the British government, in exchange for East and West Florida.

The war with France had raged nearly eight years, during which the energies of the nation being directed to the subjugation of their enemies, involving the destruction of their fellow-men, those objects which tend to the prosperity and advancement of a country, were, as a necessary consequence, neglected.

## CHAPTER XIX.

### DIFFICULTIES WITH THE BRITISH GOVERNMENT.

FROM 1764 TO 1765.

---

#### Enforcement of duties.

---

AT the close of the French war, some account of which is given in the preceding chapter, the colonists were strongly attached to the mother country. But England found that although she had added to the extent of her empire by the contests in which she had been engaged, she had augmented in proportion the burdens of her subjects. To pay the annual interest of the national debt, which had now been increased by three hundred and twenty millions of dollars, it became necessary to make some further provision. As the war had been undertaken on account of the colonies, it was alleged that some assistance ought now to be afforded by them. 1764

The right of Parliament to tax the colonies for the purpose of raising a revenue, had always been denied in America ; and although the duties which had been imposed on certain articles of trade, had never been openly resisted, yet the payment of them had been evaded, and cases of smuggling became frequent.

In the spring of 1764, a bill was carried through Parliament, imposing additional duties on the trade of the colonies. These, in some instances, were so great as almost to amount to a prohibition of the trade ; and the regulations for collecting them were such as to prevent the smuggling, which had been to a great extent overlooked. All the naval officers

---

Stamp duties.

---

on the American coasts were authorized to act as revenue officers, and the forfeitures were to be decided by the judges of the admiralty courts without the intervention of a jury.

The news of these proceedings occasioned in the colonies open discontent, which was increased by the information that a resolution had also been passed by Parliament, declaring that it would be proper to lay other duties on the colonies, called stamp duties, by which all instruments of writing were to be executed on stamped paper, furnished by the British government at high prices ; or that they should not be binding. This would be a very heavy tax on almost every business transaction. Not only for law documents and leases, but for all contracts, bills of sale, notes of hand, newspapers and pamphlets, must this stamped paper be used, should the act become a law.

Petitions to the king, and memorials to Parliament against the proposed measure, were sent from several of the assemblies. In these papers, clear and powerful arguments were brought forward to prove that Great Britain had not the right to lay a tax in the colonies. It was stated that charters had been given to the emigrants, securing to them and their descendants all the rights of English subjects ; that of these rights, none was more clear, or more highly valued, than that no person could be deprived of his property by any body, where his will could not be expressed, either in person, or by his representative. How dangerous to the colonists would it be to entrust the right of taxing them to a body of men, three thousand miles distant, who could not be acquainted with their situation or resources, and whose interests would be different from their own. It was also urged that the domestic governments in America, were supported entirely by the colonists, and that in proportion to their means, their expenses were greater than those of the people of England.

Stamp Act.

Opposition to it.

Notwithstanding these remonstrances, the Stamp Act bill 1765 was introduced into Parliament, and although there was a strong opposition from the minority, it passed into a law in the spring of 1765. As some compensation to the colonies for the stamp duties, provision was made for allowing the exportation of American lumber into all the ports of Europe. The passage of this bill excited serious alarm among the colonists. They saw that they must either give up their claims to civil liberty, or resist the execution of the law, and procure its repeal. In the legislature of Virginia, resolutions were introduced by the distinguished orator, Patrick Henry, expressing the various rights and privileges claimed by the colonists, and unequivocally denying the right of Parliament to tax America. These resolutions, which he eloquently and ably defended, were passed by a majority of one, and were industriously yet cautiously circulated throughout the colonies, until, arriving in New England, they were fearlessly published in the newspapers.

The general court of Massachusetts had already adopted measures for a combined opposition to the obnoxious laws. They proposed that a congress of delegates from all the colonies should assemble at New York, and solicited the concurrence of the other assemblies.

The country soon became divided into two great parties, Whigs and Tories. The Whigs were advocates for popular freedom; the Tories were upholders of parliamentary authority. The former were active in vindicating the rights of the colonies, pamphlets were published, and from the public journals frequent and copious articles were issued, encouraging resistance to the acts which threatened the cause of liberty. Associations were formed to resist the execution of the law.

In Boston, the excitement became so great, that a build-

---

Appeal to the king.

---

1765 ing, supposed to have been erected for the office of the stamp distributor, was destroyed by a mob, his image was burned in effigy and he was compelled to resign. Other acts of violence were also performed ; all who had been appointed agents in the execution of the law, were objects of jealousy. In some of the other colonies, disturbances were prevented by the resignation of the stamp-distributers ; in New York, the boxes containing the stamped paper were seized by the people and publicly burned.

In Tenth month, (Oct.,) the congress of delegates assembled at New York, nine provinces being represented. Their first measure was a declaration of the rights of the colonists. In this document, and in addresses to the king and to Parliament, while they expressed attachment to the government of the mother country, they urged the injustice of being taxed, and at the same time unrepresented, and maintained that the advantage derived by Great Britain from a monopoly of their commerce, was a sufficient contribution for the colonies toward her treasury. The congress recommended to the different provinces to appoint special agents to represent them in England, and endeavor to procure a redress of grievances ; and adjourned, after having made arrangements for transmitting a copy of their proceedings to each of the colonies.

The merchants of New York directed their correspondents in England to purchase no more goods until the stamp act should be repealed. Similar measures were adopted in the other colonies. Instead of depending upon the usual supplies from England, associations were formed for the encouragement of domestic manufactures ; and the most wealthy inhabitants clothed themselves in homespun goods. To avoid using the stamps, proceedings in the courts of justice were

---

Repeal of the Stamp Act.

---

suspended, and differences were settled by arbitration ; vessels were permitted to depart as before, printers circulated their papers, and business was mostly conducted as if no stamp act existed.

When information reached England, of the opposition to the stamp act, the subject was brought before Parliament. A change had taken place in the ministry, favorable to the colonists, and petitions were poured in from the principal commercial towns of England, deprecating the loss of their commerce. George Grenville, the late prime minister, maintained that the honor of the country was implicated in the enforcement of the act ; that if Great Britain now yielded, America was lost. William Pitt, always the friend of America, after protracted ill health, had again taken his seat in Parliament. He warmly recommended the immediate repeal of the act, and declared that on the proposal to tax America, he had dreaded the consequences, and had he been able, he would have been brought to the House to oppose it. He maintained the supremacy of Great Britain in all matters of legislation, but asserted that taxes were the gift of the people, through their representatives, and that no assembly could grant what did not thus belong to it.

After much hesitation, a bill was brought in and passed, 1766 repealing the stamp act, but at the same time declaring the authority of Great Britain "to bind the colonies in all cases whatsoever."

The news of this step was received in America with a transport of joy. It was more than was expected. The declaratory part of the act was passed over as merely intended to save the honor of the British government. Several of the assemblies voted thanks to William Pitt and others who had advocated their cause, and the house of burgesses in Virginia resolved to

---

New laws of Parliament.

---

erect a marble statue of the king, as a memorial of gratitude. The importation of British goods was again encouraged, and articles of British manufacture came once more into general use.

Some difficulty arose with regard to compensation to the sufferers by the disorderly proceedings that had occurred in Boston and elsewhere. This was demanded in mild but urgent terms by Secretary Conway. Great hesitation was shown in complying with the requisition, especially in Massachusetts, where it was long delayed. The measure was, however, finally agreed to, and, at the same time, a pardon granted to all who had been concerned in the riots.

1767 Fresh difficulties occurred the following year. A law of Parliament directed that whenever the king's troops should be marched into any of the colonies, quarters should be furnished them. That law was now changed so as to require the colonists to supply them also with certain enumerated articles. This, being considered an indirect mode of taxation, was opposed; and in New York, where it first came into operation, the assembly refused obedience, and was immediately dissolved by the governor. At a subsequent period they granted the supplies.

A new ministry had again come into power; and Parliament imposed duties on the importation of glass, tea, paper and some other articles exported from England to America. Regulations were made for the establishment of commissioners of the customs, and for the more rigid collection of the revenue.

When intelligence of these proceedings was received in America, the hostile feelings which had subsided on the repeal of the stamp act, were again aroused, and the press of the country was once more employed in awakening the colo-

---

Non-importation agreements.

---

nists to a sense of the danger which threatened their liberties. The governors, being appointed by the crown, were in favor of sustaining the acts of Parliament, thus rendering themselves obnoxious to the people ; and the frequent controversies which resulted, lessened the attachment of the people to the country from which the governors received their authority.

A letter of expostulation from the legislature of Massachusetts, against the new duties, was of no avail ; and a circular letter to the other colonial assemblies, urging the importance of united action in all efforts to obtain redress, excited alarm in the minds of the ministers. Fearing that a union among the colonies would give them strength and confidence, they directed the governor of Massachusetts to call on the legislature to rescind the resolution respecting the circular letter, and, in case of non-compliance, to dissolve the assembly. This proposal the legislature rejected by a large majority, and were accordingly dissolved. 1768

By proceedings such as these, opposition to Parliament increased, and various measures were adopted for a redress of grievances. Finding that petitions and remonstrances were unavailing, non-importation agreements were adopted more extensively than ever. In a town meeting held in Boston, it was resolved to encourage domestic manufactures, and to purchase no articles of foreign growth or manufacture, but such as were indispensable. The people were at that time so dependent on the mother country for supplies, that such a measure would deprive them of most of the luxuries, and very many of the conveniencies of life ; but after much consideration it was adopted. This example was soon followed by other colonies, and associations were also formed

---

British regiments in Boston.

---

1768 among the merchants, for importing no article that was not actually required.

Meantime the commissioners of customs arrived at Boston and entered on their duties. One of the officers was placed on board the sloop *Liberty*, belonging to John Hancock, laden with wines from Madeira; when, on attempting to discharge the duties of his appointment, he was confined in the cabin, and the whole cargo was landed in the night. The vessel was, in consequence, condemned and seized. This led to some riotous proceedings, in which a custom-house boat was burned, and the officers fled for safety to a ship of war lying in the harbor. The assembly condemned these proceedings, and proposed a prosecution of the rioters; but there seemed so little prospect of obtaining a jury who would convict, that the attempt was not made.

In consequence of the determination manifested by the people of Boston on various occasions, two regiments were ordered from New York to be quartered in that town, to protect the officers of the revenue, in the discharge of their duties. On arriving in the harbor, the ships that conveyed them lay with their broadsides to the town, ready to fire should resistance be offered. Seven hundred soldiers then landed, and with loaded muskets, fixed bayonets and the usual military parade, marched to the Common. In the evening, the selectmen of the town having refused to provide any accommodations for them, the governor took possession of the market hall and state house. All the rooms in the latter were filled, excepting the council chamber, and two pieces of cannon were placed near the principal entrance.

This display of military force exasperated the citizens of Boston. Even Faneuil Hall, designated as the Cradle of Liberty, from having town meetings held in it during

---

Opposition to parliamentary taxation.

---

these troublous times, was filled with military men, and the members of the council had to pass between lines of soldiers to reach their hall. Additional regiments were soon after stationed in Boston, and before the close of the year the troops numbered nearly four thousand men.

The non-importation agreements which had now been entered into by many of the colonies, tending to injure the London merchants and manufacturers, excited the indignation of the ministry, and Parliament was ready to uphold them in their views. The spirit of liberty had first showed itself in Massachusetts, and petitions were now forwarded from the two Houses of Parliament to the king, begging him to direct the governor of Massachusetts to institute an inquiry into all cases of treason which had occurred since the commencement of the year now nearly expired, and send the offenders to England for trial.

When this information reached America the general court of Massachusetts was not in session. The assembly of Virginia, alarmed at the danger which threatened the colonies, 1769 passed resolutions re-asserting the right to be exempted from parliamentary taxation; and declaring that to send persons suspected of crime, beyond the sea to be tried, where they could not have a jury from their own neighborhood, or produce witnesses on their trial, would violate the rights of British subjects. These resolutions were directed to be forwarded to the other assemblies, whose concurrence was earnestly solicited. On learning the nature of these proceedings, the governor immediately dissolved the assembly. This measure excited still further the spirit of opposition. The members immediately assembled at a private house, and unanimously passed non-importation agreements, similar to those already adopted at the north. In the course of a few weeks, this example was followed by most of the southern colonies.

---

Mob in Boston.

---

At the meeting of the general court of Massachusetts in the spring, a delegation waited on the governor requesting him to withdraw the naval and military force from Boston, during the session of the assembly, as they considered the investment of the town, inconsistent with the deliberations of the representatives of a free people. The governor replied, that he had no authority over the troops; and on the refusal of the legislature to meet, surrounded with an armed force, and a military guard at the door of the state house, he adjourned the meeting to Cambridge. A requisition was soon afterward made by the governor for funds to defray the expenses of the troops in Boston, which being decidedly refused, he immediately prorogued the general court, to meet at Boston on the 10th of First month, (Jan.,) 1770.

The difficulties and discouragements under which the country labored did not entirely put a stop to the progress of education. In this year two colleges were founded; one in Bristol county, removed the following year to Providence, the other in the town of Hanover, called Dartmouth College, from one of its founders, the Earl of Dartmouth. The institution, designed originally for the instruction of the Indians, was founded by a company in England. A large grant of land was made for its support.

1770 The presence of the military in Boston was painful and irritating to the feelings of the inhabitants, and quarrels between them and the people were of frequent occurrence. An affray at length arose, in which, after some provocation, a detachment of the troops fired upon a crowd of people, killing four, and wounding others. Several thousand people immediately assembled at the beating of the drums, and were so enraged by seeing the dead bodies of their countrymen, that they were preparing to attack another body of troops,

---

Mob in Boston.

---

who had been sent to the scene of action, when the lieutenant 1770 governor succeeded in calming them, and prevailed upon them to disperse until morning.

The next day, the party of troops engaged in the affair were arrested and sent to prison. The immediate removal of the military force from the town, was demanded by the citizens who assembled on the occasion. After some hesitation on the part of the commanding officer the requisition was complied with.

At the time of the funeral of those who had been killed, public feeling was manifested by the closing of the shops, and the tolling of the bells of Boston and the neighboring towns. An immense procession followed the remains to a vault, where they were all deposited.

When the excitement had to some extent subsided, the troops with their captain were brought to trial. They were ably defended by lawyers of the popular party, and nearly six weeks were spent in examining witnesses and listening to the arguments of the counsel. The captain and six of the men were acquitted, and two, considering the provocation which had been given, were found guilty of manslaughter only. This result proves great impartiality in the jury, as well as the magnanimity of the counsel.

While these things were passing in America, Lord North commenced his important career as prime minister. The merchants had begun to suffer severely the effects of the non-importation agreements. The exports had fallen in the course of one year, from nearly two and a half million pounds sterling, to a little over one and a half millions. The new minister proposed to withdraw the duties, as tending to discourage their own manufactures, with the exception of that on tea, which was to be retained by way of asserting the right of

---

Revenue laws enforced.

---

Parliament to lay a tax on the colonies. After considerable discussion, in which the repeal of all the duties was advocated by some, while others opposed any concession, the proposal of Lord North was carried.

This partial repeal produced no change in the sentiments of the people; the principle was still involved. The non-importation agreements, however, were made to correspond with the law, and tea alone was now excluded. A brisk trade was commenced in the other articles which had been taxed, and the southern colonies, more agricultural than commercial, although not entirely satisfied, were inclined to acquiesce in the proceedings of Parliament. In the northern colonies commerce was much restricted by the enforcement of the revenue laws; and although the year 1771 passed without any decided outbreak of popular feeling, yet the public mind was indignant at the manner in which the officers of the revenue executed their commission. The zeal and arrogance of one of these led to an act of hostility the following year, which exasperated the British ministry.

1772 The commander of the revenue schooner, stationed near Providence, had rendered himself particularly obnoxious to the people, by the rigidity with which he not only enforced the revenue laws, but required of the packets, in passing him, to lower their colors. This being refused by the Providence packet, with passengers on board, a shot was fired at her, which being disregarded, the captain quietly continuing his course, the schooner started in pursuit. By keeping in shoal water, the American captain contrived to run the schooner aground, about seven miles below Providence, where, with an ebbing tide, she was made fast for the night. The schooner was soon boarded by some of the inhabitants of Providence, the commander and crew were required to leave

---

Committees of correspondence appointed.

---

the vessel, after a scuffle in which the former was wounded, 1772  
and were carefully set on shore. The vessel with her stores  
was then burned.

A reward of five hundred pounds was offered by the governor for the discovery of any persons engaged in the affair ; but this and all other measures proved ineffectual. The information was transmitted to the ministry, but no evidence could be procured, and there the matter terminated. There was too much unanimity in resisting oppression, even for the offer of a pardon to the parties implicated, to elicit information.

Hitherto certain law officers, appointed by the crown for the colony of Massachusetts, had received but a scanty salary apportioned them by the assembly. This year, the crown granted them liberal salaries out of the revenue derived from the colonies. This measure, which rendered these officers entirely independent of the people, created much alarm. The inhabitants of Boston met in the fall, and petitioned the governor to call an assembly, which he refused to do. To produce concert of action, and to consider what was to be done in this season of danger, committees of correspondence were appointed in the several towns of the province. This example was soon followed by other colonies, and in the following year, at 1773  
the suggestion of the Virginia assembly, the colonial legislatures appointed similar committees, by which means an interchange of sentiment was kept up by the inhabitants of the different provinces.

In the course of this year, Dr. Benjamin Franklin, who had for some years been the agent, in London, of the Massachusetts colony, obtained possession of some letters written by the governor of Massachusetts and some other individuals, to their correspondents in Parliament, which he transmitted to

---

Tea sent to the colonies.

---

1773 Boston. They stated that the opposition was confined to a few individuals, who were not countenanced by the body of the people, and who had but gathered strength by the ineffectual means used to restrain them. More vigorous measures were recommended, and the ministry were urged to take from the people the power of appointing colonial magistrates, and to make all the high offices dependent solely on the crown for their salaries.

Printed copies of these letters were inclosed to all the towns in the province. The people were exasperated. A vote of censure was passed on the writers of the letters, and the assembly petitioned the king for their removal from office. The petition was disregarded, and the hope of a better understanding with the mother country was diminished by the thought of having persons among them engaged in misrepresenting them to the ministry.

Meanwhile the tea of the East India Company accumulated in the warehouses of England. In this state of things they applied to Parliament for relief, who allowed them to export it free of duty, by which regulation it could be offered in America, even at a lower rate than before it was made a source of revenue. Encouraged in this way, and fully expecting to find a market, they resolved to send large cargoes to some of the principal seaports, and appointed agents for disposing of it.

It was now to be seen whether the colonists were united in their resistance to taxation, or whether the opposition was confined to a few. In New York and Philadelphia the pilots were intimidated by the threats of the people, from conducting any ship, loaded with tea, into the harbor, so that the captains of the vessels bound for these two ports returned with their cargoes to England. In Charleston the ships were unloaded,

---

Destruction of tea in Boston harbor.

---

and the tea was stored in cellars, where it remained until 1773 ruined by the dampness of the situation.

In several of the ports the disapprobation expressed by the citizens had been so great as to induce the agents to resign their appointments. But it was not so in Boston. There the tea had been consigned to the particular friends of Governor Hutchinson, and no efforts or threats from the people could induce them to decline their appointments. The vessels containing the tea lay for some days in the harbor; the citizens from a numerous town meeting, having sent the most peremptory orders that it should not be landed, and a strict watch being kept to prevent its being secretly brought on shore. The captains wished to return without running the risk of losing their cargoes; a short time was allowed them to prepare to do so, but the custom-house officers would not grant clearances to the vessels, nor would the governor allow them to pass Castle William. At length the people could be restrained no longer, and on the 16th of Twelfth month, (Dec.,) a company of about seventeen men, disguised as Indians, boarded the vessels, raised the hatches and threw into the water the contents of three hundred and forty-two chests of tea.

This step was not taken without premeditation. The citizens of Boston had been publicly addressed on the subject. Josiah Quincy, a leading statesman, in one of those large and important town meetings, made these remarks, "Let us consider the issue; let us look to the end; let us weigh and deliberate, before we advance to those measures which must bring on the most trying and terrible struggle this country ever saw."

Parliament was much incensed by these proceedings. A bill was passed which received the royal assent, prohibit-

---

Boston Port bill.Other obnoxious laws.

---

1774 ing the lading or unlading of vessels with goods or merchandise, excepting stores for the service of the king, and provisions and fuel for the use of the inhabitants, within the port of Boston, until good order and obedience to the laws were restored, and compensation had been made to the East India Company. This was known as the Boston Port bill. To enforce these enactments, four ships of war were ordered to the port of Boston. The custom house was removed to Salem.

Not satisfied with this bill alone, another was passed by Parliament, re-modelling the charter, and giving to the king the appointment of all important officers ; thus securing the magistrates in favor with the British interests. Still another obnoxious law was added, by which, persons indicted for any offence, committed in aiding the magistrates, might be removed to another colony, or even to England for trial.

Fearing that an appeal to arms would ensue, the British government took measures for securing the attachment of the people of Canada. Extensive powers were conferred on a legislative council, the members of which were to be nominated by the king ; a perfect equality of religion was established between the Papists and Protestants, the privileges of the clergy were secured to them, and the French laws were confirmed. These proceedings doubtless had an important influence in deciding the course of the Canadians in the approaching war.

Massachusetts, firm in her determination to resist oppression, seems to have been the special object of indignation. But the course of the home government toward this province, instead of having the effect of dividing the colonies, united them more closely, for they knew that she was suffering in a cause equally dear to them all.

---

Effects of the Boston Port bill.

---

At a town meeting, held immediately on the intelligence 1774 being received of the Boston Port bill, resolutions were passed expressing the impolicy and injustice of the act; and proposing to the other colonies to unite with them in a general non-importation agreement. The effect of this bill was to convert a prosperous town, the seat of commerce and plenty, into a scene of suffering. Various classes were affected by the change. Laborers were thrown out of employment, expensive stores and fine wharves were rendered useless, the income of landholders was greatly diminished, where it did not entirely cease. The other colonies gave assurances of support, and in Philadelphia and other places, collections were taken up in aid of the sufferers. The people of Marblehead and other seaport towns in Massachusetts, offered to Boston the use of their harbors, wharves and warehouses, free of expense; and Salem, to which the custom house had been removed, refused to receive the trade of Boston, and sent an address to the governor, declining the advantageous offers made to them. The 1st day of Sixth month, (June,) when the law went into effect, was observed in most of the colonies as a public and solemn fast.

The Virginian assembly had been dissolved by the governor for proposing a general fast day, but previously to their separation, they had suggested that a general congress should meet to deliberate on the state of the country. One of the first acts of the Massachusetts general court, which assembled at Salem, was the choice of delegates to attend the congress to be held at Philadelphia on the 1st of Ninth month (Sept.) While engaged in this business with closed doors, Governor Gage, who had been privately informed of their proceedings, sent his secretary to dissolve the assembly. Being refused admittance, the proclamation was read aloud on the staircase.

---

A general congress at Philadelphia.

---

1774 The cause of the inhabitants of Boston was becoming increasingly popular ; so that although there were those in the country under the name of Tories, who were friendly to the claims of the British government, yet their influence was lost by overwhelming majorities. That powerful agent, the press, too, was in the hands of those friendly to the people, and was very generally employed in supporting the cause of the colonists.

The necessity for a general congress became more apparent, and the measure was soon adopted by all the colonies excepting Georgia. On the 4th of Ninth month, (Sept.,) 1774, the delegates met. Their deliberations were conducted with closed doors, and such only of their proceedings were known as they thought suitable to publish. Resolutions were adopted expressive of sympathy with the sufferings of their countrymen in Massachusetts, and promising them general support. They also recommended that contributions from all the colonies should be taken up to relieve their distresses. It was agreed that no goods should be imported from Great Britain after the first day of Twelfth month, (Dec.,) and that no exports should be made to that country after the 10th of Ninth month, (Sept.,) 1775, unless the grievances had been redressed. These resolutions were strictly adhered to by the American people, although they possessed no legal force. Addresses to the king and to the people of Great Britain were prepared, in which attention was directed to the means of averting civil war. The feelings of the people were clearly and ably delineated, a determination was shown to maintain their rights, a desire for independence was denied, and a strong attachment for the mother country and for the king expressed.\*

---

\* In an address to the inhabitants of Canada, the Congress endeavored to induce them to join the confederacy.

---

Preparations for war.

---

These papers, being published, were admired in Europe, 1774 and enlisted much feeling in the cause of American liberty. In the British House of Lords, William Pitt, then Earl of Chatham, spoke of the dignity, the firmness and the wisdom with which the Americans had acted, and added, "I trust it is obvious to your lordships that all attempts to impose servitude on such men, to establish despotism over such a mighty continental nation, must be vain, must be futile." In America the proceedings of the congress were received with enthusiasm, confirming the conviction which was generally, though not universally, felt of the justice of the cause in which the people had engaged.

The crisis was near at hand. The colonists were now embarked in a common cause, and a violent struggle was expected. War, that awful and desolating scourge, was about to burst upon the country, checking its prosperity and involving thousands of victims. Martial preparations covered the land. Companies of volunteers were organized in the different cities and villages, and munitions of war were industriously collected and concealed from the officers of the government.

Massachusetts being considered the seat of the difficulty, General Gage, governor of the province, and also commander-in-chief of all the British forces in America, withdrew several regiments of troops from different parts of the continent, and encamped them on the Common at Boston. He also raised fortifications on Boston Neck, and having seized the ammunition and stores contained in the provincial arsenal and magazines at Cambridge and Charlestown, conveyed them to Boston.

A provincial congress now assembled at Concord. A committee was appointed to request General Gage to desist from

---

Plan for the defence of Massachusetts.

---

1774 fortifying the entrance to Boston. In return he expressed indignation at the supposition of danger from English troops, to any but the enemies of England, and warned the congress to desist from its illegal proceedings. That body afterward adjourned to Cambridge, in the immediate vicinity of Boston, where a committee was appointed to prepare a plan for the defence of the province. It was agreed to purchase military stores, and a committee of supplies was appointed; also to enlist a number of men who should be in readiness to appear in arms, at a minute's warning, hence called minute-men; with a committee of safety, who were authorized to call out these men, when thought necessary for the defence of the inhabitants.

Notwithstanding the serious and portentous aspect which the affairs of the country had assumed, many of the colonists still hoped there would be no resort to arms. Their non-importation agreements had heretofore produced the desired effect, and they could not but think their inflexible determination of adhering to similar measures would again produce favorable results, and that England would yet come to terms of conciliation with the best customers of her merchandise. But New York evinced irresolution, which encouraged the British government to persist in its plan, and to believe that by dividing the colonies all might easily be subjugated.

1775 America had her friends in Parliament, and several bills were introduced for adjusting the difficulties, but they were rejected. The Earl of Chatham, now in the decline of life, again plead for the mitigation of the offensive measures, and demonstrated the impossibility of subjugating the country; but it was of no avail, Parliament would not repeal any obnoxious law. A bill was also passed for restricting the

---

Concessions rejected.

---

commerce of the colonies, and prohibiting them from the 1775  
fisheries on the banks of Newfoundland. New York and  
North Carolina were excepted in consequence of their supposed  
dissent from the measures of the other provinces. Thus  
jealousy prevailed between the colonies and England, conces-  
sions were rejected, and the storm continued rapidly to  
approach.

## CHAPTER XX.

### WAR. THE REVOLUTION.

---

#### Battle of Lexington.

---

1775 A QUANTITY of provisions and military stores had been collected at Concord, about eighteen miles from Boston. These General Gage determined to destroy; and on the evening of the 18th of Fourth month, (April,) he despatched for this object a body of eight hundred troops. Although the arrangements had been made with great secrecy, and the dark and still hours of night were chosen for the expedition, yet messengers were sent from Boston with the information. The minute-men were soon assembled by the ringing of bells and the firing of signal guns. When the troops reached Lexington, six miles below Concord, about seventy of the provincials were found on parade and under arms. These were ordered by the British officers to throw down their arms and disperse; but not obeying the order, the English soldiers were commanded to fire. Eight of the provincials were killed, some of them after the party had begun to retire; several others were wounded.

The detachment then proceeded to Concord. Here also the minute-men were collected for defence; but being few in number, retreated at the approach of the troops, and waited for reinforcements. The first act of the British was to cut off communication with the neighboring towns, by destroying or occupying the bridges, and thus prevent all assistance from reaching the provincials. A party was sent immediate-

---

Destruction of provisions and stores.

Retreat of the British.

---

ly forward to destroy the provisions and stores. These 1775 effected their object; sixty barrels of flour and a large amount of military stores were destroyed.

Meanwhile the provincials gathered on a neighboring hill, near one of the bridges, where a party of the British was stationed. A general action ensued, which resulted in the retreat of the troops toward the centre of the town. Time was not even given for rest, after a fatiguing march; their dead were hastily buried, the wounded placed in such vehicles as could be obtained, and the flight commenced. At Lexington they were joined by another detachment sent forward by General Gage; but the whole party was thrown into great confusion by the firing of the provincials.

A half hour was given to the exhausted fugitives to rest, when the march was resumed. The houses on the road were plundered, and set on fire. In most cases the flames were soon extinguished, but some houses were destroyed. The struggle was not yet over. At every defile the contest was renewed, and before the close of the day, sixty-five of the British had been killed, nearly two hundred wounded, and twenty-eight made prisoners. The loss of the Americans was fifty killed and thirty-four wounded. After sunset the worn-out soldiers reached Bunker Hill, where they remained through the night, and the next morning entered Boston.

The battle of Lexington was the signal for war; even New York, where Tory influence was the strongest, now decided to stand by her countrymen. The Massachusetts provincial congress immediately concluded to raise an army of thirty thousand men in New England, and preparations for the war went on in the other colonies. Many of the forts, magazines and arsenals which had been in possession of

---

Burning of Norfolk.Boston besieged.

---

1775 the British authorities, were seized by the provincial soldiers, and a considerable force was added to the American army, which had commenced a siege of Boston. Ticonderoga and Crown Point were both taken, which, with the capture of a sloop-of-war, lying at St. Johns, gave the Americans the command of Lake George and Lake Champlain. In Virginia and North and South Carolina, the royal governors were compelled to take refuge on board sloops of war. Lord Dunmore, governor of Virginia, unable to procure provisions, sent parties of sailors ashore, who set fire to Norfolk, the most flourishing commercial town in that colony. The flames spread rapidly among the wooden buildings, and what were not consumed now, were afterward destroyed by the Americans, that they might afford no shelter to British soldiers.

Early in the summer three vessels, with troops, commanded by Generals Howe, Burgoyne and Clinton, arrived at Boston, and shortly afterward General Gage declared martial law to be in force; having previously offered pardon to all who would lay down their arms and submit to the king, excepting Samuel Adams and John Hancock.

Unwilling to be confined in Boston by a surrounding force of provincial troops, General Gage made preparations for penetrating into the country with a portion of his army. To prevent this, the Americans resolved to fortify Bunker Hill, an eminence in Charlestown, so situated as to render its possession a matter of great importance to either of the contending parties. By some mistake, Breed's Hill, which is nearer to the water and to the city, was selected, and at twelve o'clock on the evening of the 16th of Sixth month, (June,) the fortifications were commenced and had proceeded to a considerable extent, when at the dawn of day they were

---

Burning of Charlestown.Battle of Bunker Hill.

---

discovered and fired upon from an armed ship and several 1775 floating batteries lying near. Encouraged by General Putnam, however, they persevered until they had completed their work.

Aware of the importance of this position, General Gage determined to drive the Americans from it, and despatched three thousand troops under the command of General Howe, for this service. The interest to know the result of the approaching battle was intense ; the roofs of the houses and every eminence in Boston and the surrounding neighborhood were covered with people, anxiously waiting the event. Orders had been given by General Gage to set fire to the village of Charlestown. It was soon enveloped in flames, adding to the destruction of the day. The British ascended the hill in military order, firing as they approached the low line of fortifications on the summit, behind which lay the American army. The Americans reserved their fire until the British were within less than one hundred yards of the fortification, when by a simultaneous discharge, the British line was broken, and they were driven back toward the water in disorder. Again they were rallied and approached as before, when another destructive fire threw them once more into confusion. A third time they were reluctantly led to the attack, aided by reinforcements from Boston. The ammunition of the Americans was now nearly exhausted, and the British had succeeded in placing some of their cannon so as to bear directly behind the breastwork, sweeping at one stroke the whole line in awful destruction. The fire from the ships and batteries was also redoubled. From this contest, the Americans were forced to retire, defending themselves as they withdrew with the butt-ends of their muskets.

The loss of the Americans, in killed and wounded, was

---

George Washington commander-in-chief.Burning of Falmouth.

---

1775 four hundred and fifty-three, out of fifteen hundred engaged in the battle ; that of the British was one thousand and fifty-four, out of three thousand. General Warren, a highly popular American officer, who fell on that day, was especially regretted by his countrymen. He had early espoused the cause of freedom, and to many social virtues were added the eloquence of an orator and the wisdom of a statesman. But his career was arrested, and the talents which might have adorned and served his country were lost by this terrible battle.

The continental congress had assembled in Philadelphia on the 10th of Fifth month, (May.) Once more they resolved on a petition to the king, for a redress of grievances, and also decided that means of defence should be immediately prepared. They then proceeded to the organization of the army, and unanimously voted George Washington, at that time a delegate from Virginia, commander-in-chief of all the American forces. His integrity was undoubted, and he was known to be warmly attached to the interests of his country. The issuing of bills of credit to the amount of three millions of dollars, for defraying the expenses of the war, was authorized, and the colonies were pledged unitedly for their redemption.

In time of war, the destruction of property, or even the jeopardizing of human life, is considered of but little moment, if some particular point can be gained. The British ministry had given orders for the destruction of the seaports of the colonies ; in consequence, four ships sailed for Falmouth, now Portland, Maine, in the fall of the year. Having offered terms of submission which were rejected, the town, consisting of about four hundred dwelling-houses and stores, was entirely destroyed by shells and shot thrown out during a whole day.

Capture of British stores.

Formation of a new army.

Soon after his appointment, General Washington proceeded 1775 to Cambridge, the seat of the American army, which consisted at that time of fourteen thousand men, and formed a line for a distance of twelve miles, on the heights around Boston. They were deficient in discipline, and without most of the comforts and conveniences usually provided for regular armies. The supply of arms and ammunition was scanty. Some degree of system and regularity was soon introduced, and arrangements were made for the manufacture of gunpowder. Several ships, laden with various stores for the British army, were captured by American vessels, affording to the colonial troops a seasonable supply, while the loss was severely felt by those for whom the cargoes had been designed.

Washington soon began to perceive that the expense of maintaining an army far exceeded the expectation of Congress; he also felt the embarrassment of his situation, as the expiration of the time for which the soldiers had been engaged to serve, drew near. A speedy settlement of the difficulties having been anticipated, the enlistments had been for a short period. Before the close of this year, Congress resolved to form a new army of twenty thousand men, to be composed, as far as practicable, of the troops then in service. The colonies severally agreed to furnish their respective quota, but the recruiting proceeded slowly; and when the old army was disbanded, there had been but between nine and ten thousand enlistments for that of 1776. The privations and hardships those had undergone who had already served, had considerably diminished their zeal, their fatiguing labors had affected their health, and many were weary of the separation from their wives and families.

Meantime the British troops in Boston suffered many pri- 1776  
vations; persons from the country were unwilling to sell them

---

Evacuation of Boston.

---

provisions, and the supplies sent them from England were much interrupted by the vessels which had been fitted out for the protection of the coast.

Impatient of delay, an attack on Boston was demanded ; but a council of war decided against it, and recommended that the town should be more closely besieged. Washington therefore resolved to fortify Dorchester Heights, and having diverted the attention of the British by a brisk cannonade in another quarter, a party of troops with great industry during the night erected a line of fortifications which commanded the harbor and the town. Great was the astonishment of General Howe, who had succeeded Gage in the chief command, on first beholding the works ; and he immediately determined to dislodge the Americans, or evacuate the town. The next day a large number of troops embarked in boats to attack the works, but a severe storm dispersed them, and before any thing else could be done, the works had been rendered still stronger ; and a council of war decided on a departure from Boston, as soon as practicable. On the 17th of Third month, (March,) the embarkation was effected, and Washington and his adherents entered the place. Supposing the British had proceeded to New York, the American army in detachments hastened there ; but Halifax was the place of their destination.

1775 While these events were transpiring in New England, a detachment of the provincial army was sent into Canada under command of General Schuyler. The friendship and assistance of the Canadians, in the struggle in which the colonists were engaged, had been considered quite important by Congress. To enlist their sympathies, addresses had frequently been sent them, which had been translated into French, and circulated among the inhabitants. These had

## Invasion of Canada.

## Taking of Montreal.

had considerable influence, and many of the people were quite 1775  
disposed to favor the colonists, when the novel expedient was  
agreed on, to secure their coöperation by sending an army  
into their country to besiege their cities and attack their for-  
tifications.

Three thousand troops entered the province on the 10th of  
Ninth month, (Sept.,) 1775. The first act of hostility was  
committed in an attack on Fort St. Johns. One attempt to get  
possession was unsuccessful, but on receiving reinforcements  
the attack was renewed, and after a strong defence the fort  
was surrendered.

A small detachment of the army having been sent into the  
interior of Canada, the commander was, on his return, in-  
duced to attack Montreal. They were opposed by the whole  
British force under Governor Carleton. After many had  
been killed, the assailants were obliged to surrender, and  
their commander, Colonel Ethan Allen, was sent by the gov-  
ernor to England, for trial as a rebel, loaded with irons.

The aggressive war against the Canadians was now fully  
commenced. Another fort, a few miles distant from St.  
Johns, fell into the hands of the Americans, with less loss of  
life than at the former place. A victory was also gained over  
Governor Carleton, who with a small company had advanced  
from Montreal, but on approaching the enemy, they were  
met by so unexpected and destructive a fire from persons in  
concealment, that they retreated in confusion.

General Montgomery, who had become chief in command,  
by the illness and consequent return of General Schuyler, pre-  
viously to the taking of Fort St. John, now hastened to Mon-  
treal. The governor, feeling that the place could not be suf-  
ficiently defended, left it in the night, with a small body of  
soldiers, under General Prescott. Montgomery entered the

---

Treatment of the Canadians.

---

1775 next day ; no terms had been made, but he treated the inhabitants with kindness, and declared that their religion, rights and property should be respected. On reaching the mouth of the river Sorel, the British encountered a naval force which had been stationed there by Montgomery, to prevent their escape to Quebec. Finding themselves unable to force a passage, they surrendered, the governor having the night previously passed through the squadron in a boat with muffled oars.

When the American army entered Canada, a proclamation was issued to the Canadians, exhorting them to join their brethren in the cause of freedom, and declaring the troops to be friends of the inhabitants, and enemies only of the British garrisons. Many of the people were at that time favorably disposed toward them, but by the subsequent behavior of the soldiers, hostility was provoked. They were an undisciplined band, that treated the religion of the Canadians with disrespect, and in their traffic for provisions, compelled the people to give them articles below the market prices, giving as payment, illegal certificates for goods which they had already received, and which were consequently rejected by the quartermaster general ; nor did the Canadians meet with any thing but insults, when payment was demanded for just debts. Opposition to the Americans was thus induced, and the sympathies of the Canadians were enlisted on the other side ; and although Congress, on receiving this information, ordered justice done, it was too late.

Having left a detachment to keep possession of Montreal, Montgomery hastened to Quebec. It was now late in the autumn. The term of service for which many of the soldiers had enlisted, was nearly expired ; they were weary of privation and hardship, and insisted on returning home. Their great attachment to their commander, and his urgent entreaties to

---

Arnold's expedition.

---

proceed on the expedition, availed nothing ; and Montgomery, 1775 with the remnant of his force, consisting of but three hundred men, proceeded to Quebec, expecting there to meet a reinforcement from the army around Boston.

Two months previously, Washington had despatched eleven hundred men under Colonel Arnold, with directions to march across the country against Quebec. The route had never been explored, and lay through the forests of Maine. After much suffering from the severity of the weather, and the want of provisions, they separated into several divisions. One of these, unable to advance, returned to the camp at Roxbury ; the remainder pressed through every difficulty, toiling through the wilderness without meeting a human being, until, their provisions being exhausted, Arnold, with a few followers, advanced a distance of thirty miles, and obtained a supply from the nearest Canadian settlement. At length, after seven weeks of suffering, the party, much diminished, arrived before Quebec.

By the imprudence of Arnold in intrusting a letter for General Schuyler to an Indian who was a stranger, the British had been made acquainted with the approach of the American forces. The boats had all been withdrawn, none could be procured for crossing the river, and in the mean time the city was placed in a posture of defence. In five days Arnold succeeded in crossing the river, with five hundred men in canoes, but could not immediately attack the town for want of the scaling ladders, which he had not as yet been able to convey across the river. Marching his troops in sight of the garrison, the British were fully on their guard, and fired upon his flag of truce. He then retired to Point Aux Trembles, about twenty miles up the river, where he was soon joined by Montgomery with his small remnant.

---

Americans retreat from Quebec.

---

1775 On the 5th of Twelfth month, (Dec.,) having succeeded in conveying the scaling ladders across the river, the whole force, amounting to nine hundred men, appeared before Quebec. A flag of truce sent by Montgomery was fired upon. After erecting batteries, an attack was commenced, but no impression could be made on the walls. The cold was intense, the snow falling fast, and the sufferings of the troops were even greater than they had heretofore experienced. In the midst of this distress, the small-pox was introduced among the soldiers, and by lessening the number of those who were able to labor, increased the duties of the others. Many of the men had inoculated themselves, although orders to the contrary had been given, and such was the spread of the disease, that notwithstanding the arrival of reinforcements, but nine hundred men were fit for service, while medicines and the comforts and conveniences necessary for the sick were wanting.

Montgomery perceived there was no time to be lost, and determined to storm the town. In order to divert attention, two feigned attacks were made on the upper town, while Montgomery and Arnold separately directed their forces in another quarter. The former was at first successful. The British had begun to retire, when one of them returned to the battery and discharged one of the guns; Montgomery, two captains, and two other men were killed on the spot. The rest of the division precipitately retreated. Arnold and his party maintained an obstinate conflict for a considerable time, when he was severely wounded and carried off the field. His party for three hours encountered a deadly fire, when, fatigued with exertion and benumbed with cold, they retreated, leaving many of the men in the hands of the British.

In this desperate engagement, so large a number of the Americans had been killed or taken prisoners, that, from nin

---

 Death of Montgomery.

 British reinforced.
 

---

hundred, the provincial army had been reduced to four hundred effective men. The loss of their commander was severely felt; few men have fallen in battle more beloved and respected than Montgomery. The sick and wounded were treated with much humanity by Carleton, the British commander, who, as they recovered, permitted them to return to their homes. In the hope of receiving reinforcements, Arnold, who again had the command, decided to remain in the vicinity, and maintained a blockade of the place, cutting off supplies of provisions, so that the garrison was reduced to great distress. With the addition of a small force from Massachusetts, and all that could be spared from Montreal, the siege was resumed, but without effect.

Meantime, the difficulties of obtaining provisions became 1776 greater, the small-pox continued its ravages, and the spirits of the soldiers became depressed. On a review of the army by General Thomas, who had been appointed to succeed Montgomery, he found it to consist of nearly two thousand men, of whom, one-half were disqualified for service. In the expectation that the British would be reinforced, as soon as the ice left the river, a council of war decided to remove the army higher up the St. Lawrence. While engaged in removing the sick, several ships entered the harbor, and a multitude of British troops were added to the force in the city. Governor Carleton soon marched out to attack the Americans, who continued to retreat; most of the sick and all of the stores fell into his hands. The former were treated with the humanity characteristic of the governor, and when recovered, were allowed to return to their homes. The Americans withdrew to the mouth of the Sorel, where General Thomas died of the small-pox, which still prevailed.

The Americans had established a military fort, called the

---

Americans withdraw from Canada.

---

1776 Cedars, on the St. Lawrence, about forty miles above Montreal. Being attacked by a large body of British and Indians, the place was surrendered after a short resistance, the commander having received intimation that if any of the Indians should be killed, they could not be restrained from the massacre of the garrison. A body of Americans, sent from Montreal to the assistance of the force at the Cedars, not being aware of its surrender, was met by a large party of Indians. A bloody conflict ensued, in which many of the Americans were killed, and the rest made prisoners.

The British sea and land forces had by this time been much increased, and it soon became evident that the Americans must abandon the province. An expedition to surprise the British in their head-quarters entirely failed. Arnold withdrew from Montreal and retired to Crown Point, at the head of Lake Champlain, with but little loss in the retreat. The forces stationed at the Sorel were pursued by Governor Carleton as far as St. Johns, but the retreating army continued their march to Crown Point.

Thus ended the invasion of Canada. For nine months had the American army been in the province. During this period many lives had been sacrificed, and much suffering endured, that never can be estimated; and enemies made of the Canadians, instead of friends. In the course of the autumn, General Carleton succeeded in once more gaining possession of Crown Point, which again gave him the command of Lake Champlain.

## CHAPTER XXI.

### CONTINUATION OF THE REVOLUTIONARY WAR. DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

---

Independence advocated.

---

CONGRESS had not given up all hopes of reconciliation with England, when early in this year, information was received from the agent who had presented the last petition to the king, that no answer might be expected, and that additional preparations were making to subdue the colonists. All anticipations of this kind were crushed by such intelligence, and it became evident that the struggle must terminate in the entire independence of the colonies, or in their complete subjugation to the British crown. 1776

A law was soon after passed by Parliament, prohibiting all commerce with the colonies, and authorizing the capture of all vessels engaged in trade on the American coast, whether American or otherwise. Treaties had also been made with the Landgrave of Hesse Cassel and other German princes, hiring of them seventeen thousand men, to be employed in the British service in America. This act gave peculiar offence to the colonists, and strengthened their determination to resist.

Independence became now more generally advocated. The most able writers demonstrated the necessity of such a step, and urged the establishment of colonial governments. The subject was fully discussed in the different provinces, and the members of Congress received instructions from their constituents. In Fifth month, (May,) they recommended to

---

Charleston attacked.

---

1776 those provinces which had not yet adopted constitutions, to form such governments as would most conduce to the happiness and prosperity of the people.

In the mean time, additional preparations for the war were in progress. Besides the Hessians or soldiers from Hesse Cassel, twenty-five thousand English troops were to be sent over. An official letter, announcing the proposed departure of the expedition, and that a part of it was designed to be sent against Charleston, South Carolina, was intercepted, which gave an opportunity to place the city in a state of defence. Regiments arrived from the neighboring provinces, and the militia of the country were called to the service. A strong fort was erected on Sullivan's Island, lying directly opposite the entrance to the harbor; valuable storehouses were pulled down, and lines of defence constructed along the water's edge. In addition to the regiment on Sullivan's Island, one was also stationed on James Island, forming increased protection to the channel leading to the city. During this preparation, lead for bullets was so scarce that the weights were taken from the windows, for a small supply. The chief command had been given to General Lee.

On the 28th of Sixth month, (June,) the British fleet began an attack against the fort on Sullivan's Island; and at the same time a detachment of troops, having effected a landing on an adjoining island, were directed to attack the fort on the other side, but were unable to ford the channel.

The firing between the fort and the vessels was continued during the whole day; the troops in the city looking on with the most intense interest, not knowing when they might be called to action. Many of the ships suffered severely, and the destruction of those on board was great. The loss of the British in killed and wounded amounted to nearly two hun-

---

Declaration of Independence.

---

dred. In the night the vessels engaged in the action withdrew, and a few days afterward, the whole fleet set sail for New York, the place of rendezvous of the British forces in the country. 1776

In Sixth month, (June,) the subject of the independence of the American colonies was taken into serious consideration by Congress. It had been discussed in the various provinces, and the measure had met with some opposition. A resolution was now introduced declaring the colonies free and independent. This led to a most animated and eloquent debate, but the subject was deferred, the representatives from Pennsylvania and Maryland having been instructed to oppose it, and some of the members having received no instructions on this important step. After a short delay, all the colonies coincided with the measure, excepting Pennsylvania and Delaware.

The sub-committee appointed by Congress to prepare a declaration of independence, were John Adams, of Massachusetts, and Thomas Jefferson, of Virginia. The original draft was drawn up by the latter, adopted by the committee, and after several amendments it received the approbation of Congress, and the members severally affixed their signatures. On the 4th of Seventh month, (July,) 1776, it was proclaimed to the people from the state house in Philadelphia, and was received with demonstrations of joy. It was immediately forwarded to the different provinces, and was every where received with acclamations.

This important state paper commences as follows :

“ When, in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume among the powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the laws

---

Declaration of Independence.

---

1776 of nature and of nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind, requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation. We hold these truths to be self-evident:—that all men are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable rights; that among these are life, liberty and the pursuit of happiness; that to secure these rights, governments are instituted among men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed; that whenever any form of government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the right of the people to alter or to abolish it, and to institute a new government, laying its foundation on such principles, and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their safety and happiness. Prudence indeed will dictate that governments long established, should not be changed for light and transient causes; and accordingly all experience hath shown, that mankind are more disposed to suffer, while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But, when a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same object, evinces a design to reduce them under absolute despotism, it is their right, it is their duty, to throw off such government, and to provide new guards for their future security. Such has been the patient suffering of these colonies; and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former systems of government. The history of the present king of Great Britain is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations, all having in direct object, the establishment of an absolute tyranny over these States. To prove this, let facts be submitted to a candid world."

The document then proceeds to enumerate the various grievances to which the people of this country had been sub-

---

Declaration of Independence.

---

jected, making a list of twenty-seven ; alludes to the various petitions for redress, which had been presented, and concludes with the following language :

“ We, therefore, the Representatives of the United States of America, in General Congress assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the world for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the name, and by the authority of the good people of these colonies, solemnly publish and declare, That these United Colonies are, and of right ought to be, *Free and Independent States* ; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all political connection between them and the state of Great Britain, is, and ought to be, totally dissolved ; and that as free and independent States, they have full power to levy war, conclude peace, contract alliances, establish commerce and to do all other acts and things which independent States may of right do. And for the support of this declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of Divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other our lives, our fortunes and our sacred honor.”

## CHAPTER XXII.

### CONTINUATION OF THE WAR.

---

#### Movements around New York.

---

1776     ONE object of the British force in America, remained still unattempted, — the possession of New York ; and that was now the place of rendezvous. Washington had early anticipated that the strength of the British would be directed in this quarter, as the advantages of its position would render its acquisition of great importance. During the spring and summer, therefore, he was endeavoring to increase the means of its defence ; additional fortifications were raised, and every preparation was made to resist an attack. The men under his command amounted to fourteen thousand ; but many of these were illy supplied with implements of war. As the point of attack could not be known, a part of the force was stationed at Brooklyn, small detachments were posted at various other places, and the remainder in the city.

Early in Seventh month, (July,) Admiral Howe and his brother, General Howe, to whom had been given the command of the British, arrived in the harbor of New York, accompanied by a powerful naval force, and by an army of twenty-four thousand men. The troops landed without opposition on Staten Island.

Previously to commencing operations, Admiral Howe sent a letter to the city, addressed to “ George Washington, Esq.,” which he refused to receive, as not being directed with the title of the situation which he held. Another letter was subsequently forwarded, addressed to “ George Washington,

---

Battle of Long Island.

---

etc., etc., etc.” This also was refused. A conference, 1776 however, ensued, in which the British general, who was the bearer of the communication, informed Washington, that Lord Howe \* was entrusted with full power to receive the submission of the colonists. But as this appeared to consist only in the power to grant pardons, it was asserted that no forgiveness was required, where no crime had been committed, and both parties prepared for a resort to arms.

Although the Declaration of Independence had given fresh courage to the American troops, yet so many were the disadvantages under which they labored, that it required the greatest exertions of their commander to keep up their hopes ; the commerce of the country having been entirely stopped, and there being no existing revenue, all the difficulties could not be surmounted. Rewards were promised to those who should distinguish themselves by acts of bravery, and severe punishment was threatened to any who should desert.”

The British resolved first to dispossess the Americans of Long Island. Accordingly on the 22d of Eighth month (Aug.,) the army landed on the south shore of the Island, distant about four miles from the provincials near Brooklyn. A column of British troops and one of Hessians advanced from different directions. These were but feints to divert the attention of the Americans from an attack to be made in another quarter, by the main body of the army.

Thus surrounded, a furious battle ensued ; but defeat was inevitable. Very many of the provincials were killed or wounded, and many made prisoners ; while others forced their way through the British soldiers back to the camp at Brooklyn. While the destructive battle was going forward,

---

\* Admiral Howe.

---

Discouragement of the soldiers

---

1776 General Washington crossed from New York, and beheld with deep anxiety and distress the destruction of his troops. The American loss, in killed, wounded and missing, has been variously estimated, from eleven hundred to thirty-three hundred ; while that of the British was less than four hundred. A retreat was now ordered, and was conducted with great silence and despatch, on the night of the 28th. The British, although within a few hundred yards, knew nothing of the movements of the American army, until the troops, nine thousand in number, with their artillery, tents and luggage, had been conveyed across the river.

Hitherto the American army had been so successful, excepting in Canada, that the soldiers, having fully calculated on victory, were now proportionably disappointed ; and so disheartened were they, that they began to desert in great numbers. Unaccustomed to subordination, the restraints imposed on them were irksome ; and giving themselves up for lost, they wished to return to their families, and avoid the dangers to which they would be exposed during the remainder of their term of enlistment. Washington and the other leaders were very earnest in their endeavors to rouse them from this state of despair, and succeeded in persuading many to return ; but it became evident that additional inducements should be held out to the army. Accordingly Washington wrote freely to Congress, explaining the difficulties of his situation, and finally induced them to offer a bounty of twenty dollars to all who would enlist during the war, with the promise of a grant of one hundred acres of land to every soldier, and more to the officers in proportion to their rank.

Previously to engaging again in active hostilities, proposals for accommodation were once more made by Admiral Howe, and a conference took place. It availed nothing, as the

---

Americans retreat from New York.Battle of White Plains.

---

deputies were not acknowledged as the commissioners of 1776 a free people, and on no other condition would they treat with the Admiral. It however afforded Washington a little time to revive the drooping spirits of his soldiers.

The object of the British general was, to bring the Americans to a decided action, and terminate the war, if possible, by a single blow ; but Washington, knowing full well what would be the consequences of such a step, determined to avoid a general engagement, and to harass the English by continual skirmishes, in which the personal bravery of his troops might be more than equivalent to the regular discipline of the British army. He hoped also to cut off their supplies and weary their patience. Accordingly, the army was divided between New York, Harlem and King's Bridge. The royalists now landed on the New York side of the river, and marching to the city, the Americans were obliged to retreat to King's Bridge, leaving many of their military stores in the hands of their opponents.

Washington's plan in part succeeded. The Americans gained some advantages, which had the effect of reanimating the troops. They were, however, soon obliged to leave New York Island altogether, and retreat still farther into the country, leaving detachments for the defence of Forts Washington and Lee, in order to retain the command of the Hudson river. Nearly three thousand men were assigned to the former place. About this time, almost one-fourth part of New York was consumed by fire.

The American commander, by frequent changes of position, continued to baffle the designs of the British general, in bringing about a general engagement. A severe battle, however, took place, at White Plains, between a part of the forces, in which several hundreds fell, the loss being nearly equal on both sides.

---

Discouraging state of affairs.Retreat through New Jersey.

---

1776 Howe now determined to relinquish the pursuit of the American army, and turn his attention to the reduction of Forts Washington and Lee, the former situated near King's Bridge, the latter nearly opposite, on the other side of the river. Combined and vigorous effort was at length successful in reducing Fort Washington. The ammunition was nearly exhausted, when a capitulation was made. The loss of the British was supposed to be about twelve hundred, and the reduction of the fort was a severe blow to the Americans.

Fort Lee soon afterward fell into the hands of the British, the garrison having previously effected their escape, and joined the army, which had commenced a retreat through New Jersey; and with this addition now consisted of only about three thousand men, who were but scantily armed, poorly clothed, and almost destitute of tents, blankets and cooking utensils.

Encouraged by success, Howe now resolved to pursue the Americans, and endeavor to break up the army which he knew to be much weakened by the loss of those soldiers who were entitled to a discharge. He offered pardon to all who would lay down their arms and take the oath of allegiance within sixty days. This induced many who were despairing of success, to join the British standard, and the retreating and suffering army became still weaker. In this depressing state of affairs, Washington called on the militia of New Jersey and Pennsylvania to join them, but they responded not, and withheld all aid from an army whose existence seemed nearly terminated.

Lord Cornwallis, at the head of six thousand well-disciplined, well-furnished troops, was so close behind Washington, that the rear of the American army, destroying bridges over which they had passed, was frequently within shot of the van

---

 Position of the British army.

 Commissioners sent to Europe.
 

---

of the British. Passing through Trenton, the Americans crossed to the western side of the Delaware; while General Howe, with twenty-seven thousand men, lay encamped in New Jersey. Considering the Americans as almost vanquished, he was intending to remain quiet during the severity of the winter, with the exception of taking possession of Philadelphia, when the Delaware should be frozen over, and lay encamped in New Jersey, without entertaining any apprehensions of an attack. He stationed fifteen hundred Hessians at Princeton, some hundreds at Bordentown and Mount Holly, while the remainder of his troops were spread over the country, from New Brunswick to the neighborhood of Philadelphia. 1776

As the British army approached the seat of government, Congress adjourned to Baltimore, where they increased the authority of Washington, giving him almost unlimited powers, in relation to the war, for six months, unless sooner determined by their own body. They also addressed the several colonies, endeavoring to excite their feelings in behalf of the cause in which the country had engaged, recommended a day of solemn fasting and humiliation, and resolved on sending commissioners to several of the courts in Europe, to endeavor to prevent more foreign troops being sent to America, and also to induce the king of France to aid the cause of liberty, by attacking the British possessions in Europe or the West Indies, promising him in return the right of fishing off Newfoundland.

During this year, many Americans who had been taken prisoners, were conveyed to New York and confined in British prison ships, where their sufferings were intense from the want of fire and suitable clothing, during the inclemency of a severe winter; as well as from scarcity of food and other causes. Large numbers of them died in captivity, rather

---

Battle of Trenton.

---

1776 than accept the offers of pardon which were made them, if they would join the royal party. Washington remonstrated against this inhuman treatment, and after his victories in New Jersey, an exchange was agreed on. Some who were living when the vessels arrived, which had been sent to convey them away, were reduced to such an extent, that they expired in the streets, on attempting to leave their place of confinement. The sufferings of these poor creatures were doubtless increased by inexcusable neglect of the British authorities; yet they were, in great measure, but a natural consequence of the circumstances. The party feeling and excitement of war but too often preclude attention to prisoners, and the relation of their history would make a sad addition to the horrors of such times.

While the affairs of the American army were in this depressed and discouraging condition, the British took possession of Rhode Island, almost without resistance. But Washington, not disheartened, obtained information of the position of the British army, and on learning its scattered situation, immediately planned an attack on the Hessians at Trenton. Three divisions were to cross the Delaware at different points, at Bristol, Trenton and nine miles further up the river. The two former were prevented by the ice from effecting a landing; the latter, commanded by Washington in person, accomplished the object in view with great difficulty, and commenced a march toward Trenton at about four in the morning of Twelfth month, (Dec.,) 25th, in two divisions, by different roads. After four hours' exposure, during a fall of snow, the weather intensely cold, both parties reached the Hessians within a few minutes of each other, and commenced a vigorous attack. Not the slightest suspicion of the approach of the Americans had been awakened. The commander imme-

---

Movements of the armies.

---

diately prepared for defence, but soon received a mortal wound. The Hessians were obliged to surrender; one thousand were taken prisoners, but few of them were killed. The next day, Washington recrossed the Delaware, with his prisoners and their artillery, having lost but four of his men, two of whom had been frozen to death. Four or five men were also wounded. 1776

This successful enterprise of the Americans excited the astonishment of the British. They had considered resistance as almost over, and Lord Cornwallis having left the command of the army to subordinate officers, was in New York, about sailing for England with the information of the probable conclusion of the war. He now immediately returned to New Jersey to commence active operations, although in mid-winter.

The hopes of the Americans revived, and considerable numbers of the militia again joined Washington. In New Jersey, a spirit of revenge had been excited by the rapacious and oppressive conduct of the British soldiers, and without joining the army, the inhabitants formed themselves into bands, ever on the watch for an opportunity to surprise a foraging party of the enemy. In this way the British were often obliged to retreat, sometimes carrying with them their dead as well as wounded, that their opponents might not know their loss.

At the head of five thousand men, Washington again crossed the Delaware, on the first day of the new year, and marched to Trenton, where Cornwallis determined to attack him, and pressed forward with great expedition. Washington immediately stationed his men on some high ground, beyond a small creek which the British were unable to cross, and both parties kept up a firing until dark. The American commander now determined, instead of waiting for an attack the 1777

---

Washington at Morristown.

---

1777 next morning, to make a circuitious march to Princeton, and surprise the British there. He ordered the fires to be kept burning till daylight, placed guards at the fords, and sentinels at advanced posts, and then commenced his march. On the road, he met and overcame a detachment who were hastening to join Cornwallis. At Princeton, one regiment of British had been left; three hundred of these were taken prisoners, the rest escaped.

Meanwhile, Cornwallis, perceiving what had occurred, started in pursuit, and came up with the rear of the Americans on the Morristown road. Some firing ensued, but the progress of the British was intercepted by the breaking down of a bridge at Kingston. Washington now fixed his headquarters at Morristown, New Jersey, and the British hastily retreated to New Brunswick, both parties being worn, and weary of suffering and hardship.

Washington, however, wished to pursue the advantages he had gained. From Morristown his troops made expeditions in different parts of the State, and by a series of movements annoying to the English, they were deprived of all their conquests excepting Amboy and New Brunswick. Their advanced posts were frequently cut off, and by a desultory mode of warfare, the British found their numbers continually decreasing. The sufferings of the Americans from the want of sufficient clothing were great; many of them were without shoes, and in marching stained the frozen ground with their blood. It has been thought that if Cornwallis had been aware of the small number under Washington's command, nothing would have prevented him from attacking the army and dispersing it; and it is said, that while at Morristown, so feeble was the condition of Washington's men, that sometimes he could not muster more than three or four hundred, although his whole force amounted to fifteen hundred.

---

Destruction of stores.

---

Early in the spring, while the British army remained at New Brunswick, two excursions were made for the destruction of American stores. Washington had given orders that these should not be allowed to accumulate in places accessible to the enemy's shipping. Notwithstanding such directions, a considerable quantity had been deposited at Peekskill, and was now attacked by the British, who had been conveyed up the river in armed vessels. The Americans hearing of their approach, set fire to the buildings and retreated. 1777

A large quantity of provisions was also destroyed at Danbury, in Connecticut. On the return of the forces employed in this object, they were attacked by a company of American troops, and lost four hundred men, killed, wounded and prisoners. The stores destroyed in these expeditions, were a serious loss to the Americans during the ensuing season.

Meanwhile, the British at New Brunswick were not quiet. A regiment of five hundred Americans was stationed within seven miles. These, Cornwallis determined to attack, and although they were watching against surprises, the British advanced undiscovered. The Americans were soon nearly surrounded, and the commander found that he must either submit to a capture or make his escape between two columns of his opponents. Choosing to attempt the latter, they succeeded, with the loss of sixty, killed, wounded and prisoners.

These acts of the British produced a spirit of retaliation in the Americans. Having learned that a large supply of stores had been collected by the British at Sagg Harbor, on Long Island, a party was sent for their destruction, who succeeded in burning the stores, with twelve vessels. Six lives were destroyed, and ninety men taken prisoners, without the loss of any of the Americans.

---

Gen. Howe sails for the South.

---

1777 In a predatory excursion of the provincial militia, General Prescott, stationed on Rhode Island, was seized while in bed, and taken prisoner. This led to the exchange of General Lee, an officer much regretted by the Americans, who had been taken prisoner the previous year, and whom General Howe had hitherto refused to exchange.

The season was quite advanced before the British army made any decided movement. Having received a supply of tents and other conveniences, as well as additional troops, on the 13th of Sixth month, (June,) General Howe passed into New Jersey with thirty thousand men. Washington had also been reinforced by recruits from various quarters, some of whom were supplied with arms from France, which had been privately obtained. His army, however, did not number quite eight thousand men, and having left Morristown, he advanced to a good position at Middlebrook, about nine miles from New Brunswick. Howe now endeavored in various ways to draw Washington from this situation, and engage him in a general battle. For this purpose he advanced toward the Delaware; but not succeeding, the army returned, committing great destruction in its course. Farm houses were burned, public buildings ruined or defaced, not excepting places of worship, while the inhabitants were unkindly or cruelly treated.

Although detachments of the armies had met, and some loss had been sustained on both sides, yet being unable to bring about a general engagement, Howe finally crossed to Staten Island, and embarking sixteen thousand troops, sailed for the south on the 25th of Seventh month (July.) The remainder of the army was left for the defence of New York under General Clinton.

As yet, no terms of agreement existed between the several

---

Articles of Confederation.

---

colonies. Having now formed some bond of union by the Declaration of Independence, it became necessary that further steps should be taken. Accordingly, a committee was appointed to bring forward the form of a confederation. They reported a plan, which was considered, referred to a committee, and after full and free discussion, was finally adopted in the autumn of 1777, and approved by the several State legislatures. 1777

The thirteen colonies were thus formed into a confederacy, with the title of "The United States of America," and by the articles of confederation were bound to each other for the security of their liberties, and for mutual defence in all attacks on account of their religion, trade or any other pretence. Each State was to retain its sovereignty and every right not expressly surrendered to the United States. The powers of Congress were defined by the Articles of Confederation, as well as the rights of the several States ; and these articles remained in force until the adoption of the Constitution in 1788.

The only means which Congress at this time possessed of defraying the expenses of the war, was by the emission of bills of credit to be redeemed at a subsequent period. These soon became greatly depreciated in consequence of a want of confidence in the government. Much distress ensued, and many families were involved in ruin. An attempt to sustain the value by altering the price of commodities, proved of no avail, and introduced much confusion.

It was not long before Congress agreed on a national flag. Thirteen stripes were to represent the thirteen States, and the same number of white stars, surrounded by blue, a new constellation. They also made known their determination to listen to no terms of peace, which required the sacrifice of the independence of the country.

---

General La Fayette.

---

1777 The commissioners who had been sent to the court of France, were instructed to solicit a loan of money, a supply of munitions of war and an acknowledgment of the independence of the United States. They were well received at Paris. Dr. Franklin, one of the commissioners, was already known as a philosopher and statesman, and the cause of liberty met with much sympathy in France. Yet an acknowledgment of independence could not at this time be obtained, nor any open support of the cause. The ministry, however, permitted arms, privately taken from the public arsenals, to be conveyed to the United States, and connived at the sale in their West India Islands, and in the ports of France, of prizes taken by American privateers.

Sympathy for our countrymen in the struggle for liberty in which they were engaged, had taken such deep hold of the mind of the Marquis de La Fayette, one of the first noblemen in France, then only nineteen years of age, that he resolved to devote his energies to the cause of freedom in America, and communicated his design to the commissioners. Not deterred by the unfavorable accounts of the campaign of 1776, which so destroyed the credit of the commissioners that they were unable to procure a vessel for his passage, he prosecuted his design, purchased and fitted out one for himself, and arrived in Charleston in the spring of 1777.

By the laws of France, La Fayette, in so doing, hazarded his large fortune. His sovereign had forbidden his proceeding, and despatched vessels to the West Indies, with orders to arrest and detain him, if found there. He, however, avoided those islands, and reaching America safely, was warmly received and appointed major general in the army. The example of La Fayette was afterward followed by many other French officers.

---

Battle of the Brandywine.

---

It has already been stated, that General Howe, being foiled in his attempts to bring Washington to a fixed battle, embarked his troops, on the 5th of Seventh month, (July.) Leaving Staten Island, they sailed south, their point of destination being carefully concealed. It soon became evident, however, that General Howe was planning an attack on Philadelphia. Having ascertained, on arriving off the capes of the Delaware, that the Americans had obstructed the navigation of that river, he proceeded further south, entered the Chesapeake and landed his troops at the head of Elk river, fifty miles southwest of Philadelphia. 1777

Washington, desirous of preventing the approach of the British to Philadelphia, immediately marched toward that city. The people, impatient of delay, demanded that a general engagement should be hazarded for the defence of the place. Yielding to their wishes, Washington took a position on Brandywine creek, Ninth month, (Sept.) 11th. His men numbered eleven thousand. The British army, consisting of sixteen thousand men, advanced and commenced an attack on one division of the Americans, which was soon broken, and fled in confusion. A reserve corps arrested the progress of the British, who had commenced a pursuit. The battle was renewed. It was severe, and continued throughout the day, until the Americans could not be rallied, when a retreat became general. At Chester, they halted for the night, and then proceeded to Philadelphia, many of the men marching without shoes, and sleeping on the ground without blankets. The exhaustion of the British troops prevented their pursuing the defeated army.

Three hundred Americans were killed in the disastrous engagement of the Brandywine, besides six hundred wounded or taken prisoners. The loss of the British was about half

---

The British enter Philadelphia.

---

[1777 as great. General La Fayette first served in this battle, as well as Count Pulaski, a native of Poland.

The situation of Washington's forces prevented him from long impeding the advance of the British. After spending two days in Philadelphia, collecting his scattered troops and replacing his stores, he marched up the Schuylkill, leaving the British in possession of the roads to the city.

Congress having resumed its sittings in Philadelphia, was again compelled to leave, and removed first to Lancaster, and afterward to York. The British army crossed the Schuylkill, north of the city, on the 23d of Ninth month, (Sept.) and encamped at Germantown; and on the 26th, Cornwallis took peaceable possession of Philadelphia.

The next object of the British was to remove the chevaux-de-frise and other obstructions to the navigation of the Delaware, which prevented their fleet from ascending the river. The force at Germantown being consequently weakened, Washington determined to surprise them, and having marched through the night, commenced an attack on the 4th of Tenth month, (Oct.) An advanced guard was obliged to retreat; but the British soon recovered from the effects of the surprise, and a thick fog concealing the position of the parties, occasioned mistakes. The Americans were finally obliged to retreat, and lost in the engagement two hundred men killed, besides three hundred wounded, and about four hundred made prisoners. The loss of the British, in killed and wounded was six hundred men.

Admiral Howe, having received information of the result of the battle of the Brandywine, had left the Chesapeake, and sailed for the Delaware. To open a free communication with the fleet was now the object of General Howe. A little below the place where the Schuylkill flows into the Delaware, three

---

Obtain possession of the Delaware.

---

rows of chevaux-de-frise had been sunk across the channel, 1777  
formed of large beams of timber with iron spikes. These  
were guarded by floating batteries and fortifications at Red  
Bank, on the New Jersey side of the river, and by Fort Mif-  
flin, on Mud Island.

An attempt made by two thousand Hessians to reduce the  
fort at Red Bank was ineffectual. They were repulsed with  
great loss, and two of the ships which joined in the attack  
were grounded. The Americans, perceiving the situation of  
these vessels, fired on them, and also sent fire ships against  
them. One of them caught fire, and the flames spread so  
rapidly, that it was with great difficulty that any of the crew  
could escape; two of the officers and some of the men  
perished. The crew of the other vessel set fire to it and  
abandoned it.

Preparations were still going forward for the reduction of  
Fort Mifflin. Batteries were erected on the Pennsylvania  
side of the river opposite Mud Island. Much time was con-  
sumed in their construction, as well as in transporting the artil-  
lery over the swampy ground. The garrison also at the fort  
had exerted themselves to retard the operations of the British;  
but, the works being completed, a terrible cannonade was  
commenced, which was returned by the Americans from the  
fort, the floating batteries and the works on the New Jersey  
side of the river. In the course of the day, the walls of the  
fort were mostly destroyed; the garrison escaped during the  
night to Red Bank, which two days afterward was also  
evacuated.

The American shipping in the river was now left entirely  
unprotected. Some of it, by keeping on the east side, passed  
the batteries at Philadelphia, during the night, and escaped  
up the stream; the rest was set on fire and abandoned. A

---

Washington at Valley Forge.General Burgoyne.

---

1777 free communication between the British sea and land forces was thus obtained, but a great part of the season had been consumed, many lives lost, and a vast amount of property destroyed. Soon afterward both parties retired to winter quarters; General Howe to Philadelphia, and Washington to Valley Forge, about twenty-six miles distant, where the army endeavored to shield themselves from the weather, though poorly clothed and to a great extent destitute of tents or blankets.

During the occurrence of these proceedings in the middle section of the country, a plan was formed by the British ministry, for penetrating the United States from the north. They were very anxious to possess themselves of the country extending from Canada to the city of New York. This would cut off the direct communication between New England and the Southern States, and by dividing the provincial forces would render their subjugation more easy. The co-operation of several Indian tribes was secured, seven thousand well-disciplined, well-furnished troops were allotted to the service, and the command was given to General Burgoyne. This powerful army marching from Montreal was to penetrate the State of New York and advance toward the Hudson.

On the 2d of Seventh month, (July,) the British army encamped near Ticonderoga. To that strong fortress the Americans had retreated after the invasion of Canada, and General St. Clair was now stationed there with about six thousand men. Being entirely unable to compete with so powerful an army, and wishing to avoid surrendering his men prisoners of war, he retreated toward Lake George with great rapidity. A considerable part of the stores was sent up the stream, which connects the two lakes. These vessels were attacked by the English, and either wholly or partially destroyed, and

---

Americans retreat.They are reinforced.

---

the provisions and military stores lost. A body of provincials, 1777 forming the rear of the army, who had halted on account of fatigue, was defeated by German soldiers under charge of General Reidesel. In the engagement, four hundred Americans were either killed or made prisoners, and about five hundred wounded; upwards of one hundred and seventy of the British also were either killed or wounded. At length the American army, by various routes, worn and exhausted, having suffered from the inclemency of the weather and want of provisions, reached Fort Edward on the Hudson, where General Schuyler had established his head-quarters.

The united forces of Generals Schuyler and St. Clair were about four thousand four hundred men. With these they could not meet the British army; their energies, therefore, were directed toward impeding the advance of General Burgoyne. Detachments of the men were ordered to obstruct the navigation of Wood creek, a small stream which runs into Lake Champlain at its head, to destroy bridges, and to fell trees so as to fall across the roads, particularly at places where another course could not be taken. All the horses and cattle which might be brought into requisition by the royalists were ordered out of the way, and the ammunition and stores were removed from Fort George.

Exertions were also made by General Schuyler to strengthen his own army. Reinforcements of troops were solicited, and Washington sent them to his aid. General Lincoln was appointed to raise and command the militia of New England; and tents, military stores and provisions were supplied.

General Burgoyne had been obliged to halt, to give some rest to his troops, who were exhausted from the fatigues of the march, as well as to re-organize his army, which had been

---

The British encamp near Saratoga.

---

1777 thrown into some disorder, and to make the necessary preparations for advancing toward Albany. On proceeding up Wood creek, much time and labor were employed in removing the impediments placed in the channel by the Americans. The roads were afterward to be cleared, and bridges constructed. All obstacles being overcome, the army reached Fort Edward, which had been evacuated by the Americans a short time previously; General Schuyler having retreated to Saratoga.

At Fort Edward, Burgoyne was again obliged to halt. The army had been disappointed of receiving horses which had been ordered from Canada, and General Schuyler having removed all that could be brought into use by the British, they were in great difficulty to know how to transport the provisions and military stores from Fort George. Although that place was only a few miles distant, yet the roads had been so much injured by recent heavy rains, that notwithstanding the utmost exertions of General Burgoyne, at the expiration of two weeks, the army had only transported provisions for four days in advance, and conveyed twelve boats into the Hudson.

The difficulty of procuring supplies from this quarter induced General Burgoyne to conceive the design of surprising Bennington, where a large quantity of provisions, as well as carriages, had been deposited. With this view, he moved down the east side of the Hudson and encamped nearly opposite Saratoga, which place General Schuyler had left a short time previously, and retreated to the mouth of the Mohawk.

Burgoyne now despatched Colonel Baum, with five hundred Hessian soldiers and one hundred Indians, to attack Bennington. General Stark, with four hundred of the New

---

Defeated at Bennington.

---

Hampshire militia, was at that time in the immediate vicinity, 1777 on his way to join General Schuyler. Hearing of the approach of the hostile party, he called on the militia of the neighborhood to join him, and prepare for battle. Baum, learning that their numbers were superior to his own, had halted in an advantageous situation, and sent back for reinforcements.

Several skirmishes between smaller detachments having occurred, in which the militia were successful, a council of war was held, and an attack on the whole force sent against the place, determined. On the 16th of Eighth month, (Aug.) a furious battle occurred, which lasted nearly two hours. The British commander was mortally wounded ; a few of his troops escaped into the woods, the remainder were either killed or taken prisoners.

After the action terminated, the militia had dispersed in search of spoil ; when a reinforcement arrived, which had been sent to Baum. They immediately commenced an attack on the scattered militia. Just at that time, however, a continental regiment arrived, and by their assistance the British were obliged to retreat.

The victory at Bennington once more encouraged the Americans to renewed activity and zeal. They now hoped to frustrate Burgoyne's plans, and prevent his joining General Clinton at New York.

About this time, also, information was received that the British forces had been unsuccessful in an attempt to take Fort Schuyler, situated near the source of the Mohawk. Before reaching Crown Point, Burgoyne had sent a detachment of about eight hundred regular troops, and nearly as many Indians, under Colonel St. Leger, to make an attack on this fort, and afterward join him on his march to Albany.

---

Siege of Fort Schuyler.

---

1777 The party reached Fort Schuyler on the 2d of Eighth month, (Aug.) and on the refusal of the garrison to surrender, commenced a siege of the place.

On the approach of the British, General Herkimer assembled about seven hundred of the militia of the neighborhood, intending to advance to the relief of the garrison. St. Leger, having been informed of this intention, laid an ambuscade of regulars and Indians, who sent a heavy discharge of musketry on the astonished militia. The Indians immediately sounded the war-whoop, and commenced an attack with their tomahawks. In the confusion which followed, the royal troops and militia became closely crowded together, and being prevented from destroying one another in the usual way, many on both sides fell, pierced by the daggers of their opponents. General Herkimer and about four hundred of his men were killed. About the same time Colonel Willet, with two hundred men, made a sortie, killed a number of the British, destroyed their provisions, and carrying off some spoil, returned to the fort.

Gansevoort, the commander, having succeeded in sending information of the situation of the garrison to General Schuyler, he immediately despatched Arnold with a body of troops to their assistance. The numbers of the British and their allies being superior to those of Arnold, he had recourse to stratagem, and offered to a person who had been arrested as a spy, that he should be liberated, and his estates restored to him, if he would faithfully execute a mission to alarm the British camp, especially the Indians, by representing the force which was proceeding against them as very large. He undertook the execution of the design, and the plan succeeded. The Indians became alarmed, many of them sought safety in flight, the rest threatened to follow if the siege were continued.

---

Jane McCrea.

---

All the exertions and promises of St. Leger were not sufficient to make them desist from their purpose ; he therefore broke up his encampment in great haste, leaving his tents, cannon and stores, which fell into the hands of the Americans. Two days afterward Arnold reached the fort ; but finding the besiegers had left, he returned to General Schuyler. 1777

At this period of the campaign, General Schuyler was superseded in the command of the northern army, by General Gates, who arrived on the 19th of Eighth month, (Aug.)

The savage allies of the British could not always be kept under control. When Burgoyne with his army entered the United States, he had charged the Indians to commit no cruelties on those who made no resistance ; and for a while they attended to this injunction. But in the excitement of battle, their old habits of massacre and plunder sometimes gained the ascendancy, and several persons fell victims to their brutality whose lives would otherwise have been preserved. The resentment of the Americans which was thus roused, probably more than counterbalanced any advantages which the British army may have gained by the assistance of their Indian allies.

One circumstance particularly excited their indignation. An American loyalist, or Tory, an officer in Burgoyne's army, was engaged to be married to Jane McCrea, the daughter of an American clergyman, also a Tory. Fearing she might be subjected to some danger, the officer sent two Indian chiefs of different tribes, attached to Burgoyne's army, to the late residence of her deceased father, not many miles distant, promising a keg of rum to him who should deliver her safe to him. The young lady dressed herself in her bridal attire, and accompanied the Indians. On the way,

---

The British encamp at Saratoga.

---

1777 they disputed which of them should deliver her to the officer, and receive the promised reward. A struggle for the possession of the prize followed, in which, while one drew the trembling and affrighted girl to him, now imploring his protection, the other buried his tomahawk in her brain. The scalp was then taken off and carried to the officer, in her stead, whose arrival he was anxiously anticipating.

Burgoyne, on receiving the intelligence, demanded the murderer, and threatened him with death; he was, however, afterward pardoned. Intense feeling was excited among the Americans, and indignation against those who could employ such savage allies. But it is not the Indians alone, who commit acts of great atrocity; war uncivilizes and unchristianizes man. What but murder would be the slaying of hundreds on the field of battle, if divested of the false halo of military glory!

Burgoyne did not yet despair of joining the British at New York, although surrounded with difficulties. The attack on Bennington having failed, he was again obliged to have recourse to Fort George for provisions. By great and persevering exertions, a supply for thirty days was transported; and having constructed a bridge of boats over the Hudson, in place of the rafts which had been carried away by a freshet, on the 13th and 14th of Ninth month, (Sept.) the whole army crossed the river, and on the 17th encamped on the heights and plain of Saratoga, within four miles of the American army.

General Gates had been considerably reinforced, and leaving the position occupied by Schuyler at the confluence of the Hudson and Mohawk, he had advanced sixteen miles up the river to Stillwater.

Burgoyne's situation was now becoming more and more

Battle of Stillwater.

Critical situation of Burgoyne.

critical. He feared the communication with Fort George 1777 would be cut off, and resolved on a battle, as a victory would place it in his power to advance or return. About noon on the 19th, an action commenced between certain portions of the armies, which were respectively reinforced, until the engagement became general. Both parties fought with determined resolution, and were alternately driven back. Men and officers were continually falling around them, until night put an end to the battle. The Americans retired to their camp; the British lay all night on their arms near the field. Three hundred and nineteen of the Americans were killed or wounded, and upwards of five hundred of the British.

Each party claimed the victory, but Burgoyne did not obtain the advantages he had anticipated. His progress was arrested, his communication with the lakes cut off, and he was consequently unable to obtain provisions. His men were on half allowance, and his horses were dying in great numbers. The Indians being restrained by Burgoyne from scalping and plundering the unarmed, withdrew from the British service. Many Tories and Canadians also forsook the standard. The strength of the Americans, on the other hand, was increasing by the arrival of recruits, and the resources of the country were open before them.

The day after the engagement at Stillwater, intelligence was received which still further encouraged the Americans, and had a proportionably disheartening effect on the army of Burgoyne. General Lincoln, who had been sent to collect the militia of New England, had assembled two thousand, and resolved, before joining General Gates, to make an attempt to gain possession of some of the posts in the rear of the royal army. Accordingly, he sent three parties of five

---

Second battle of Stillwater.

---

1777 hundred men each, who succeeded in taking all the stations excepting Ticonderoga and Mount Independence, and liberating one hundred American prisoners. Three hundred English prisoners were taken. Near the end of the month, General Lincoln joined the American army.

In this situation Burgoyne made urgent applications to General Clinton at New York for aid, and informed him that in the expectation of receiving assistance, he would maintain his present position until the 12th of Oct. Having waited until the 7th without receiving any communication from Clinton, he determined to make another attack on the Americans. On that day another furious and bloody battle took place at Stillwater, commenced by an attack from one detachment of the British; but the whole of both armies soon became engaged, and the action continued until nearly night, when the British gave way. A large part of their artillery and ammunition had been taken, and nearly two hundred men made prisoners. General Wilkinson, in describing this battle, states that after performing some service assigned him, he regained the ground from which the first detachment of the British had just retreated, leaving many men and several officers killed, wounded or captured, fifty-two minutes after the first shot had been fired. "In the square space of twelve or fifteen yards lay eighteen grenadiers in the agonies of death, and three officers propped up against stumps of trees, two of them mortally wounded, bleeding and almost speechless." He continues, "With the troops I pursued the hard-pressed and flying enemy, passing over killed and wounded."

The Americans lay on their arms through the night, intending to renew the battle the next day. But Burgoyne, by a change of position, extricated himself from the imme-

---

Surrender of Burgoyne.

---

diating danger with which he was threatened, and made some attempts to induce Gates to attack him; but the American general, knowing the difficulties to which Burgoyne was reduced, instead of engaging in another battle, sent strong detachments to guard the fords up the river, in order to prevent his retreat. 1777

In the evening of the 8th, the British general withdrew his forces and set off for Saratoga, leaving behind him three hundred sick and wounded men, and several boats loaded with provisions and baggage. It was evening of the next day when they arrived, after a fatiguing march over bad roads and through constant rain. Preparations were next made for retreating to Fort Edward, but the passes were found to be all strongly guarded.

In this situation, a council of war was summoned. The British were now almost surrounded by the Americans, and their strength was much exhausted by incessant exertion. An account of provisions was taken, and a supply for three days only found to be on hand. By the advice of the council, a negotiation was opened with General Gates, and terms of capitulation were agreed on. The British troops were to surrender their arms; they were to be permitted to embark for England or Germany, and were not to serve again in the war unless exchanged. On the 17th, the whole army surrendered prisoners of war, having been reduced from nine thousand to less than six thousand men.

Burgoyne had strongly anticipated assistance from New York. General Clinton, however, felt that he could not take the necessary troops without endangering that place, and therefore waited for reinforcements from England. These arrived near the end of Ninth month, (Sept.) and assistance might have been rendered in season, but that

---

Its consequences.The effect in France.

---

1777 Clinton imagined that by diverting the attention of Gates, Burgoyne would be able to extricate himself from the difficulties by which he was surrounded, and if the British could obtain command of the Hudson river, Burgoyne might then join the forces in New York. The forts on the river were therefore attacked, and after obtaining possession of these, a considerable time was consumed in removing the obstructions which had been placed in the river. Before this could be accomplished Burgoyne surrendered. A detachment of the British received this information at Esopus, now Kingston. They immediately resolved to burn the town; not a house was left standing. Another village was also destroyed, and the party returned to New York.

In consequence of the capitulation at Saratoga, the British were prevented from retaining the forts on the lakes. They therefore left Ticonderoga, after destroying the works and throwing the artillery into the lake, and retired to Canada. The northern portion of the country was thus once more left in tranquillity, having experienced for several months the devastations of war.

Information of the success of the American arms was received with great joy over the country, raising the hopes of the friends of Congress, and adding to their numbers. In France, its influence was also felt. That nation, although friendly to the cause of American independence, had never openly lent any assistance. It was a serious thing to involve herself in a war with Great Britain by taking part with her rebellious subjects, who it was supposed would soon be subjugated. But affairs now wore a different aspect, and the resistance of the colonies seemed likely to be crowned with ultimate success. The American commissioners in Paris had continued to solicit the acknowledgment of the independence

---

Treaty with France.Commissioners from England.

---

of the country ; a proposed treaty had long been under consideration, and from time to time deferred. The commissioners were at length informed that it was decided to acknowledge the independence of the country, and to enter into a treaty of amity and commerce. In the treaty, which was subsequently fully ratified, it was stipulated that, if war should break out between France and England, during the existence of that with the United States, the two countries should make common cause, and that neither of the parties should conclude peace, or a truce, without the consent of the other. They also mutually engaged not to lay down their arms until the independence of the United States should be fully acknowledged by England.

The British Parliament was much occupied with discussions respecting the war. Various propositions were introduced ; and conciliatory measures were now adopted, granting to the colonies all that had been demanded previously to the commencement of hostilities. Several of the members advocated the recognition of American independence as the only means of avoiding a war with France. Fearful of the effect of the treaty with that country, commissioners were at once sent to America with copies of the plans of conciliation, before they had become laws. They were received by General Washington and the governors of some of the States, previously to their having any knowledge of the treaty with France ; but Congress concluded that the United States could not consistently treat with any commissioners from England, until the British fleets and armies had been withdrawn, or until the independence of the States had been expressly acknowledged. Bribery of some of the principal officers of the government was then tried, but without effect ;

---

Sufferings of the army at Valley Forge.

---

1778 and after threatening a war of extermination, the commissioners returned to Europe.

A few days after the decision of Congress, Silas Deane, one of the commissioners to France, arrived with the treaties which had been made with that country. Congress was not now in session, but immediately assembled, and on the 4th of Fifth month, (May,) 1778, the treaties were unanimously ratified. The joy and gratitude of the nation at this intelligence were great in the extreme; they now became more sanguine that their liberties would eventually be established, and felt in a measure reconciled to present hardships and calamities. Many royalists who had till this period taken part with Great Britain, now joined their countrymen.

It has already been mentioned that the British army had retired to Philadelphia for winter quarters, and that Washington had established himself at Valley Forge, about twenty-six miles from the city, where he was sufficiently near to annoy the British, and cut off their foraging parties, as well as to keep the posts near the city well guarded. Log huts, with the interstices filled with mud, erected for the occasion, formed comfortable habitations for troops that had been so much exposed to the inclemency of the weather. But they suffered extremely from the want of provisions and clothing. Their march from White Marsh to this place, with bare feet over rough and frozen roads, was marked with their blood. The winter was severe. The non-importation agreements had rendered clothing scarce at the commencement of the war; importation in any quantities was now precluded; and the home manufacture was not equal to the demand. The necessities of the army induced Congress to authorize the commander-in-chief to seize all provisions that could be found within seventy miles, either paying for them with money, or

---

Intrigues against Washington.

---

certificates, for the redemption of which the United States 1778 were pledged. Sufficient confidence was not felt in the government to keep up the value of the continental scrip, as these certificates were termed ; and they were fast depreciating.

It was with great reluctance that Washington availed himself of the liberty given him by Congress ; but the necessities of his men compelled him to it. He was illy provided with money, and could only pay for the provisions with scrip ; while the British were ready to give gold for articles furnished them. Many of the country people in the neighborhood were willing, under these circumstances, to convey their produce into the city ; but this was attended with much difficulty, and was often followed by detection and punishment. If the American patrols could intercept any party going into the city with provisions, they would seize them without offering payment of any kind.

Although the strict integrity and disinterested patriotism of Washington had won for him great respect and esteem, yet there were those whose private ambition, rather than the welfare of their country, led to jealous feelings ; and a plan was laid to remove him from the chief command of the army. It did not however succeed ; nor did the knowledge of these intrigues induce Washington to swerve from what he considered his duty. Regardless of them, he continued his applications to Congress for the completion of arrangements for the ensuing season. By his recommendation, Baron Steuben, an officer in the Prussian army, who arrived in the United States in the course of the winter, was appointed inspector-general of the army. A system of discipline was by his efforts introduced among the hitherto raw troops, which, it is said, contributed much to the success of the American arms.

## CHAPTER XXIII.

### CAMPAIGNS OF 1778 AND 1779.

---

General La Fayette at Barren Hill.

---

1778 THE British in Philadelphia passed the winter in gayety and ease, until, by the vigilance of the American patroles, they began to suffer for want of fresh provisions and for forage. Their first efforts this year, were to procure some supplies of this kind for the army, in which they were sometimes successful; destroying also in these excursions, merchandise and shipping.

Intelligence of the treaty with France had now arrived, and it was suspected that the British troops would evacuate Philadelphia. To annoy the rear of the army, in case they should take this step, as well as to form an advanced guard of the Americans, in Fifth month, (May,) General La Fayette was sent forward with upwards of two thousand chosen men, and took post on Barren Hill, east of the Schuylkill, seven or eight miles in front of the army at Valley Forge. Howe, having received information of this movement, sent General Grant with five thousand of his best troops, to surprise him and cut off his return. Some of the militia patroles, having deserted their posts, the design was very nearly effected; but, on the discovery being made, General La Fayette acted with so much promptitude and judgment, that he eluded the British, and returned to the camp without loss.

The French ambassador in London having by order of his

---

British evacuate Philadelphia.Battle of Monmouth.

---

government given information of the treaties formed with the United States, left the country; about the same time the British ambassador left Paris. This was considered equivalent to a declaration of war. Apprehending that a French fleet would be sent to block up the British ships in the Delaware, orders were given to evacuate Philadelphia and concentrate the British forces in New York. 1778

Accordingly on the 18th of Sixth month, (June,) the royal army crossed the Delaware into New Jersey, under the command of General Clinton; Howe having resigned his office, by permission of the king, and sailed for England. Washington immediately left his station and advanced in pursuit with the whole army, watching for an opportunity to give battle. General Lee, with five thousand men, was sent forward to commence an attack, unless there should be very strong reasons to prevent it. Perceiving the whole body returning to meet him, Lee retreated; but on the arrival of Washington, he was sent back, and a warm engagement ensued at Monmouth. Lee was compelled to retire. At this juncture, Washington came up and joined in the action until the British fell back. It was now almost night; the day had been warm, and the troops were exceedingly fatigued. Further operations were therefore suspended, and before morning, the British withdrew toward Sandy Hook.

In this battle, the Americans lost, in killed and wounded, nearly three hundred men; the British, after burying some of their dead in the night, left on the field nearly two hundred and fifty killed, and upwards of forty wounded, besides those who were able to be removed, and whom they had taken with them. The heat and extreme fatigues of the day had proved fatal to some on both sides, who expired without a wound.

---

Admiral D'Estaing at Newport.

---

1778 After the battle of Monmouth, the British proceeded to New York without further molestation. Washington marched to Westchester county in New York State, and took a position near his old camp at White Plains. Here he remained, watching the movements of the British till late in the autumn, when he removed to Middlebrook, New Jersey, for winter quarters.

Not ten days after the British fleet left the Delaware, Admiral Count D'Estaing, with twelve French ships of the line and three frigates, arrived at the bay. Being informed that the British had left, he sailed for New York. On sounding at the entrance of the harbor, he found that his largest ships could not enter. By the advice of Washington, he therefore sailed for Newport, to assist in the reduction of that place, which had been in possession of the British about eighteen months.

A combined attack by land and water was projected. General Sullivan, with about two thousand men, mostly militia, was stationed at Providence; and it was determined that he should cross to Rhode Island and move toward Newport. On the 9th of Eighth month, (Aug.,) Admiral Howe, with his fleet, appeared off the island, and D'Estaing immediately sailed out of the harbor to give him battle. An engagement was declined by Howe; both parties put to sea and were soon out of sight. Having spent two days in manœuvring, the fleets were separated by a violent storm, in which both of them were so much damaged, that the British returned to New York; and D'Estaing, having again arrived at Newport, announced his intention of going to Boston to refit. No arguments could induce him to remain; and on the 22d, he set sail.

Being deserted by the fleet, it was not thought prudent to

---

General Sullivan retreats.

---

remain on the island, as large reinforcements of British might easily be transported from New York. General Sullivan therefore commenced a retreat in the night of the 28th, and was immediately pursued by the British on their making the discovery next morning of the march of the Americans. On the north end of the island, the Americans halted. Here they were met by the British, and a severe conflict ensued, which lasted about half an hour, when both parties withdrew. Their loss had been nearly equal. On the 30th, the two armies cannonaded each other, but neither ventured to attack the other. The British were expecting reinforcements; and Sullivan, while deceiving them by an appearance of maintaining his post, was preparing to evacuate the island. In the night, the Americans succeeded in crossing the ferries and escaping to the continent, with all the artillery, baggage and stores. The next day, Clinton reached Newport with four thousand men; a force which would have entirely prevented the retreat of the Americans, had they arrived in season. They had been detained in the sound four days by adverse winds.

In tracing the movements of the main bodies of the opposing armies, it must not be supposed that the remainder of the people entirely escaped the devastating effects of war. The marauding parties were too numerous to mention, and private dwellings, mills and barns were often burned. If such steps would aid the cause in which a party was engaged, full latitude appeared to be given. Many lives were lost in skirmishes. Numbers of privateers and small government vessels were fitted out, which captured many British vessels engaged in commerce; while some were destroyed by the British ships.

In the spring of this year, the Randolph, an American

---

Destruction of the Randolph.Paul Jones.

---

1778 frigate, commanded by Captain Biddle, having on board three hundred and five men, sailed from Charleston on a cruise, accompanied by four other vessels. The Randolph soon fell in with the Yarmouth, a British frigate, and fired the first broadside. About twenty minutes after the action commenced, the Randolph blew up, and all on board perished excepting four men, who floated on a piece of the wreck, without any subsistence for four days but rain water, which they caught in a blanket. At the expiration of this period, they were rescued by the captain of the Yarmouth.

Paul Jones, captain of one of the privateers, sailed around the coasts of Scotland and Ireland. He seized several British vessels, and took two hundred prisoners.

Some parts of the country suffered much from incursions of the Indians, aided by Tories who had fled for safety to the back settlements. At the commencement of the war, many of the Indian tribes seemed friendly to the United States; but afterward the Americans became unable to provide them with those articles of British manufacture to which they had latterly been accustomed, while the British in Canada liberally furnished them, and prevailed on them to take up arms against the United States. The frontier consequently became much exposed to their attacks.

In the summer of this year, the beautiful district of Wyoming, situated on the east branch of the Susquehannah river, and containing nearly three thousand inhabitants, was made the scene of barbarities, from the contemplation of which, the mind recoils with horror. They strongly exhibit the cruelties of which men are capable, when the vindictive passions become excited and uncontrolled by the practice of war.

The inhabitants of Wyoming, feeling the danger attendant on their remote situation, had constructed four forts, which

---

Massacre in Wyoming.

---

were garrisoned with about four hundred and fifty men. In 1778 the course of this summer, a body of sixteen hundred men, a large proportion of whom were Tories, disguised as Indians, approached the settlement. They soon gained possession of one of the smaller forts. The garrison were enticed out of it for the purpose of holding a conference, and then fell into an ambuscade, from which only a small portion escaped.

The following day, one of the other forts was besieged. The commander wished to know what terms would be granted on surrendering. Learning that no mercy would be shown, the fort was defended until most of the men were either killed or wounded. It was then surrendered. Many of the inhabitants of the place had sought refuge in the fortress. A few of them were taken away as prisoners; the remainder were shut up in the fort, which was then fired, and men, women and children perished in the flames.

The other forts soon after fell into the hands of the furious assailants, and all show of resistance ceased. The whole district was laid waste; buildings were burned with the occupants in them, and the work of destruction did not cease until regular troops were advancing to the spot. But very few of the inhabitants of the district escaped to the other settlements.

In the latter part of this season, when active operations had ceased in the north, the attention of the British commander-in-chief became directed to the Southern States. Some royalists, who had left the southern provinces, and fled into Florida, had made destructive incursions into Georgia. One of the parties had burned the town of Midway, the dwelling houses on the roads through which they passed, had destroyed the grain, and carried off horses and cattle.

An attempt to retaliate these incursions was made. A force of two thousand men was assembled, and proceeded to

---

Operations in the South.

---

1778 Florida for the reduction of St. Augustine; but disease carried off nearly one-fourth of the troops, and the remainder returned to Georgia.

A plan had been projected by the British for obtaining possession of Georgia. Accordingly Colonel Campbell was sent from New York, with about two thousand five hundred men, and arriving off the mouth of the Savannah, proceeded up the river, and six days after, effected a landing on the 29th of Twelfth month, (Dec.)

For the defence of the place, General Robert Howe, with nearly nine hundred Americans, had taken an advantageous position about two miles below Savannah. Here he was surrounded by a marsh and the river, excepting in front; and the approach in this quarter was well guarded. A negro, however, gave information to the British of a small path through the morass, which led to the rear of the American army. They were therefore attacked both in front and rear, and after fighting desperately, less than one-half effected an escape to South Carolina. About one hundred Americans were killed, and four hundred and fifty taken prisoners. The shipping in the river and a large quantity of provisions fell into the hands of the British, who soon after obtained the command of the whole province.

1779 The scene of the war now became changed. Having planted their standard in the south, the British commanders resolved to approach the Middle States from this direction, at the commencement of the ensuing campaign, having gained nothing in the north during the preceding season.

Early in the year, General Lincoln, having been appointed to the command of the southern army, established his headquarters at Purysburg, on the Savannah river, about thirty miles from its mouth. His force consisted of twenty-four

hundred men, a large portion of whom were undisciplined militia, deficient in the usual equipments. 1779

The British, after making an unsuccessful attempt on the island of Port Royal, in which they lost many of their officers and a large number of private soldiers, resolved to establish themselves more firmly in Georgia, and to use endeavors to induce the Tories in South Carolina to take up arms in the royal cause. The principal posts of the British were at Augusta and Ebenezer, both on the Savannah; while their emissaries were scattered among the Tory settlements in the upper parts of the State. Several hundred of the Tories assembled, and began a march toward Augusta. Among them was a body of unprincipled men, and their course was marked by plunder and atrocities. These excited the peaceful inhabitants to such a degree that Colonel Pickens collected about three hundred of the Whig militia to oppose them. The parties met and fought. The Tories were defeated and about forty of them killed. Some fled to North Carolina; others surrendered themselves, and were tried for violating the sedition law. About seventy were condemned to die, but all were afterward pardoned excepting five leaders.

With the view of circumscribing the limits of the Tories who were scattered over the country, and of repressing their incursions, a detachment of fifteen hundred militia was sent into Georgia. These were stationed on Briar creek, which empties into the Savannah, below Augusta. Here they were surprised by the British, who by a circuitous route came upon their rear. The militia were immediately thrown into confusion, and fled. One hundred and fifty were killed, still more were taken prisoners, and a few were drowned in attempting to cross the Savannah. The greater part of those who escaped returned to their homes; only about four hundred and fifty went back to the camp.

---

General Lincoln in Georgia.

---

1779 Lincoln was soon after reinforced, and resolved again to enter Georgia, in order to carry the war into the quarters of the British. With most of his forces, he crossed the Savannah, and marched toward the centre of the State. Prevost, the British commander, immediately seized the opportunity of attacking Charleston. Lincoln hastened back to its defence, when Prevost thought it expedient to retire, and withdrew his forces to some adjacent islands. Here he was attacked by Lincoln, who was repulsed, after an engagement of one hour and twenty minutes, with a loss, in that brief period, of more than one hundred and fifty men. A few days afterward, the British re-commenced their retreat to Savannah, leaving a garrison at Beaufort, on the island of Port Royal. The American militia mostly dispersed; and Lincoln, with about eight hundred men, stationed himself at Sheldon, not far from Beaufort. The heat of a southern climate had put a stop to active operations for the present.

Early in Ninth month, (Sept.,) Admiral D'Estaing appeared off the coast with the French fleet. At the close of the preceding season, he had sailed to the West Indies, where he had been engaged in hostilities with the British. The militia was soon collected, and the united armies agreed to besiege Savannah, in the hope of driving their opponents from the southern provinces.

D'Estaing, who arrived first before Savannah, summoned the town to surrender, and allowed a cessation of hostilities for twenty-four hours, for the purpose of settling the terms of a capitulation. The British forces had been engaged day and night since the arrival of the French fleet, in strengthening the place, yet the works were incomplete, and the commander was desirous of gaining time. During the interval allowed, Colonel Maitland, by very great exertion, reached the place

---

Siege of Savannah

---

with a reinforcement from Beaufort. Prevost now informed 1779 D'Estaing that he would defend the place to the last extremity. Preparations were therefore made for besieging the town. Several days were consumed in bringing heavy artillery and stores from the vessels. All the arrangements being completed, the siege commenced. For some days the garrison was exposed to a fire from batteries consisting of thirty-three pieces of heavy cannon and nine mortars ; but the cannonade made little impression on the works.

D'Estaing became anxious to return to the West Indies for the defence of the French Islands ; and finding that a long time would be required to take the place in this way, he determined on an assault. The French and American forces advanced to the attack ; and after about one hour's severe fighting, they were driven from the works, and obliged to retreat. The loss sustained by the British was not great. Of the French, nearly seven hundred were killed or wounded, and upwards of two hundred of the Americans. Among the killed was Count Pulaski, a Polish officer.

As no hope remained of taking the town, the militia returned to their respective homes. General Lincoln retired to South Carolina, and D'Estaing, having re-embarked his troops, sailed for the West Indies.

During these occurrences at the South, the British in the North made several predatory excursions, which were productive of distress and devastation. Having concerted a plan for interrupting the commerce of the Chesapeake, and destroying the magazines on its shores, the British general, Matthews, sailed from New York for this purpose with about two thousand men. Having arrived at Portsmouth in Virginia, the troops landed and took possession of the town without opposition. Small parties were then sent to Norfolk

---

General Washington at West Point.

---

1779 and other places, where they seized many vessels, and took or destroyed a large quantity of provisions and military stores, burning magazines as well as some private residences. For two weeks, their course was marked by devastation and ruin. One hundred and thirty American vessels fell into the hands of these marauders, who, with their prizes and booty, returned to New York.

By having command of the ocean and navigable rivers, the British were enabled to make sudden attacks on distant parts of the country, thus keeping the Americans in a constant state of alarm. They also interrupted the communication by sea, between the New England and other States. It was therefore considered a matter of great importance by Washington, to preserve the communication as far down the Hudson as possible. He removed his head-quarters from Middlebrook to West Point. Fortifications were constructed on Stony Point, a high bluff on the west side of the river, a few miles below, and on Verplanck's Point, which projects into the river on the opposite side. Before the works were complete, Clinton sent detachments from New York, who succeeded in getting possession of both forts. The garrison at Fort La Fayette on Verplanck's Point were completely surrounded, their escape was cut off, and they were obliged to surrender themselves prisoners of war.

Clinton made arrangements for completing the fortifications at both posts, garrisoned them, and finding that he could advance no further up the river, returned to New York.

The British commander next determined to ravage the coast of Connecticut; partly with the view of drawing General Washington from his strong position at West Point, for its defence. For this purpose, about twenty-six hundred troops, under command of General Tryon, formerly governor of the

Devastations of the British.

Stony Point taken.

province of New York, sailed from Throg's Neck, on the 1779 East river, a few miles from the city of New York, and on the following day landed at East Haven. On the appearance of the fleet, the militia assembled in great numbers, but they could not prevent the British from effecting their ruinous designs. This town was burned, New Haven plundered, and the artillery and ammunition were either taken or destroyed. Fairfield and Norwalk were burned, after having been plundered of every thing of value, with abusive words to the citizens. This devastating work was accomplished in about ten days, when the British returned to New York.

Washington felt himself obliged to keep his forces concentrated, lest by dividing their strength, the different detachments should be severally overcome. His endeavor therefore was to resist any attack of the main body of the British army, and to guard the passes of the highlands. Having made himself acquainted with the state of the works at Stony Point, which had been taken from the Americans in the spring, he determined to make an effort to surprise the garrison there. For this purpose he sent General Wayne with a detachment of troops. The road was exceedingly difficult, and the heat intense. Having secured every person on their way, whom they thought likely to give information of their approach, they succeeded in reaching Stony Point unobserved, about midnight, and immediately commenced an attack. A determined resistance was made, but the fort soon fell into the hands of the assailants, and the garrison surrendered themselves prisoners of war. About twenty of the British had been killed, and seventy-four wounded. The Americans lost sixty-three killed, and forty wounded.

Although the Americans had thus gained possession of Stony Point, General Washington did not think he could

---

Powles Hook surprised.Gen. Sullivan sent against the Indians.

---

1779 spare a sufficient number of men to garrison the place ; as it would require a large force, on account of its entire exposure to the British shipping in the river. He therefore abandoned it, after having destroyed a great part of the works. The fort was soon after repaired, and again occupied by the British.

Being successful in this instance, Washington ventured further, and planned a surprise of the British post at Powles Hook, opposite New York. The command of the expedition was committed to Major Lee. He was ordered to surprise the garrison, to attempt the removal or destruction of the stores, and immediately to retire with as many prisoners as he could secure.

Under cover of the night, they effected their design, and lost about six men, killed and wounded. They took one hundred and sixty prisoners, and killed in the affray about thirty of the British.

In the following month, an unsuccessful attempt was made to drive the British from a fort which they had just erected at Penobscot, in Maine. The government at Boston were alarmed at this step, and resolved on an attempt to dispossess them. The fleet sent for the purpose was captured ; fifteen vessels were either blown up or taken. The sailors and troops on board of the remainder, landed in an unsettled part of the country, and, having burned their vessels, had to proceed one hundred miles through a wilderness, in which many of them perished.

During the summer of this year, an army of four thousand, under command of General Sullivan, was sent against the Indians of the Six Nations, all of whom had joined the British excepting the Oneidas. By the assistance of Tories, some fortifications were raised to oppose the progress of the army. These were assaulted. After a slight resistance, the Indians

---

Expedition of Paul Jones.

---

gave way and fled to the woods, retreating as they were pursued. They deserted their towns, which denoted a higher state of civilization than had been heretofore observed among the aborigines. Eighteen of these were destroyed, besides many apple and peach orchards, and the corn, then growing luxuriantly. After the return of the army, the Indians attacked some of the frontier settlements, and killed and captured many of the inhabitants. This led to further retaliation on the part of the Americans. Eight more villages were burned, together with the crop of corn in the neighborhood. 1779

In the course of the summer, the American commissioners at Paris fitted out a small squadron, the command of which was given to Paul Jones. In Seventh month, (July,) he sailed from Port L'Orient in the *Bon Homme Richard*, accompanied by three other ships. In sight of the port of Leith in Scotland, he captured several vessels; and off the coast of England, he attacked the *Serapis*, a superior and somewhat larger vessel than his own, which, with a frigate of half the number of guns, was convoying several merchantmen. The fight was desperate. During the engagement, the frigates approached so near each other, that Jones seized the opportunity of lashing them together, in which situation they continued for two hours, and were both frequently on fire. At length one of the men of the *Bon Homme Richard*, carried a basket of shells out on the mainyard and threw them among the crew of the *Serapis*. These soon exploded among the men, and blew up a cartridge-magazine, which destroyed the guns on one side of the ship.

The merchant vessels having by this time made their escape, and the *Serapis* being so much injured that the captain could no longer defend it, he struck his flag. The *Bon*

---

Sufferings of the army.

---

1779 Homme Richard was at this time in a sinking condition ; and her crew and the wounded men were immediately transferred to their prize.

The frigate in company with the Serapis was also captured by one of the other vessels belonging to the squadron. Jones soon after sailed for Holland, with his prizes, the value of which was estimated at more than forty thousand pounds. Jones received the thanks of Congress, and a gold medal was struck in commemoration of his victory over the Serapis.

At the close of the season, one division of the army under Washington was quartered for the winter at Morristown, New Jersey ; the other at West Point. Their sufferings were intense from cold, hunger and want of clothing. By midwinter, the soldiers were put on allowance, and more than once the stock of provisions was entirely exhausted. Application for relief was made to the magistrates of the neighborhood, who exacted a certain quantity of provisions from every county in the State, to be brought into the camp before the expiration of six days. The people promptly complied with the requisition, and the soldiers were by this means restrained from desertion.

These sufferings were produced by a want of confidence in the ability of the government to redeem its bills of credit, known as the "Continental Currency." In order to defray the expenses of the army, it had been absolutely necessary to issue these bills, for the redemption of which, Congress was pledged. They were used as currency, and supplies for the army were purchased with them. At first, two millions were issued ; soon afterward, another million. This was at the commencement of the war, in 1775. The credit of the country was then good, and the bills were readily received. By the close of the following year, the amount in circulation

---

Depreciation of the currency.

---

was twenty millions. This was a very desponding period. 1779  
The people were discouraged as to the result of the war; consequently their faith in the ability of Congress to redeem the paper money became less, and its value depreciated. At the close of the year 1779, one silver dollar was considered equal in value to thirty dollars of the continental money.

Confidence in Congress was at length exhausted; and to purchase provisions with this money, was impossible. Each State was therefore directed to send a certain proportion of provisions and forage. This afforded temporary and partial relief. Loans were next solicited from capitalists both in America and Europe. All however was not sufficient, and discontent could not be avoided. The pay of the officers was not enough to procure for them the necessary clothing.

Another year was ended, and the war seemed no nearer its termination. The British had been obliged to return to as narrow encampments as they had occupied the preceding winter, but it had been a year of suffering, of anxiety and of fear. Hundreds of men had been sacrificed, many more had been wounded, others made prisoners. Fertile districts of country had been laid waste, towns and villages burned, hundreds of inhabitants rendered homeless, and many vessels destroyed.

## CHAPTER XXIV.

### CAMPAIGN OF 1780.

---

Gen. Clinton sails for the South.

---

1780 THE operations of the preceding year, especially the unsuccessful attack on Savannah by the French and Americans, had induced General Clinton to believe that the southern portion of the Union might be more easily subjugated than the eastern and middle States. Leaving the army in New York under command of General Knyphausen, Clinton sailed for the South with a considerable force, a few days before the close of the year 1779, and reached Savannah about the end of the following month. The voyage was boisterous. Several of the transports were lost, with nearly all the horses, and one ordnance ship sunk with all her stores. After some delays, Clinton proceeded north, and landed his troops on John's Island, about thirty miles from Charleston, on the 11th of Second month, (Feb.)

On the arrival of Clinton, Governor Rutledge issued orders for the assembling of the militia ; but, disheartened by the result of the attack on Savannah, few obeyed the call. He then ordered all the militia who had been drafted, and all the property holders in Charleston, to join the American standard, under penalty of the confiscation of their property.

The fortifications in Charleston were industriously repaired ; and in expectation of reinforcements, General Lincoln remained in the place. Clinton waited for additional troops from New York, and then cautiously advanced toward the

---

Siege of Charleston.

---

town, erecting fortifications as he proceeded. On the 29th of Third month, (March,) the British army reached Ashley river, ten miles above Charleston, and crossed it without opposition, the garrison being unable to resist them. The artillery, baggage and stores were all conveyed across the river, and on the 1st of Fourth month, (April,) the British commenced the siege of Charleston. On the 9th their fleet, taking advantage of both wind and tide, passed Fort Moultrie without stopping to return the heavy fire which was discharged at them, and thus gained entire command of the harbor. Their ships were somewhat damaged, and twenty-seven men killed or wounded. On the same day, the British works being completed, and a battery constructed within eleven hundred yards of the American fortifications, General Lincoln was summoned to surrender the town. This he refused to do, and a destructive fire from the batteries was immediately commenced.

The Americans were soon cut off from all means of retreat, and every hope of assistance failed. The posts which had been established at various places, to facilitate the passage of the garrison, should it be necessary to evacuate the town, were all surprised. The British were advancing nearer. An offer to capitulate was made, but the terms were refused by the British commander, and hostilities re-commenced. A negotiation was afterward opened, and a capitulation signed on the 12th of Fifth month, (May,) about three and a half months after Clinton arrived at Savannah. The militia were to be allowed to return to their respective homes as prisoners on parole, and were not to be molested in their persons or property while they remained faithful.

The loss of Charleston was much felt by the Americans, and was an equally great cause of encouragement to the

---

Colonel Tarleton.

---

1780 British, who already had the command of Georgia, and by obtaining possession of the capital of South Carolina, would now have the control of the southern portion of the Union. Clinton immediately took measures for inducing the inhabitants to return to their allegiance to the king. A proclamation was issued, offering pardon for all past offences on condition of submission, and exemption from taxation excepting by their own legislature. This latter offer, if made to all the provinces, would at one period have prevented dissension between the two countries. There had always been in the Southern States, many who were favorable to the British interests. Some of these had been deterred from taking any active part by the superior force of the Americans, but were now induced to espouse the cause of Great Britain.

Clinton also established garrisons in different parts of the State, to overawe the militia, and sent a party of two thousand men under Cornwallis toward North Carolina, to repel any forces that might be advancing to the relief of Charleston. Being informed of the position of Colonel Buford, who, with four hundred men, was advancing for this purpose, and was now near the borders of North Carolina, a detachment of seven hundred men, under Colonel Tarleton, was sent forward to surprise them. By a march of one hundred and five miles in fifty-four hours, they came up with the Americans at a district called the Waxhaws, and ordered them to surrender. On Buford's refusal, an attack commenced. The Americans were soon obliged to submit to the superior strength of the British. They threw down their arms, and called for quarter. No attention was paid to their submission, and the slaughter was continued until nearly all the regiment were killed, or so badly wounded that they could not be removed from the field. A few had saved themselves by flight.

---

Colonel Sumpter.

---

Being thus entirely successful, Clinton considered the State subdued. He therefore sailed for New York, early in Sixth month, (June,) with a great part of his forces, leaving Cornwallis with an army of four thousand men, to keep down all opposition. 1780

Admiral Howe having been censured for not employing the inhabitants in the royal service, Clinton instructed Cornwallis to absolve the South Carolinians from their paroles, and to restore to them all the rights and duties of citizens. A proclamation was therefore issued to this effect; which also stated that whoever would not take an active part in "settling and securing his Majesty's government," should be treated as rebels. Most of the inhabitants had either given their parole, or submitted as British subjects; many of them influenced by the hope of obtaining tranquillity. By the orders of Clinton, this was now denied them. Indignant at the violation of the terms of their submission, multitudes resumed their arms, and resolved on a vindictive war; whilst many left the State, and joined the army which Congress was raising for the recovery of South Carolina.

A party who had fled for safety to North Carolina, choosing Colonel Sumpter for their leader, returned to their own State, where they attacked and defeated several detachments of the royal army. Each victory served to encourage others, and increased the number of Sumpter's men, until they amounted to nearly six hundred. In one of these engagements, the British regiment was reduced from nearly three hundred men to nine; many were killed, the remainder were dispersed.

The Maryland and Delaware troops had been ordered to South Carolina for the relief of Charleston, but they had been so much delayed, that they were not in time for this

---

Sufferings of the army in the South.

---

1780 service. Their number amounted to about four thousand, and the command had been given to Baron De Kalb; but being unacquainted with the country, and not accustomed to undisciplined troops, General Gates was ordered to take charge of the southern army. Accordingly he joined them on the 27th of Seventh month, (July.) De Kalb had been advised not to take the direct road for Camden, South Carolina, where the main body of the British was stationed, as it led through a sterile country of pine barrens, which could not afford subsistence for the army. When Gates took the command, he thought it best to proceed by the shortest course, and soon experienced the privations which De Kalb had endeavored to avoid. The want of provisions was early felt, and in the course of the march, the army suffered much from famine and fatigue. Disease and death among their number were the necessary consequence.

On the 13th of Eighth month, (Aug.) the army reached Clermont, thirteen miles from Camden. The following day, they were joined by a large body of Virginia militia, which increased the number of the army to three thousand six hundred and sixty-three. Gates at this time received information from Sumpter, who, with a body of militia was encamped on the west side of the Wateree, that an escort of clothing, ammunition and other stores for the British, was advancing from Charleston to Camden, and must cross the Wateree at a ferry about a mile from his encampment. Gates immediately sent a detachment of four hundred men, with some artillery, to enable him to capture the party. This they succeeded in doing, taking three hundred prisoners and all the stores.

On hearing of the approach of Gates, Cornwallis hastened to join the army at Camden, and take command of it in per-

---

Battle of Camden.

---

son. The number of the British had also been reduced by 1780 sickness, and after calling in the outposts, they did not exceed two thousand men.

When Gates entered South Carolina, he issued a proclamation, calling on the citizens to aid him in delivering the State from its conquerors. Although this had not the full effect anticipated by the American general, yet many joined the army, and Cornwallis found that he must retreat to Charleston, or risk a battle. His position at Camden being unfavorable to resist an attack, on the night of the 15th he marched out with his whole force, intending to assault the Americans in their camp at Clermont.

The Americans were also moving to a more favorable position, seven miles from Camden. About two in the morning, the advanced guards of the hostile armies unexpectedly met. Firing instantly began. In several skirmishes which ensued, the British had the advantage. This considerably depressed the militia.

Early in the morning both armies prepared for battle. At the first advance of the British, the Virginia militia threw down their arms and fled. Their example was followed by others, until only one wing of the army was left to contend with the superior force of the British. They made a determined resistance, but were at length overpowered by numbers, and fled. The relentless Tarleton pursued them with great fury for twenty-two miles, until all were killed, captured or dispersed. Two hundred and ninety Americans were made prisoners. The number of killed and wounded could not be ascertained. Among those whose lives were lost at the battle of Camden, was the Baron De Kalb, second in command.

Tarleton with his men next took the route toward Sumpter's

---

Rigorous treatment of the Carolinians.

---

1780 encampment. Hearing of the defeat of Gates, this officer had retreated up the Wateree with his prisoners and stores, and believing himself safe, had halted to rest his troops. Owing to the sleeping of the sentinels at their posts, the British rode into the camp before any alarm was given. Between three and four hundred were killed or wounded; the remainder were dispersed. Three hundred British prisoners were released, and all the baggage and stores fell into the hands of the captors.

On the 17th and 18th, General Gates endeavored to assemble the remnant of his army at Charlotte, in North Carolina. After being joined by the militia of the State, his forces had amounted to upwards of four thousand men; only one hundred and fifty of them could now be mustered.

Cornwallis adopted measures of extreme severity, in order to intimidate the inhabitants from again revolting. He ordered that all who had once submitted to British authority, and had again taken up arms in the American cause, should be imprisoned and their property confiscated; that all who had once "borne arms with the British, and afterward joined the Americans, should be put to death." In consequence of these orders, several were hanged, and many were brought to poverty.

The disadvantages of slavery in these seasons of deep distress, were severely felt, and the conquest of the State was facilitated by the willingness of many of the slaves to aid the British cause. They were not identified with the interests of the country, and felt that they had nothing to lose.

The rigorous measures of Cornwallis could not destroy all spirit of opposition. Many were yet unwilling to relinquish their independence. These formed themselves into bands in

---

Success at King's Mountain.

---

various parts of the State, under different leaders, the most prominent of whom were Marion and Sumpter. They would often emerge from some morass or piece of woods, and fall unexpectedly on parties of the British which were marching through the country to overawe the inhabitants. Several of these parties were cut off. 1780

The militia having assembled in considerable numbers, their leaders planned an attack on Major Ferguson, who, with a detachment of Tories, was endeavoring to cut off the retreat of a body of Americans, after an unsuccessful attack on Augusta. Major Ferguson awaited the Americans on King's mountain, in the western part of North Carolina. The militia divided themselves into three parties, which were to ascend the mountain from different directions. One of these was exhorted by its leader not to wait the word of command from him, but to fire as quickly, and to stand as long as they could. If obliged to retreat, to get behind trees, but not to run away; afterward to return and renew the fight. The different divisions arriving separately were each repulsed; but retreating only a short distance, and getting behind trees and rocks, each renewed its fire when the attention of the British was diverted by an attack from one of the other parties. In this manner the battle was continued for an hour. The British, being entirely unprotected, were shot down in great numbers. At length Ferguson was killed, and his men surrendered. Eight hundred of the royal troops became prisoners, one hundred and fifty were killed, and about as many more wounded.

Cornwallis was advancing to Salisbury in North Carolina, but hearing of the defeat and death of Ferguson, he returned to South Carolina, not without being much harassed by the militia.

---

Distress of Washington.Mutiny.

---

1780     Gates had by this time assembled an army of fourteen hundred men, but was soon afterward recalled by Congress, in consequence of the defeats and disasters of the Americans under his command at the South. General Greene was withdrawn from the northern army, and appointed to succeed Gates.

To return to Washington. The division of the army with him remained at Morristown during the winter and spring, without attempting more than to restrain the incursions of the British from New York. Washington's situation at this time was very trying; unable to supply his half-famished men with the absolute necessities of life, and yet unwilling to have them return to their homes for the alleviation of their sufferings. Many of the horses had died, or been rendered useless. Although Congress promised to make good the losses which the soldiers had sustained by the depreciation of the paper money, with which they were paid, yet this did not relieve their present sufferings. At length, mutiny broke out, and two of the regiments announced their intention of leaving, or of procuring subsistence by force; and it was with the greatest difficulty they were induced to submit.

The British commander, availing himself of the distressed situation of the army, sent emissaries among them, inviting them to join the British standard, promising them comfort and abundance. Yet attachment to their country was so strong, that these offers were disregarded, and on the arrival of a fresh supply of provisions, cheerfulness was for a while restored, and desertions were rare.

The British troops in New York, however, were not without their privations. The winter was unusually severe, and the waters around the city were frozen, by which the supplies were to a great extent cut off. Gold was offered to the

---

Incursion of the British.La Fayette.

---

country people around for provisions and fuel brought within the lines. Many were thus induced to endeavor to convey their produce to the British. The attempt on one side to protect this intercourse, and on the part of the Americans to prevent it, gave rise to much skirmishing. In one of these engagements, fifteen men were killed, several wounded, and a number were made prisoners.

General Knyphausen, who commanded in New York, in the absence of Clinton at the South, availed himself of reports which were probably exaggerated, of discontents in the American camp, to pass into New Jersey with about five thousand men. He conceived that the American troops were ready to desert, and this movement was designed to encourage them to join the British standard. Detachments of the army were sent to oppose his progress; many of the inhabitants also seized their arms. Knyphausen was obliged to retreat. In one rencontre, the Americans lost eighty men, the British more. Their line of march was marked by devastation. The town of Springfield, a few miles west of Newark, was burned, as well as other houses.

In the spring, General La Fayette, who had returned home at the commencement of hostilities in Europe, arrived at Boston with the intelligence that the government of France had resolved to send a considerable land as well as naval force, to the assistance of the United States. While in Europe, La Fayette had used his influence with his sovereign, to gain more effectual support for the Americans in their war for independence. This point being gained, he obtained his consent to return to America.

The expected assistance from France arrived in Seventh month, (July,) at Newport, this post having been evacuated by the British. It consisted of seven ships of the line under

---

Arrival of the French fleet.Blockaded at Newport.

---

1780 Chevalier De Ternay, convoying a fleet of transports, having on board six thousand troops under Count De Rochambeau.

A few days afterward, Admiral Arbuthnot, who commanded the British ships at New York, being reinforced from England, sailed for Rhode Island, and blockaded the French fleet in the harbor. Clinton also proceeded with eight thousand troops for the purpose of attacking their land forces. Hearing, however, that Washington was preparing to take advantage of his absence, to advance against New York, he relinquished his design and returned.

Washington with his forces now withdrew to West Point, and soon afterward, accompanied by La Fayette and other officers, he went to Hartford to hold a conference with Count Rochambeau and Admiral Ternay, leaving the command of West Point with General Arnold.

The post now entrusted to Arnold was the most important in the possession of the Americans. It gave them the control of the river farther north, and defended the camps on both sides of the Hudson. It was generally deemed impregnable, and in it were deposited the most valuable stores. Arnold had been engaged in the war from the commencement, and had given many proofs of bravery and fortitude. At the battle of Stillwater, three years before, he had received a wound in the leg which disqualified him from active service. So far were his countrymen from having any doubts of his attachment to the cause in which they were mutually engaged, that applications were made to Washington, to confer on Arnold the command of this important station.

But his feelings had changed. After the evacuation of Philadelphia by the British, he was appointed to the command of that place. There he lived in a sumptuous manner,

---

Treason of Arnold.

---

and involved himself in debts, which he was entirely unable to pay. He had frequently had in his charge the administration of public money, of which he rendered very unsatisfactory accounts, and he was finally accused of embezzlement. Much had been passed over on account of his military skill; yet afterward, when he made large demands on the public money, a considerable part of his claim was rejected. This led to a course of conduct and expression, which subjected him to trial by a court martial, and to a sentence of reprimand from the commander-in-chief. 1780

From this time he became alienated from the cause of America, and finally resolved to betray his country. For this purpose, he sought a situation which would give a double value to treason. In a letter to a British officer, he informed him of his change of principle, and expressed a wish to join the royal army and restore himself to the favor of his king. This led to a correspondence between Arnold and General Clinton, in which the former proposed to deliver West Point into the hands of the British. His plan was, that the garrison should be drawn out to fight the assailants in the defiles, while a designated pass was to be left unguarded, through which the fortress might be surprised, and the Americans would be obliged to surrender.

Having communicated this proposition to Clinton, the *Vulture*, sloop of war, was stationed in the river, near the American lines, but sufficiently distant to avoid suspicion.

Major Andre, adjutant-general of the British army, through whom a correspondence with Arnold had already been carried on, under the assumed names respectively of Anderson and Gustavus, was appointed by Clinton to have an interview with Arnold and complete the arrangements. For this purpose, he ascended the river in the *Vulture*, and in the

---

Capture of Andre.

---

1780 night of the 21st of Ninth month, (Sept.,) he was conveyed to the shore, without the posts of both armies, in a boat sent by Arnold. Here he met the American commander. Their interview lasted until daybreak, when Andre was informed that it would be necessary for him to be secreted until the following night. For this purpose his regimentals were concealed by a surtout coat, and without his knowledge, he was conducted within the American lines. On the following night, he proposed to return to the Vulture. The boatmen refused to convey him, as she had been fired on from the American works, and compelled to remove lower down the river. The only alternative was to attempt to reach New York by land. Andre was therefore furnished by Arnold with a pass, under the name of John Anderson, and laying aside his regimentals, and assuming the garb of a traveller, he set out on horseback. Having passed the American guards and outposts, he believed all danger to be over. But the American army had a scouting party, who patrolled the country between the lines of the two armies. As Andre was riding along believing himself safe and his mission accomplished, his horse was suddenly stopped by a man who sprang from concealment. Being taken entirely by surprise he lost his presence of mind, and mistaking the man for a British soldier, instead of offering his pass, he declared himself a British officer on urgent business, and begged that he might not be detained. Two other militia men then came up, and Andre discovered his mistake. He manifested so much confusion that they proceeded to examine his person. In his boot they found papers, in Arnold's handwriting, containing a description of the works at West Point, and a particular statement of the strength of the garrison, with other information calculated to facilitate the capture.

---

His execution.

---

Andre offered the men a purse of gold and a valuable 1780 watch, with more liberal reward from his government, if they would let him pass. But they would not be bribed, and conducted him to the captain of the militia. Here Andre, anxious for Arnold, begged permission to write to him, which was inconsiderately granted, and an express sent with the letter. Arnold immediately made his escape to New York.

Having allowed Arnold sufficient time for this step, Andre made himself known as the adjutant-general of the British army. He then addressed a letter to Washington, which was enclosed, with the papers found on his person, to the commander-in-chief. In this he stated his real name and rank, related some particulars of the circumstances which had just transpired, and gave reasons why he should not be considered a spy.

The bearer of these communications took a different road from that which Washington pursued on his return from Hartford. He therefore did not receive any information of what had occurred in his absence, until he reached West Point; when Arnold had fled. The necessary precautions against an attack from the British were immediately taken, and the case of Andre was referred to a court-martial, consisting of fourteen officers.

Before this tribunal Andre manifested frankness and candor. He concealed nothing respecting himself, but endeavored to avoid implicating others. His behavior won the sympathy of the officers, but they reported that having been found within the lines,\* in disguise, according to the law of nations he was a spy, and as such he should suffer death.

---

\* The Americans considered as their lines all the country not actually occupied by the British

---

Subsequent career of Arnold.

---

1780 This sentence was accordingly carried into execution. Andre petitioned that he might die as a soldier, by being shot, and not as a criminal, by hanging. On consultation with the officers, it was decided that the public good required his death in the usual way. He submitted, and met the execution of his sentence with composure.

Major Andre had enlisted much sympathy during his short detention, and had given proofs of disinterestedness and ingenuousness of character. His death excited regrets in the minds of the American officers, and to Washington the circumstance was deeply trying. General Clinton, by whom he was much esteemed, made every exertion in his power to rescue him, first by negotiation and then by threats, but nothing could avail. The thanks of Congress were voted to the three captors of Andre. It was also directed that they should each receive a silver medal and two hundred dollars in specie annually, as a reward of their fidelity.

Arnold was immediately taken into favor by Clinton, and appointed brigadier-general in the royal army. But he could not be respected by his new associates, nor did Clinton feel entire confidence in him. At a subsequent period, having appointed him to the command of an expedition to the Chesapeake, it is said that he authorized, by a "dormant commission," two colonels, who were in the detachment, to supersede him and put him in arrest, if they had reason to suspect Arnold of any sinister interest. In a letter to the British government, speaking of this expedition, Clinton says: "This detachment is under the command of General Arnold, with whom I have thought it right to send Colonels Dundas and Simcoe, as being officers of experience and much in my confidence."

Arnold survived the war, and spent the remainder of his life in England, exiled from his native country. He died unlamented in 1801.

---

Dissatisfaction in the army.

---

Toward the end of the year 1780, an agreement was made for the exchange of prisoners. Hitherto Congress had considered that such a step would be unfavorable to their cause. They well knew the great expense to which the British were subjected, in getting recruits from England; as well as the comparatively little increase of strength that would be afforded the American army by the release of American prisoners, owing to the shortness of the enlistments. By the capitulation of Charleston and the defeat of Gates at Camden, however, many regular troops had fallen into the hands of the British, and Congress was at length induced to agree to a general exchange. 1780

The season being over, the American army once more returned to winter quarters, principally at Morristown and West Point. Although the harvest had yielded an abundance, the sufferings and privations of the soldiers were again great. So much distressed were they, that officers were sent out to seize provisions, wherever they could be found; the only payment given being a certificate of the quantity and value of the articles taken. The troops from Pennsylvania had enlisted for "three years, or during the continuance of the war," which they supposed would be a shorter period. They now complained that they were retained in service contrary to their enlistment. Worn with privations, thirteen hundred paraded under arms and declared their intention of marching to Philadelphia, and demanding of Congress a redress of grievances.

The officers endeavored in vain to induce them to relinquish their purpose. In the attempt, one was killed and several were wounded. At Princeton they were met by emissaries from General Clinton, with tempting offers to place themselves under the protection of the British. These offers

---

Relief of the troops.

---

1780 were instantly rejected, and the agents seized. At this place they were also met by a committee of Congress, who, by yielding in part to their demands, persuaded them to return to the camp. The emissaries of Clinton were afterward tried by a board of officers, convicted as spies, and hung.

This revolt, and one among the New Jersey troops, which was repressed by the death of two of the leaders, awakened the people to the miserable condition of the army. The amount of three months' pay was raised and forwarded to them in specie, which was joyfully received.

## CHAPTER XXV.

### CAMPAIGN OF 1781. CONCLUSION OF THE WAR. TREATY OF PEACE SIGNED.

---

#### Battle of the Cowpens.

---

WHEN General Greene took the command at the south, the 1781 army consisted of two thousand men, very deficient in clothing, and dependent on frequent collections of food for subsistence, while the number of Tories in that part of the country rendered it very difficult to bring provisions from any distance.

Soon after the arrival of the new commander, he sent a detachment of his men, under General Morgan, into the western part of South Carolina, where the king's troops and the Tories were plundering the inhabitants without restraint. Morgan was to watch the motions of the British at Camden, as well as to find provisions for his men.

Against this detachment, Cornwallis sent Tarleton, with a superior force, consisting of nearly eleven hundred troops. Tarleton moved rapidly in the hope of surprising Morgan; but the latter, hearing of his approach, arranged his men for battle, at a place called the Cowpens, near the division line between North and South Carolina, on the 17th of First month, (Jan.,) 1781.

The British soon after appeared in sight, and commenced the attack, expecting an easy victory. Mistaking certain movements which Morgan had directed, for a retreat, the

---

Pursuit of the Americans.

---

1781 British rushed forward in disorder, and were met by an unexpected and destructive fire from the infantry. Their confusion was increased, and after a sharp conflict, they surrendered. One hundred of the British were killed, upwards of two hundred wounded, and five hundred made prisoners. Tarleton escaped. The Americans had twelve men killed and sixty wounded.

The result of this battle deranged the plans of Cornwallis for the subjugation of North Carolina. Having learned that Morgan, immediately after the engagement, had set off with his prisoners and all his forces toward Virginia, he determined to intercept him, if possible, prevent his joining the main body of the army, and compel the restoration of the prisoners. He therefore destroyed nearly all his baggage, retained no wagons, excepting those containing the stores, and four for the sick and wounded. On the 19th the race commenced. Both armies were equally distant from the fords of the Catawba, where it was necessary to cross that river, and each strove to reach them first. On the tenth day of the march, Morgan and his party arrived and crossed. Two hours afterward, Cornwallis appeared. It being then dark, he encamped for the night. The river at that time was rising, and a heavy fall of rain rendered it impassable before morning. He was detained here two days, which gave the American commander an opportunity of sending forward the prisoners until they were beyond the reach of Cornwallis. Morgan was preparing to defend the passage of the river, when General Greene arrived and took the command. He had left the main body of his army, with orders to march toward Virginia, and had ridden one hundred and fifty miles to join Morgan.

The fords of the river were guarded, but owing to the

---

Their escape.

---

death of one of the officers, and the misconduct of the militia 1781 under his command, the passage was effected by the British. Greene now set off for the Yadkin, and Cornwallis marched after him, hoping to overtake him before he reached the fords of that river. On the second night, the Americans arrived. Before all had crossed, the British appeared in sight. The two armies lay encamped on opposite banks, and before morning this river also was rendered impassable by a heavy rain. Cornwallis then marched higher up the stream, where he crossed, and Greene proceeded to Guildford Court House. Here he was joined by the other division of the army.

The British commander still had a force superior to that of Greene, who was expecting additional troops from Virginia. He therefore endeavored to intercept the retreat of the Americans over the Dan, near the borders of that State, distant one hundred miles. Both armies were without tents, and subsisted on food that could be procured during their hasty marches. Both suffered from the inclemency of the season, heavy rains and bad roads. The British were well clothed ; the Americans were illy provided in this respect, and nearly destitute of shoes. In marching over the frozen ground, their feet were often much cut, and their course was marked with blood.

The knowledge that at the Dan the pursuit would terminate, kept up their spirits. On the fifth day, the Americans reached that river, and crossed in boats, which had been collected for the purpose. So closely had they been pursued, that although they had marched forty miles on the last day, they were scarcely over when the British appeared on the opposite shore. Further pursuit was impracticable. The river was too deep to be forded, and no boats could be procured.

---

Battle of Guildford.

---

1781 The Americans having thus eluded the grasp of Cornwallis, he marched to Hillsborough, where he endeavored to incite the friends of the king to join his standard. Several companies of them were formed. One of these, on the march to join Cornwallis, was met and slaughtered by a body of Americans, whom they had mistaken for British. Between two and three hundred were killed.

Greene, having been reinforced by six hundred militia from Virginia, determined to return to North Carolina. He therefore re-crossed the Dan. For three weeks he avoided a battle, and employed his troops in cutting off the foraging parties of Cornwallis. The British next left Hillsborough and encamped near Guildford Court House. Greene, having been farther strengthened by new recruits, pursued and offered battle. On the 15th of Third month, (March,) a deadly conflict took place, which lasted for two hours, and resulted in the retreat of the Americans. The slaughter that had been made in the ranks of the British prevented pursuit. The Americans lost four hundred killed and wounded; and eight hundred of the militia were missing. These returned home and did not again join the army. Of the British, nearly one hundred were killed, upwards of four hundred wounded, and twenty-six missing.

This battle is said to have been one of the most severe that was fought during the war. After it was ended, the field presented a sad and awful spectacle. There were the dead and wounded lying promiscuously together. As soon as practicable, the wounded were removed by the British, who considered themselves the victors. But little assistance or relief could be bestowed on them, and before another day many of them were released by death from all physical suffering.

---

Battle of Camden.

---

In the expectation of being attacked, Greene made preparations for a second engagement, but the army of Cornwallis had been much lessened, and the difficulty of finding provisions in that part of the country was so great, that he thought it best to retreat toward the seaboard. On the third day after the battle, the British began their march, leaving a number of their own wounded, as well as their wounded prisoners, in a Friends' meeting-house, which they had converted into a hospital. The Americans pursued for a few days, but their sufferings had been so great from hunger and fatigue, that they halted at Ramsay's Mills for refreshment and rest. Here Greene concluded to give up the pursuit, sensible that his force was inferior to that of Cornwallis, and proceed to Camden, South Carolina, where Lord Rawdon was stationed with a portion of the British army. 1781

Having arrived near Camden, the Americans took a position about one mile from the British encampment. Here they were attacked on the 25th of Fourth month, (April.) The action continued at intervals, through a great part of the day, when the Americans retreated, taking with them their wounded, and about sixty prisoners. The loss on both sides was nearly equal, each party having about two hundred and fifty killed, wounded and missing.

After the battle, the British returned to Camden; the American army withdrew a few miles. Some days afterward Lord Rawdon was joined by four hundred additional troops, and planned a surprise of the American camp. Greene, hearing of the reinforcement, took a more favorable position. The British followed them, but after viewing the camp, concluded it unsafe to make any attack. The situation of Rawdon and his men was becoming critical. Many of their outposts had been cut off, and it was with difficulty that supplies

---

Siege of the British post, Ninety-six.

---

1781 could be obtained. A few days afterward they burned some private houses and other buildings, with a part of their stores, and leaving Camden, marched farther south.

Several British posts in South Carolina soon after fell into the hands of different parties of Americans ; also Fort Cornwallis at Augusta, in Georgia. The presence of the American army, their activity and success, caused the disaffection of the inhabitants to burst forth, and the greater part once more revolted from British authority.

Greene next turned his attention to the western part of the State, and marched with the main body of his army against a British post styled Ninety-six, from being that number of miles from the town of Kecowee, in the Cherokee territory. It was strongly fortified, and garrisoned with five hundred men. Greene determined to besiege it. At first there was a prospect of success, but the Americans were soon informed that Rawdon had received reinforcements from Ireland, and was marching to the relief of the garrison with two thousand men. No hope remained, but of taking the place by assault. A strong effort was made, but the assailants were repulsed, and retreated northward beyond the Saluda. They had lost, in the siege and assault, one hundred and fifty-five men. Eighty-five of the garrison were killed or wounded. The Polish general, Kosciusko, who had joined the American army, was very active in this siege. Soon afterward Lord Rawdon arrived and pursued Greene as far as the river Enoree, when, despairing of overtaking him, he divided his forces, and leaving a garrison at Ninety-six, reëstablished himself on the Congaree. It is probable that Rawdon supposed Greene had left South Carolina, but the American commander had resolved to recover the State, or die in the attempt. Within two days after the arrival of the British at

---

Battle of Eutaw Springs.

---

the Congaree, one of their foraging parties was cut off, and 1781  
forty prisoners were taken. Thus notified of Greene's approach, they left the Congaree, and retreated to Orangeburgh. Here the Americans offered battle. This was declined, and the garrison at Ninety-six was summoned to join the forces under Rawdon.

This union the American general endeavored to prevent. Not succeeding, however, he sent detachments to interrupt all communication between Charleston and Orangeburgh. The supplies of the British were thus cut off, and they found it necessary to evacuate all their posts in the northern and western parts of the State. From Orangeburgh, Lord Rawdon returned to England on account of ill health. The command then devolved on Lieutenant Colonel Stuart. In order to drive his opponents still further to the south-east, Greene approached the British camp. The British then withdrew to Eutaw Springs, about sixty miles from Charleston. Here the army received a supply of provisions, and were reinforced by the arrival of some additional troops.

On the 7th of Ninth month, (Sept.) the Americans encamped about seven miles distant, and Greene resolved to attack the British next day. The forces of the two parties were nearly equal, each having about two thousand men. At four in the morning of the 8th, the Americans moved toward the British encampment. On their approach, the British prepared for the attack. This battle was perhaps more bloody than any which had occurred during the war, and lasted for four hours. It is said that at one time, the officers fought hand to hand, with the sword. The British were at length driven from the field, and fled on all sides, leaving their wounded in the hands of the Americans. The loss was very great in proportion to the numbers engaged. Of the Brit-

---

The British withdraw to Charleston.Loans from Europe.

---

1781 ish, six hundred were killed or wounded, and upwards of five hundred taken prisoners; in all, more than half of the whole number engaged in the contest. The Americans had over five hundred killed or wounded, including sixty officers.

After this disastrous battle, the British abandoned the interior of the country, and withdrew to Charleston. The Americans established a chain of posts, at a short distance from that place, and thus protected the State from their incursions. During the year the inhabitants had been exposed to various calamities. With two hostile armies traversing the country, the State nearly equally divided between Whigs and Tories, and each party apparently aiming at the extirpation of the other, the country presented a scene of carnage and misery. General Greene received a gold medal from Congress for his success in driving the British within the fortifications of Charleston.

At this period of the war, the continental currency had ceased altogether to circulate. Its depreciation had been so great, that Congress had anticipated such an event, and had taken measures to prevent any evil result. A loan of six millions of livres, nearly a million of dollars, was obtained from the king of France, and ten millions of livres were borrowed in the Netherlands, for the payment of which, the king of France became responsible. The revival of trade with the French and Spanish West Indies also introduced much gold into the country.

In the early part of this year, Virginia was invaded by a detachment of British, under Arnold. With about sixteen hundred men and a number of armed vessels, he sailed up the Chesapeake. Having landed his troops, they proceeded to Richmond, where large quantities of public stores were destroyed. Then, making Portsmouth their head-quarters,

small parties were sent over the country, destroying public and private property and burning the shipping in the Chesapeake. 1781

To protect the State, as well as to get possession of Arnold, for which some attempts had already been made, General La Fayette was sent to oppose him, with twelve hundred men. Before his arrival, two thousand troops, under General Philips, joined Arnold, and La Fayette found himself unable to prevent the British from marching through the country, committing depredations. At one time, he feared that his men would very generally forsake him. They were mostly from New England, and dreaded the southern climate. By his judicious management and urgent appeals they agreed to continue with him, and desertions became rare. He also raised money among the merchants of Baltimore, on his own bills of credit, to purchase for them shoes and some other articles of clothing. Soon afterward he marched to Richmond, where he saved a large quantity of stores and provisions from falling into the hands of the British.

It has been stated that after the battle of Guilford, Cornwallis marched to Wilmington. At that place he remained three weeks, and then proceeded to Petersburg, in Virginia, where he arrived on the 20th of Fifth month, (May.) Here he was joined by the British forces already in that State.

La Fayette was at this time expecting a reinforcement of eight hundred men from Pennsylvania, under General Wayne. The junction with these Cornwallis endeavored to prevent, and also made a further attempt to get possession of the supplies which La Fayette had removed from Richmond. For this purpose, he stationed himself between the Americans and the stores, and when he felt sure of obtaining possession of them, the Americans, by opening in the night a short

---

Cornwallis at Yorktown.

---

1781 road which the British supposed impassable, encamped sufficiently near to preserve them.

Cornwallis now withdrew to Williamsburgh, and La Fayette followed, having been joined by the troops from Pennsylvania, as well as other reinforcements. Here the British general received orders to send immediately a detachment to New York, as Clinton had learned, by intercepted letters from Washington to Congress, that an attack on New York was in contemplation, by the combined French and American forces. Cornwallis believing that with a diminished number of troops, he would not be able to maintain his position at Williamsburgh, crossed the James river with his army, and proceeded to Portsmouth. When he entered the State he was sanguine of success, but La Fayette had eluded his efforts to intercept him, had frustrated some of his plans and followed him with an army continually increasing in strength, and now it required the utmost vigilance to maintain his ground. Before the troops for New York had sailed, counter directions were received, Clinton having now no expectation of an attack. Cornwallis was also directed not to leave the Chesapeake, but to establish a defensive post for the reception of ships of the line, as the British fleet would probably soon arrive there from the West Indies.

Yorktown, on the south side of York river, and Gloucester Point, on the opposite side, were selected as the most suitable places. Portsmouth was evacuated. The army proceeded up the Chesapeake bay and York river, and on the 1st of Eighth month, (Aug.,) took possession of these two places and were immediately employed in strongly fortifying them.

At an interview held on the 21st of Fifth month, (May,) between General Washington and the French commanders, it had been resolved to unite the French and American

---

Arnold at New London.

---

forces in an attack on New York. Plans were made for 1781 considerable reinforcements, but the militia arrived slowly. During the delay, Clinton was strengthened by the addition of three thousand Germans. This augmentation of the British force, with information of the position of Cornwallis at Yorktown, also that a French fleet was destined for the Chesapeake, induced Washington to change the plan of operations and march south in order to join the army in Virginia.

The appearance of preparations for an attack on New York was maintained. The fact of Washington's letter detailing the plan having been intercepted, rendered it more easy to deceive Clinton. Leaving the command of the posts on the Hudson to General Heath, Washington commenced his march in such a manner as to lead Clinton to suppose his first object was to obtain possession of Staten Island. The British commander therefore increased his exertions to strengthen his position, and it was not until the whole army had crossed the Delaware, that he was undeceived. It was then too late to make arrangements for pursuit. He therefore sent an expedition against New London, which he hoped would call the Americans back, but Washington persevered in his undertaking.

The command of the detachment sent against New London, was given to Arnold. On the 6th of Ninth month, (Sept.,) the troops were landed. A part, under Lieutenant Colonel Eyre, attacked Fort Griswold at Groton, on the east side of the river, while Arnold proceeded to New London. But little resistance was made at the latter place, and the British entered the town. Fort Griswold was defended by the small garrison, but after desperate fighting, the assailants obtained possession. The commander was killed by a British officer, after resistance had ceased. This seemed to be the

---

Burning of the town.Americans strengthened in Virginia.

---

1781 signal for a general massacre. Of one hundred and sixty men composing the garrison, all but forty were killed or wounded, many of them after the surrender had been made. The British lost forty-three killed and one hundred and forty-five wounded. New London was then burned and a very large amount of property destroyed. Having consummated this vindictive proceeding, Arnold and his men returned to New York.

At Chester, Washington learned that Admiral De Grasse had entered the Chesapeake, with a fleet of twenty-eight sail of the line. This was a force sufficiently strong to prevent the escape of the British by water. Cheered by this information the army pressed forward, and on the 25th of Ninth month, (Sept.,) the last division of the allied forces reached Williamsburgh, the place appointed for their meeting, a few miles distant from York. The whole number of troops amounted to twelve thousand. A partial engagement had already taken place, between the British and French fleets. On the arrival of De Grasse, three large ships and some frigates were sent to blockade James river; the remainder anchored in the bay. Thirty-two hundred troops were landed, and effected a junction with La Fayette, who was stationed to prevent the escape of Cornwallis into North Carolina. When the British vessels, which were expected to arrive from the West Indies, appeared off the capes, De Grasse sailed out to meet them. Some fighting took place, but more manoeuvring on the part of the French. The object of this was to afford an opportunity for a French fleet from Newport, which De Grasse was expecting, to enter the Chesapeake. These vessels had met with some detention, and sailed into the bay in the course of the following night. De Grasse now returned to his former position in the bay. The British, in

---

Siege of Yorktown.

---

consequence of this accession of strength to their opponents, 1781 sailed for New York.

Cornwallis had determined to await the issue of a siege, hoping to be relieved by the fleet from the West Indies, and also, having received despatches from Clinton, announcing his intention of sending assistance from New York. His main army was encamped about Yorktown, within a range of fortifications. Tarleton, with six or seven hundred men, was stationed at Gloucester Point, on the opposite side of the river; a communication being kept up between them by batteries and several ships of war.

On the 27th of Ninth month, (Sept.,) the main body of the Americans marched, by different routes, toward Yorktown. Having reached the ground assigned them, they encamped for the night, after driving in some of the British outposts. The next day the plan of attack was arranged. A detachment was sent to enclose the garrison at Gloucester Point. The French fleet in the river effectually prevented escape in that direction, as well as cut off all supplies or reinforcements. The besieging army was employed until the 26th of Tenth month, (Oct.,) in making various arrangements and conveying the artillery and stores from the landing place on James river, a distance of six miles. On that night they commenced erecting a parallel within six hundred yards of the British lines. The night was dark and rainy. The besiegers worked with silence and diligence, and were not discovered until morning, when their works were raised sufficiently to protect them. By the afternoon of the 9th, several batteries were completed, and a heavy cannonade was commenced. The continual discharge of shot and shells damaged some unfinished works of the British, dismounted some of their guns and killed a number of men. Some of the shells

---

Surrender of Cornwallis.

---

1781 passed over the town, and reaching the shipping in the harbor, set on fire several vessels.

On the 11th, another parallel was commenced, three hundred yards in advance of the former, and three days were employed in completing it. The fire from these batteries was more furious and destructive than that from the others. It was next considered necessary to gain possession of two redoubts, about two hundred yards from the British works, the fire from them being destructive to the Americans in their new position. To encourage a spirit of emulation, the command of the enterprise against one of these, was committed to an American, that against the other to a Frenchman. Both were successful, though attended with considerable loss of life.

A sortie was made from the garrison on the 16th. The party committed some damage to the American batteries, but was soon obliged to return. Cornwallis now concluded that the only hope of avoiding a surrender, was by crossing to Gloucester Point, and forcing his way through the troops surrounding it. Reduced to this necessity, he prepared as many boats as could be procured. The first division of his army landed in safety. A storm of wind and rain afterward arose, which forced him to abandon the project.

On the 17th, several new batteries were opened. The works of the British were sinking rapidly under the powerful cannonades. Cornwallis begged for a cessation of hostilities for twenty-four hours. In reply, Washington expressed his desire to spare the further effusion of blood, but refused to suspend hostilities for more than two hours. Cornwallis then proposed that commissioners should be appointed to agree on terms of surrender. On the 19th, the terms were ratified by the respective commanders. Yorktown and Gloucester

---

Terms of capitulation.

---

ter Point, with all the British troops, seven thousand in 1781 number, and the stores, were surrendered to the United States ; the naval force to France. The troops were to remain prisoners of war in Virginia, Maryland and Pennsylvania, with officers for their protection and government. The remainder of the officers were allowed to return to Europe, or to reside in any part of the United States not held by the British ; and all, both officers and soldiers, were permitted to retain their private property. The privilege was granted to Cornwallis, of sending a sloop of war, unsearched, to New York, with despatches to General Clinton, the vessel to be afterward given up. On board of this sloop many Tories escaped. General Lincoln was appointed to receive the submission of the royal army in the same manner as had been prescribed to him on his surrender at Charleston. During the siege, five hundred and fifty of the garrison were either killed or wounded ; and three hundred of the French and Americans.

The British commander in New York had been anxious to relieve Cornwallis from his perilous situation, but the fleet had sustained damage in the engagement with De Grasse, and considerable time was necessarily spent in repairing it. On the 19th of Tenth month, (Oct.,) the day on which the terms of capitulation were signed, Clinton embarked with seven thousand of his best troops. The fleet did not reach the entrance of the Chesapeake until the 24th. Here information was received of the event which proved so fatal to the British cause in America, and Clinton, with his troops, returned to New York.

The surrender of Cornwallis caused the liveliest sensations of joy and gratitude throughout the country. A prospect seemed now to open for a speedy termination of the war. Congress passed a vote of thanks to each of the commanders, and to all engaged in the siege.

1781 The British forces in the United States from this time were confined to New York, Charleston, and Savannah. From these places, they occasionally made excursions for the purpose of foraging and plunder, but found themselves unable to undertake any thing for the active prosecution of the war.

The loss of a second entire army extinguished the hope which the people of Great Britain had entertained of the success of their cause in America, and they strongly and urgently demanded the termination of a ruinous war. George III, however, felt unwilling to relinquish his hold on the colonies, and in a speech to Parliament, declared that he could not consent to sacrifice "to their temporary ease and relief, those essential rights and permanent interests, on the maintenance and preservation of which, the future strength and security of the country must forever depend."

Earnest debates ensued in the House of Commons. Lord North, prime minister, avowed the intention of the ministers still to prosecute the war. Excellent speeches were made in favor of peace. Burke spoke of the rights which it had been contended could not be given up. "Valuable rights! that have cost Britain thirteen provinces, four islands, one hundred thousand men, and more than seventy millions of money." "That have taken from us our trade, our manufactures and commerce."

Various motions were made for the discontinuance of the war, but Lord North was strenuous in his opposition. At each renewal of the debate, his majority lessened, until finally the peace party gained the ascendancy. The prime minister consequently retired from office, and was succeeded by the Marquis of Rockingham. His efforts were directed to the cause of peace, but in consequence of his decease, the Earl of Shelburne was very soon appointed to fill the office. The

---

Suspension of hostilities.

---

other ministers afterward generally resigned, and a new cabinet was formed. 1782

The energies of the ministry were now directed toward the negotiation of peace with the United States, and commissioners were appointed for this purpose. Early in the spring of 1782, pacific overtures were made, and hostilities were suspended.

Congress had already commissioned John Adams, of Massachusetts, to treat with the British government, whenever they should express a desire for peace. He had been appointed minister to Holland, and had been the means of obtaining a treaty of amity and commerce with that nation. The treaty was concluded on the 8th of Tenth month, (Oct.,) 1782, the independence of the United States having been acknowledged on the 19th of Fourth month, (April.) With Adams were now united Benjamin Franklin, John Jay and Henry Laurens. Franklin was minister to France, Jay was a citizen of New York, and much beloved for the excellence of his character. He represented the United States in Spain. Laurens was a native of South Carolina, and had been appointed minister to Holland. In crossing the Atlantic, the vessel was captured by a British cruiser, and Laurens was sent to the tower of London, on a charge of treason. Edmund Burke plead his cause in Parliament, and he was soon after liberated, and exchanged for General Burgoyne.

Other nations had been involved in the war between the United States and Great Britain, and all parties were now desirous of peace. The French fleet, after sailing to the West Indies, had been defeated in an engagement with the English, and De Grasse taken prisoner. Spain was discouraged by the loss of Gibraltar, which she could not retake from the English, and Holland was anxious to renew her commerce.

---

Treaty of peace signed.

---

- 1782 The commissioners met at Paris. Their negotiations were protracted by the claims of the several parties interested. They had been instructed, in conformity to a treaty with France, not to conclude a peace without the consent of that government. Great Britain acknowledged the independence of the thirteen United States, but the right of fishery on the banks of Newfoundland and the boundaries of the States, subjects of importance to the young nation, and in which France felt little interest, were matters of controversy. The Spanish envoys exerted themselves to procure the restoration of Gibraltar by England to Spain. In this they were unsuccessful. Preliminary articles of peace were at length signed on the 30th of Eleventh month, (Nov.,) 1782. The conclusion of the treaty was deferred until the ratification of peace between France and England. This took place on the 20th of First month, (Jan.,) 1783, when the articles were signed by Great Britain, France and Spain. Early in Fourth month, official information of the general peace reached the United States, and was proclaimed to the army on the 19th of that month by General Washington. By the terms of the treaty between Great Britain and the United States, the independence of the thirteen States was completely acknowledged. A line running through the middle of the great chain of lakes and their connecting waters, and through the river St. Lawrence was to be their northern boundary. The Mississippi was to be the extent on the west. The right of fishing on the banks of Newfoundland was ceded to them forever.

While the negotiations were proceeding, the American troops were retained at their various stations, where they remained unemployed. They now feared they should be dismissed without being paid for their arduous and perilous ser-

---

Dissatisfaction among the troops.Army disbanded.

---

vices, and were in a state of high dissatisfaction. Many of 1783 the officers, for want of payment, had expended their private fortunes, and they were fearful of being left without any provision for future support. In 1780, Congress had passed an act, granting to the officers half-pay for life, after the close of the war ; but nine of the States refused to ratify this grant, and there seemed but little prospect of its being carried into effect. The officers now petitioned that all arrears which were due them, might be paid, and that instead of half-pay for life, a sum equal to five years full pay should be advanced or secured to them, when disbanded.

Congress delayed granting the request. This occasioned feelings of indignation among the officers, especially those stationed at Newburgh, who manifested some inclination to procure redress, in the same manner that the independence of the country had been acquired. Washington, being in the camp, assembled them together, and by a judicious appeal persuaded them to rely still longer on the disposition of Congress to do for them whatever the limited means of the nation would permit. He then addressed a letter to that body, in which he so strongly enforced the claims of the officers, that Congress was induced to grant the request so far as to agree to secure to them five years' full pay instead of half-pay for life. Soon after this, the news of the general peace was received and proclaimed to the army.

Large arrears were still due, and many apprehensions were felt of a revolt, in case the army should be disbanded without pay. The treasury was empty ; and before the Superintendent of Finances could issue his notes for three months' pay, Congress had declared that all the soldiers engaged in the war, were to be discharged on the 3d of Dec. Many of them had not money enough to supply their most pressing

---

The British evacuate New York.

---

1783 wants, yet most of them peaceably returned to their homes, in submission to their allotment. A few marched to Philadelphia, where Congress was assembled. Having posted sentinels at the doors, they sent in a message, threatening vengeance if their requisitions were not complied with. This availed nothing. Washington immediately sent a strong detachment to Philadelphia, but the tumult had subsided. On the 25th of Eleventh month, (Nov.,) the British troops evacuated New York. General Washington soon after entered, accompanied by a number of civil and military officers and other citizens. On the 4th of Twelfth month, (Dec.,) he met the officers collectively, and took an affectionate leave of them. Then proceeding to Annapolis, where Congress was now sitting, he publicly resigned his commission as commander-in-chief of the American armies ; after which he retired to his residence at Mount Vernon, in possession of the gratitude and respect of his countrymen.

## CHAPTER XXVI.

### ADOPTION OF THE FEDERAL CONSTITUTION, AND ADMINISTRATION OF GEORGE WASHINGTON.

---

State of the finances.

Articles of Confederation insufficient.

---

ALTHOUGH the country was now at peace, the legitimate effects of the war on the finances were seriously felt. Public and private debts pressed heavily. The nation had incurred expenses of forty-two millions of dollars, for the payment of which its faith was pledged. But Congress had no power to raise money. All that body could do was to make requisitions on the States; and as these had their several debts, incurred during the Revolution, and each its domestic government to support, the requisitions were often disregarded.

The wealth of the country had been exhausted, and the means of eliciting it could not at once be brought into action. Taxes could not be collected. The Articles of Confederation, which bound the States together when they were threatened with a common danger, were now found insufficient for the purposes of government. They conferred no power to regulate commerce, which was at present regarded as the most valuable source of revenue. Congress could make no treaty with foreign nations, which would be binding on the several States. Each State made its own commercial regulations, and these frequently came into collision. In their foreign intercourse one would sometimes pursue a system injurious to another. The trade between the States was also fettered by

---

Insurrection in Massachusetts.

---

1786 many restrictions. Under these circumstances, commerce languished, and the development of the resources of the country was retarded.

In New England, a large class had been reduced to comparative destitution during the Revolution, in consequence of the blockade of their ports by the British fleets, which prevented the prosecution of the fisheries, an important branch of business; as well as of all commerce. Consequently when laws were passed in Massachusetts for the collection of taxes and debts, a portion of the inhabitants were incited to open insurrection. A number, supposed to be nearly fifteen hundred, assembled under arms, and demanded that the collection of debts should be suspended. The general court passed some laws for lightening the burdens of the people, but not satisfied, three hundred of the insurgents marched to Springfield, and took possession of the court-house in order to prevent the sitting of the court. The number of rioters then increased so considerably that a large body of militia was ordered out to disperse them; when on the point of seizing the State arsenal, they were scattered by the fire of the militia. The leaders, on trial, were sentenced to death, but were afterward pardoned. A similar spirit, manifested in New Hampshire, was at once quelled by the rigorous measures of the governor.

Some difficulty having occurred in the execution of the articles in the treaty of peace, John Adams had been appointed minister to England. Here he had an opportunity of observing the defects of his own government in commercial intercourse with other nations, and as early as 1783, suggested to Congress the necessity of effecting a closer union of the States, and the propriety of enlarging the powers of the general government. Washington and other prominent

---

Convention of delegates meet.

---

men were convinced that a change in the Constitution of the country was necessary. Various propositions had been made to remedy the existing evils, but none met with the coöperation of all the States. They were thus prevented from being carried into effect. 1786

In the autumn of 1786, on the suggestion of James Madison, of Virginia, a convention of delegates from five of the Middle States met at Annapolis, the other States not having responded to the call. The object of the meeting was to devise a more uniform system of commercial regulations. After careful consideration of the subject, the commissioners came to the conclusion that nothing short of a thorough change in the existing government should be attempted. They therefore adopted a report, which was laid before Congress, in which they proposed that a general convention should be held for the revision of the Articles of Confederation, and provided for such alterations as would meet the exigencies of the nation. Congress, in consequence, recommended that a convention of delegates from all the States should assemble at Philadelphia, "for the purpose of revising the Articles of Confederation, and reporting to Congress and the several Legislatures, such alterations and provisions therein, as should, when agreed to in Congress, and confirmed by the States, render the Federal Constitution adequate to the emergencies of government and the preservation of the Union."

In compliance with this recommendation, all the States excepting Rhode Island appointed delegates. In Fifth month, (May,) 1787, the convention met, composed of the most able statesmen of the country. George Washington was unanimously elected President. After deliberating and discussing the subject for four months, they agreed on a draft of a constitution. Having been reported to Congress, it was

---

The proposed Constitution examined.

---

1787 afterward submitted for ratification, to conventions of delegates in the several States, chosen by the people.

For several months, the proposed Constitution underwent a critical examination by the people of the United States. Its various articles were discussed in the public journals, and the inhabitants were made familiar with its provisions. A series of essays, written by Madison, Jay and Hamilton, with the signature of "The Federalist," urged its adoption. It had, however, many opposers, who, much attached to liberty, feared the effects of the power to be conferred on the rulers. Two parties consequently arose, the Federalists, who were in favor of the new government, and the Anti-Federalists, who opposed it.

It was provided in the Constitution, that its ratification by nine States should be sufficient for its establishment between the States thus ratifying it. Conventions met in the different States, and in some instances, but a small majority decided in its favor. It required a mutual compromise of conflicting interests for the advantage of the whole, but after nearly a year, all the States excepting North Carolina and Rhode Island, had given it their sanction, although with some proposed amendments.

By the new Constitution, the States were connected much more closely than under the Articles of Confederation. One important point of difference was in giving Congress the regulation of commerce, as well as the ability to raise a revenue.

The general government was made to consist of three departments, legislative, executive, and judicial. The legislative or law-making department, is composed of a Senate and House of Representatives, collectively styled Congress. The former body is composed of two members from each State,

---

Its provisions.

---

who hold their office for six years, and are appointed by their respective legislatures. The Senate confirms the appointment of officers nominated by the President, and ratifies treaties. The members of the House of Representatives are elected by the people for two years, a prescribed number of inhabitants to each district being entitled to send one member. In the States where slavery exists, this required number is made up of slaves as well as of free persons, five slaves being counted as three freemen; thus allowing to the slave States a much greater number of representatives for the free inhabitants, than is accorded to the free States. 1787

The executive of the government is the President. He is appointed by electors, in the several States, chosen by the people; or by the House of Representatives, in case no person should receive a majority of all the votes of the electors, those from each State having one vote collectively. He is elected for four years, but may be removed from office by impeachment, in case of conviction of misconduct. He nominates, subject to confirmation by the Senate, all civil, military and naval officers of the general government, and is commander-in-chief of all the land and naval forces. He ratifies treaties, subject to the approbation of two-thirds of the Senate. The President also has power to pass a veto or negative on such acts of Congress as he may disapprove; which acts may subsequently be passed and become laws, by a majority of two-thirds in both Houses, without the concurrence of the President.

A Vice-President is elected at the same time, and in the same manner as the President, to fill that office in case it should become vacant by death or any other cause.

In Congress is vested the power to declare war; to raise and support armies; to provide and maintain a navy; to collect a

---

Ratification.Washington elected President.

---

1788 revenue by direct taxes and duties ; to regulate commerce, coin money, and in general, to provide for the security and welfare of the nation. Both Houses must coincide in any bill, previously to its becoming a law.

The judicial department is vested in a supreme court and such district courts as Congress may establish. All questions arising under the laws of the United States come under the cognizance of these courts, as well as those concerning treaties, and cases arising between individuals of different States, and between foreigners and citizens.

The requisite number of States having agreed on the Constitution, Congress took measures for organizing the new government. The first electors for the office of President were chosen, and the eyes of the country were turned on George Washington, to fill the office of chief magistrate. He was unanimously elected the first President of the United States, and John Adams Vice-President.

Washington received the information of his election while enjoying the retirement of his home at Mount Vernon. He was earnestly solicited by his friends, and yielding to the call of duty, accepted the office with diffidence and reluctance. In a letter to a friend he says, " My movements to the chair of government will be accompanied by feelings not unlike those of a culprit who is going to the place of his execution ; so unwilling am I, in the evening of a life nearly consumed in public care, to quit a peaceful abode for an ocean of difficulties, without that competency of political skill, abilities and inclination, which are necessary to manage the helm." " Integrity and firmness are all I can promise ; these, be the voyage long or short, shall never forsake me, although I may be deserted by all men ; for of the consolations that are to be derived from these, the world cannot deprive me."

---

His journey to New York.

---

His presence in New York, then the seat of government, 1789 being immediately required, Washington left Mount Vernon the second day after receiving intelligence of his appointment.\* His journey was marked with public attentions, from a people ardently attached to him.

A committee of Congress, accompanied by the heads of several of the departments of government, met him in New Jersey. On arriving in New York, they were joined by the governor and other officers of the State, and the corporation of the city, all of whom united in warm demonstrations of respect and attachment to him who had, by the united voice of the people, been chosen the first President of the United States.

---

\* The promptitude with which the President left his residence at Mount Vernon upon receiving official information of his election, may perhaps be regarded as evidence that his reluctance to engage in the toils of a new political scene, were rather affected than real. But it may be considered that while he freely declared to his most particular friends the aversion which he felt to the proffered honors, he was fully aware that with the generality of mankind he would receive little credit for sincerity. Besides, he must have clearly foreseen, long before the election took place, upon whom the choice would fall. The most sagacious actors of the day united in the opinion, and were not slow to declare it, that the office of President *must*, till the new government had passed through the first stages of its operation, be filled by George Washington. By the manner in which he had conducted the revolutionary conflict, he had acquired an influence which no other man possessed; he had given the whole weight of his character in support of the new Constitution, and had presided over the convention which formed it. He therefore could not, consistently with the principles on which he had acted through life, decline a service, however contrary to his private inclination, to which he was called by the voice of the nation. The struggle was unquestionably past before his election was announced to him, and his presence at the seat of government was indispensable.

---

Inauguration.

---

1789 The 30th of Fourth month, (April,) was fixed for the inauguration. The oath of office was administered by R. R. Livingston, Chancellor of the State of New York, in the presence of both branches of Congress and a great concourse of citizens. It is in these words:—"I do solemnly swear that I will faithfully execute the office of President of the United States, and will, to the best of my ability, preserve, protect and defend the Constitution of the United States." During this ceremony, silence prevailed throughout the multitude; but when the chancellor proclaimed Washington President of the United States, it was immediately responded to, by the discharge of thirteen guns and cheers from the thousands of spectators.

The President then retired to the Senate chamber, where in an impressive speech addressed to his "Fellow Citizens of the Senate and House of Representatives," he set forth the feelings of his heart in accepting the high honor conferred on him. He expressed a sense of incapacity "for the weighty and untried cares" before him, and trusted that the "Almighty Being, who rules over the universe, who presides in the councils of nations, and whose providential aids can supply every human defect," might "consecrate to the liberties and happiness of the people of the United States, a government instituted by themselves for those essential purposes."

He afterward addressed himself to the House of Representatives, telling them that when he was first honored with a call into the service of his country, the light in which he contemplated his duty, required that he should renounce every pecuniary compensation. From this resolution, he stated that he had in no instance departed; and that he would decline, as inapplicable to himself, any share in the personal

---

The first session of Congress.

---

emoluments which might be indispensably included in a permanent provision for the executive department. He desired, therefore, that the pecuniary estimates for the station in which he was placed, might, during his continuance in it, be limited to such actual expenditures as the public good should be thought to require. 1789

The first object of Congress, after the organization of the government, was the establishment of a revenue to meet the annual expenses, and to defray the debt incurred during the revolutionary war. For this purpose duties were laid on all imported goods, and on the tonnage of vessels. Laws creating the several departments of the state, of the treasury, and of war, were then enacted ; the former to include foreign as well as domestic relations. Thomas Jefferson was appointed Secretary of State, Alexander Hamilton of the Treasury, and General Knox Secretary of the War Department. A national judiciary was also constituted, and John Jay appointed Chief Justice of the Supreme Court. Some amendments to the Constitution were proposed ; which were afterward ratified by the States, and which made it more generally acceptable.

The first session of Congress lasted six months. Immediately after the adjournment, Washington made a tour through the New England States, and was every where welcomed with the greatest enthusiasm. The officers and soldiers of the army, who had been with him in suffering and in danger, greeted him with delight, and to all classes he was endeared by his virtues and talents.

During the recess of Congress, North Carolina gave up her objections to the Constitution, and entered into the compact with the other States.

In First month, (Jan.,) the next session of Congress com-

---

Report of the Secretary of the Treasury.

---

1790 menced. The President, at the opening, recommended several subjects to the members as claiming their consideration ; among which were a uniformity in the currency, weights and measures ; the promotion of agriculture, manufactures and commerce ; the encouragement of new and useful inventions ; and the establishment of post-offices and post-roads. He also suggested for their action, the forming of some provision for the defence of the country, and for the arming and disciplining of the militia. This, with Washington's views of war and of the policy of nations, he considered necessary.

At the last session, the Secretary of the Treasury had been directed to propose a plan for the establishment of the credit of the country. Accordingly he now presented a report, in which he proposed that the public debt should be funded ; but that the original loaners should be paid off by raising a loan equal to the whole amount of the debt ; also that the debts incurred by the several States for the support of the war should be assumed by the national government, and likewise funded. The interest on these debts, he proposed, should be paid by the imposition of taxes on certain articles of luxury, such as wines and teas ; also on spirits distilled within the country.

An animated discussion arose on the subjects contained in the report. The debts contracted by the continental Congress amounted to about fifty-four millions of dollars ; those of the States, to about twenty-five millions. The proposed measure of funding the debts was objected to, on the principle of aversion to public debt ; but it was finally carried ; that of assuming the debts of the States, excited a warm debate. The northern and eastern sections of the Union having been the principal seat of the war, the expenses had been mostly incurred by those States, while the southern portions of the

---

Change of the seat of government.

---

Union owed but little. It was also objected that so much 1790 power assumed by the general government would be inconsistent with the independence of the separate States. It was shown, however, that as Congress had entire control of the revenue arising from commerce and navigation, justice required that this step should be taken. The measure therefore prevailed, making a funded debt of upwards of seventy-five millions of dollars. The imposition of additional duties to meet the interest of this debt, was deferred until the next session.

These measures had a great effect in reviving the credit of the nation. The paper money, which had fallen to twelve or fifteen cents on the dollar, immediately rose to its par value. The original receivers had lost, however, as well as those through whose hands the paper had passed, who had been obliged to receive it at par, as it continued to be a *legal tender* in payment of debts. The difference was now gained by those who had bought it for speculation, and who thus received a great accumulation of wealth.

During this session of Congress, it was decided to remove the seat of government from New York to Philadelphia for ten years, and subsequently to establish it permanently at some place on the Potomac river; the selection of the spot was left with Washington as President. The next year the territory now forming the District of Columbia, was surveyed under his direction, and the city, named in honor of the President, was planned and laid out. The territory belonged to the States of Maryland and Virginia, and was ceded by them for the purpose of establishing there the national seat of government.

The relations of the United States with other governments were at this time in a very unsettled condition. The hostile

---

National bank.

---

feelings in England, engendered by the war, had not ceased ; and no minister had been sent to this country.

The revolutionary disorders in France produced misunderstanding with the United States, and Spain manifested jealousy on account of the successful revolt of some of her colonies. Florida and Louisiana were under her dominion. The possession of the latter province gave Spain the control of the Mississippi, and its navigation was refused to the people of the United States.

A treaty had been formed with the Barbary States. This was not found sufficient, however, to protect the ships of the new government, the vessels frequently being seized, and the officers and crew sometimes kept in bondage for several years.

1791 During the session of Congress held early in 1791, the States of Vermont and Kentucky were admitted into the Union. Vermont had been formerly claimed both by New York and New Hampshire, but in 1777, the inhabitants had declared themselves independent, and refused to submit to either. Kentucky had been a part of Virginia, but was encouraged by that State to form a separate government, and on its application to Congress, an act was passed for its admission, to go into effect the first of Sixth month, (June,) in the following year. Rhode Island, one of the original thirteen, had given up her objections to the Constitution, and had joined the Confederacy in 1790.

Congress proceeded now to consider a proposition made by Hamilton for the establishment of a national bank. This measure was violently opposed, and pronounced by the anti-federalist or republican party, to be aristocratic and adverse to republicanism. It was insisted that Congress had no power to incorporate such an institution ; and its necessity wa

---

Further measures of Congress.

---

denied. The bill, however, passed both Houses, and was sent 1791 to Washington for his approval. Being extremely guarded against infringing the Constitution, he obtained the opinions of the Secretaries of the Treasury and of the State, and having examined the subject in all its bearings, he approved the bill, and the establishment of a national bank was decided. It was chartered for twenty years, with a capital of ten millions, to be located in Philadelphia, then the seat of government. Branch banks were authorized in several of the seaports.

The bill for laying taxes on wines, teas and some other luxuries, was now passed, as well as for an excise on spirits distilled within the country, agreeably to the suggestion of the Secretary of the Treasury for raising a revenue to meet the interest on the national debt. The latter tax was violently opposed, but no more suitable means of raising the necessary revenue could be shown.

The effect of the measures which Congress had taken for the prosperity of the country, was soon felt. Property, which had been greatly depreciated, rose in value, and a new impetus was given to different departments of industry.

In order to determine the ratio of representation, the Constitution required that a census of the population should be taken once in ten years. The first was completed this year, when it appeared that the whole number of inhabitants was three millions nine hundred and twenty-one thousand three hundred and twenty-six, of whom six hundred and ninety-five thousand six hundred and fifty-five were held as slaves.

For several years a warfare had existed between the Creek Indians and the inhabitants of Georgia. In 1790, they were induced to accept pacific overtures which were made to them, and their chief went to New York to conclude a treaty.

---

Expedition against the Indians.

---

1791 The Indians northwest of the Ohio cherished vengeance for past hostilities, and carried on a desultory warfare, attacking and plundering the settlers, and burning their houses and villages. All offers of peace having been rejected by them, Washington considered it necessary to send an army against them. Accordingly in the autumn of 1790, about fourteen hundred men, under the command of General Harmer, were sent to destroy their settlements on the Sciota and Wabash rivers. A detachment going forward to ascertain the position of the Indians, the latter set fire to their principal village, and retired to the woods. A second detachment coming in sight of the Indians, the militia were alarmed and fled. A small body of regular troops encountered their opponents, who were much superior in number. Twenty-three being killed, the survivors, who were but seven, made their escape, and rejoined the army.

After this defeat, the American commander proceeded to burn all the Indian towns on the Sciota. He then despatched a force of three hundred and sixty men, to bring on, if possible, a battle. They were soon attacked by a large body of Indians, and being overpowered by numbers, they retreated, leaving one hundred and nine men dead on the field.

Emboldened by these victories, the attacks of the Indians on the frontier settlements were more vigorous, and for a time the inhabitants were exposed to all the sufferings of an Indian war. In the autumn of the following year, 1791, an army of two thousand men was raised, the command of which was given to General St. Clair, then governor of the North-West Territory. With this force he marched into the wilderness, with the intention of destroying the Indian villages on the Miami; a course not very well calculated to soothe the savages, or put an end to their thirst for revenge. About fifteen

---

Retreat of the Americans.

---

miles south of the villages they halted for the arrival of 1791  
a detachment which had been sent in pursuit of some  
deserters.

The next morning before sunrise, they were unexpectedly  
attacked and surrounded by the Indians, who, protected by  
the trees, fired on them, and were seldom seen excepting  
when springing from one hiding place to another. Shooting  
at a concealed enemy producing little effect, the Americans had  
recourse to the bayonet, and drove the Indians a distance of  
about four hundred yards. They soon, however, returned.  
The slaughter continued very great among the Americans, until  
their only resort was to attack a body of Indians who had  
intercepted their retreat, and thus to reach the road. Being  
successful in this, a disorderly fight commenced. The Indians  
pursued for about four miles, when their desire for plunder  
induced them to return to the camp of their vanquished  
foes.

In this battle six hundred and thirty-one of the Americans  
were killed, and two hundred and forty-two wounded. The  
loss of the Indians could not be estimated. It was probably  
much smaller. This disastrous defeat induced Congress to  
resolve on a vigorous prosecution of the war, and to raise the  
military force to five thousand men.

Washington's term of office being about to expire, he had 1792  
entertained a strong wish to retire from the cares of public  
life, and had already prepared a farewell address to the peo-  
ple. He was, however, induced to relinquish this determina-  
tion, and was again unanimously elected President. John  
Adams was chosen Vice-President.

The French Revolution had at this time reached its height.  
Louis XVI had been beheaded, and the form of a republic  
instituted. To the general war, which had arisen in conse-

---

French revolution.Neutrality of the United States.

---

1793 quence of the effort to overthrow royalty in France, the people of the United States could not remain entirely indifferent. In the early stages of the Revolution, but one sentiment respecting it prevailed. The people looked to it as a means of extending the blessings of liberty, and regarded the war in which the powers of Europe were engaged, as one for extirpating free governments.

Washington hoped for a favorable result from the efforts of France to establish a republican form of government, yet he did not wish to involve his country in the event, nor did he forget that the aid rendered the United States in her efforts for independence, had been furnished by the family whose fall was now the triumph of the republican party. He therefore determined on neutrality as the course for the United States to pursue.

A disposition had already become manifest in some of the seaports of the United States, to fit out privateers and attack the enemies of France on the high seas. Washington immediately wrote to the Secretary of State on the subject. In this letter, he expressed his opinion that the government should "use all the means in its power, to prevent the citizens thereof from embroiling this country with the powers of France or Great Britain, by endeavoring to maintain a strict neutrality." In a cabinet council a proclamation was unanimously agreed on, forbidding the citizens of the United States "to take part in any hostilities on the seas with or against any of the belligerent powers," and prohibiting "all acts inconsistent with the duties of a friendly nation toward those at war."

The new government of France had withdrawn the minister appointed by Louis XVI, and was about sending another in his place. There were members of the cabinet who con-

---

Citizen Genet.

---

sidered the treaty with that nation as not now binding. The 1793  
fury and injustice of the Jacobin club at Paris, had raised  
scruples in their minds, as to the validity of the course of the  
French republican party, and excited a doubt whether that  
party was now in power by the consent of the people, or by  
violence, and whether the new system would be permanent,  
or only temporary. They were therefore of the opinion that  
the United States "should reserve for future consideration  
and discussion, the question whether the operation of those  
treaties ought not to be deemed temporarily and provisionally  
suspended." It was finally agreed that the new minister  
should be received without any mention being made to him  
relative to the discussion on the validity of the treaty.

The person selected to fill the office of minister to the  
United States, was citizen Genet, a man of considerable talent  
and of an ardent disposition. His instructions and the  
letters which he brought to the President, were respectful and  
flattering to the nation. He arrived at Charleston in the  
spring. Instead of proceeding immediately to Philadelphia,  
he remained in the former place several days, authorizing the  
fitting out and arming of vessels, to cruise as privateers against  
nations with whom the United States were at peace. He was  
welcomed in Charleston with a great deal of enthusiasm, and  
on his land journey to Philadelphia, received many marks of  
public favor. These attentions led him to suppose that the  
people and the government were actuated by similar feelings.  
A large body of the people were still favorable to the French  
interests, many of them willing to aid a country struggling for  
liberty, but more who were anxious to repay the obligation  
which they felt their country owed to France, and who were  
yet ignorant to which party their obligations were due.

Intelligence of the proceedings of Genet reached Philadel-

---

The minister's recall.

---

1793 phia before his arrival in that city, yet he was there welcomed with warm demonstrations of friendship. The British minister complained of his course at Charleston, which had already resulted in the capture of a British vessel, sailing from Philadelphia, by a French frigate within the capes of Delaware Bay.

When remonstrated with for his entire disregard of the proclamation of the government, recommending neutrality, he replied that the treaty between France and the United States sanctioned such measures, and that "any obstructions put upon them would not only be infractions of the treaty, but treason against the rights of man."

Two individuals were arrested for cruising in the service of France. Their release was demanded by Genet. In this requisition, he was supported by numerous adherents, and was so far encouraged by the countenance received from American citizens, that he actually sent out a privateer from Philadelphia, the seat of the federal government, during the absence of the President.

Thomas Jefferson, Secretary of State, was directed by Washington, to lay before the French minister, the principles which would regulate the conduct of the Executive, on the subjects at issue. The manner of the minister was insolent and offensive, and he threatened to appeal from the President to the people, who only, he said, possessed the sovereignty in a democratic State.

This threat opened the eyes of those who had sustained him in the course he had pursued. Their confidence in Washington remained unabated, and they became sensible of the danger of permitting a foreigner to cause dissensions among them. The warmest admirers of Genet now deserted him, and the President demanded and obtained his recall.

---

Defeat of the Indians.Treaty of peace.

---

Although the conduct of Genet lessened the numbers of the republican party, yet many retained a strong sympathy for the French nation, whom they considered as struggling for liberty, with the combined forces of Europe. Much warmth of feeling was manifested in the contests between the two parties, and over them Washington watched with anxious solicitude.

After the defeat of General St. Clair by the Indians in 1791, General Wayne was appointed to the command of the American forces. After protracted endeavors to negotiate a peace, he marched against them in 1794, at the head of three thousand men. In an action which took place in the vicinity of one of the British garrisons, on the banks of the Miami, the Indians were totally defeated, and fled without renewing the engagement. Their houses and corn-fields were then destroyed, and a considerable extent of territory was laid waste. The following year a treaty of peace was concluded, which gave security to the frontier settlements.

The tax which had been imposed on spirits distilled within the country, was unpopular in some parts of the Union, especially in western Pennsylvania, where whiskey had become an extensive article of trade. A spirit of opposition there became manifest, as soon as the law had been published. Meetings were held in order to excite public resentment against those who should willingly pay the tax, but especially against the officers appointed to collect it, and forcible resistance was encouraged.

In the summer of 1792, the law was revised, but the principle of excise was unpopular. Legal order was set at defiance, and the officers were prevented from the discharge of their duties. A proclamation was issued by the President, admonishing all persons to desist from illegal proceedings,

---

Riotous proceedings in Pennsylvania.

---

and calling on the magistrates to use their endeavors to bring those who still continued to offend, to justice. This proved of no avail. The marshal was resisted and fired upon, while in the performance of his official duties. The house of the inspector of the revenue was attacked by a body of five hundred insurgents, who set fire to contiguous out-buildings, and thus obliged the soldiers who were guarding the house, to surrender. The females had previously been removed, and the inspector had also withdrawn to a place of concealment.

1794 The insurgents had avowed their determination to oppose, by force, the authority of the United States, in order to extort a repeal of the obnoxious law. The President now felt bound to compel obedience, and concluded to overawe the rebels, by a show of superior force. The greatest strength of the insurgents was known to be about seven thousand men. Washington therefore called out a part of the militia of Pennsylvania and the neighboring States, to the number of about fifteen thousand. These were placed under the command of Governor Lee, of Virginia, who marched into the disaffected counties. The insurgents shrunk from a contest with a force so superior, and offered no resistance. A few of the most active leaders were seized and detained, although they were subsequently pardoned. In order to insure peace, a detachment of militia was stationed for the winter in the disaffected country.

Early in 1793, a report had been made to Congress, by Thomas Jefferson, Secretary of State, showing that the exports of this country, in articles of domestic produce and manufacture, then amounted to nineteen and a half millions of dollars, and the imports to nearly twenty millions. The following year Jefferson resigned the office of Secretary of

---

Differences with England.

---

State, having performed the duties with great ability. He 1794  
was considered the leader of the republican party, and  
was succeeded as Secretary of State, by Edmund Randolph of  
Virginia.

Since the conclusion of the revolutionary war Great Britain and the United States had each complained that the other had violated the stipulations contained in the treaty. The former power retained certain military posts in the western section of the United States, the possession of which interfered with the Americans in their pursuit of the fur trade. By the terms of the treaty, these were to have been relinquished. In consequence of an order of the British government for the seizure of provisions going to the ports of France, American vessels were continually stopped and searched by English cruisers. Merchantmen belonging to the United States were also entered, in port as well as at sea, for the purpose of claiming any who might be considered British subjects, and carrying them off to be employed in the royal navy. On the other hand the American government was accused of preventing the loyalists from regaining possession of their estates, and British subjects from recovering debts contracted before the war.

John Jay having been appointed Envoy Extraordinary to the court of Great Britain, by a firm, dignified and judicious course of conduct, succeeded in negotiating a treaty with that government.

By the treaty, England agreed to evacuate the posts hitherto occupied by her, within the limits of the United States, and the latter nation to allow every facility for the recovery of debts to English creditors. Indemnification was promised for several illegal captures, although no provision was made to prevent the searching of American merchant vessels, or

---

Treaty with England.

---

the impressment of American seamen. Vessels of the United States, under seventy tons, were allowed to trade with the British West India Islands, provided the products of the Islands were carried to the ports of the United States only, and provided no such products, raised in the United States, were conveyed to Europe. This would prevent the cotton of the Southern States being shipped to the ports of  
1795 Europe. A few years previously, this article had been raised in small quantities, scarcely sufficient for domestic consumption, but now, by the invention of the cotton gin, it had become a staple production.

In the spring of the following year, the treaty was laid before the Senate. It was the most favorable that could be obtained, and both the minister and the President believed it for the interest of the country that it should be ratified, as the conviction was felt that from the nature of the existing differences, war was inevitable should this attempt to adjust them prove unsuccessful. After a considerable discussion on the subject, the Senate concurred with the President in the ratification of the treaty.

While this document was under discussion, the republican party were violent in their denunciations respecting it, considering it as a mark of ingratitude to France. Public meetings were held in various parts of the Union, at which, decided disapprobation was manifested, and an earnest wish expressed that the President would withhold his approbation. When, however, the determination of Washington became known, such were his popularity and influence over the minds of the people, that the clamor against it became less violent, and the friends of the treaty ventured to speak out more boldly in its favor. The increased prosperity of the country and the stimulus given to commerce demonstrate the wisdom of the President's decision.

---

Treaty with Spain.Jealousy of France.

---

During this year, treaties were concluded with Algiers and 1795 with Spain. The latter country, fearing the influence of republican principles on her American provinces, had continued to be unfriendly to the United States, and still denied the settlers west of the Alleghanies, access to the ocean through the Mississippi. The utmost exertions of the Executive had hitherto been unable to effect an adjustment of the difficulties, but becoming embarrassed at home by a war with France, Spain now signified her willingness to enter into negotiations, should a special minister be sent to Madrid for that purpose. Accordingly Thomas Pinckney was appointed, and the terms of a treaty were arranged. In the autumn of this year, it was signed, and the free navigation of the Mississippi secured to the citizens of the United States, as well as the privilege of landing and depositing cargoes at New Orleans.

While amicable adjustments were thus being made with different nations of Europe, the conduct of France toward the United States continued to be a source of increasing trouble. Having assisted them in their struggle for independence, she looked for something different from neutrality, now that she had become engaged in a war for the liberties of her people.

The treaty with England particularly excited her resentment. The arrival of a new minister from France, and his extravagant addresses, enlisted the feelings of many in the United States, and showed that party spirit was still very strong. Washington, however, firmly adhered to the neutral policy, and the administration was charged with hostile feelings toward the allies of the nation.

Another change was soon after made in the ministry. The present envoy brought with him the colors of France.

---

Washington's Farewell Address.

---

1791 They were received by the President and Congress with great ceremony, and were deposited with the national archives. A resolution was passed by the House of Representatives, expressing their interest in the French republic, and their hope that the liberty and happiness of the French people might become perfectly established.

Mere professions were not sufficient to satisfy the government of France. She wished to make the United States a party to the war in which she was engaged with the nations of Europe. Jealous of the negotiations which had been carried on with England, she adopted regulations detrimental to American commerce, and directed her cruisers, in certain cases, to attack the shipping of the United States. Many vessels loaded with valuable cargoes were consequently taken, and every thing was confiscated.

Washington's second term of office was about to expire. He had devoted a great portion of his life to his country, and now saw her in the enjoyment of prosperity, with an increasing population, wealth and commerce, and without difficulties with any country excepting France, and there was reason to hope these would soon be adjusted. He now determined to retire to private life, and no consideration could induce him to accept a re-nomination to the presidency. His age excused him from further service, and two terms he considered long enough for one person to fill the highest office in the gift of the people.

In the autumn, Washington announced his decision to his fellow citizens in a farewell address, strongly marked with wisdom, and with the deep interest he felt in the lasting prosperity of the country. From experience he had become acquainted with dangers to which the country was exposed, and warned his countrymen against them. He spoke of the

---

His retirement from office.

---

baneful effects of party spirit, and guarded them against its excessive indulgence. He was well aware, and expressed his conviction, that "virtue or morality is a necessary spring of popular government," and urged the importance of promoting institutions for the general diffusion of knowledge. 1796

This address was read throughout the country with feelings of veneration for its author. Several of the State legislatures inserted it entire on their records, and most of them passed resolutions expressive of their high sense of the character of Washington, of the services he had rendered his country, and of the deep feelings with which they contemplated his retirement from office.

The two great political parties brought forward their respective candidates for the presidency. The federalists were active in their exertions to elect John Adams, with the desire that the system of measures pursued by Washington, might be carried out. The republicans were equally anxious for the election of Thomas Jefferson. The result was the choice of the former for President, and the latter for Vice-President.

Washington witnessed their inauguration on the 4th of 1797 Third month, (March,) 1797, and then, released from public duties, retired to his estate at Mount Vernon, to the enjoyment of domestic life in the country, and to the pursuits of agriculture.

## CHAPTER XXVII.

ADMINISTRATIONS OF JOHN ADAMS, THOMAS  
JEFFERSON AND JAMES MADISON.

---

Difficulties with France.

---

1797 THE most important subject which at once engaged the attention of the new President, was the state of affairs with France. Despatches were received from Charles C. Pinckney, the American minister at Paris, recently appointed in the place of James Munroe, conveying the information that the French Directory, at that time holding the executive power, had refused to accredit him, and expressed their determination not to receive another minister from the United States, until existing grievances had been redressed. He was soon after obliged, by a written mandate, to leave the country, and the French Directory authorized the capture of American vessels, wherever found.

Congress was immediately convened. The President laid before them, in a speech which evinced much firmness of purpose, the aggressive conduct of France. While he urged upon them to provide effectually for the defence of the nation, he announced his intention of making one more attempt at negotiation "on terms not incompatible with the rights, duties, interests and honor of the nation." In pursuance of this intention three envoys were appointed to proceed to the French republic; Charles C. Pinckney, the former minister, who had gone to Amsterdam on being obliged to leave France, John Marshall of Virginia, and Elbridge Gerry

---

American envoys not received.

---

of Massachusetts. They were instructed to seek a reconciliation by means consistent with the honor of the United States, but the rights of the government were not to be surrendered. 1797

Whilst anxiously awaiting the result of this mission, most of the important business in the United States was at a stand, and the minds of the people were excited by receiving accounts of the captures of American vessels by French cruisers. A proposition to arm for defence was postponed by a very small majority in Congress.

On arriving in Paris, the envoys were informed that they could not be received by the Directory. They were, however, informally addressed by the agents of Talleyrand, the minister of foreign affairs. A large sum of money was demanded before any negotiation could be opened, besides an amount to be held at the disposal of Talleyrand, designed for the Directory and ministers. The envoys decidedly refused to comply with this demand. Strong efforts were made to bring over the ministers to the views of these agents, until the envoys declined holding any further communication with them. They remained several months in Paris, endeavoring to obtain a reception, when two of them, who were federalists, were ordered to leave France. E. Gerry, being a republican, was permitted to remain.

The information of these proceedings excited general indignation in the United States. Congress adopted vigorous measures. The treaty with France was declared to be no longer in force. Authority was given for capturing French armed vessels which might appear off the coast. Provision was made for raising a regular army, and for increasing it if occasion should require. Additional taxes were laid, and an alien law was passed for getting rid of French emissaries. 1798

Negotiations with France.

Treaty of peace.

By this law the President was authorized to compel suspected foreigners to leave the country. A minority in Congress opposed these enactments, and opposition subsequently showed itself when preparations were made for carrying them into effect. George Washington was once more appointed commander-in-chief of the army. He expressed himself satisfied that every endeavor had been made to avert war, and accepted the office with great reluctance.

It did not appear, however, that France had any idea of invading America. Several desperate engagements took place at sea. The French frigate *L'Insurgent*, of forty guns, was captured after a severe action by the *Constellation*, of thirty-eight guns, commanded by Commodore Truxton.

1798 It was deemed necessary by the American government to send cruisers to the West Indies for the protection of the commerce of the United States. Many French vessels were captured by these, others were injured, and one arrived in port in a sinking condition. In some instances a large part of the crew was either killed or wounded, generally of the defeated party, while the victors lost but comparatively few. Two American vessels were never heard of after sailing, and it is supposed they foundered at sea.

The French Directory, by this time, had become desirous of peace, and made overtures for a renewal of negotiations. The President appointed Oliver Ellsworth, Patrick Henry and William Van Murray envoys to Paris. On their arrival, they found that the Directory had fallen, and Bonaparte had succeeded to the authority. The envoys were promptly accredited, and a treaty of peace was concluded, which was duly ratified by both parties in the autumn of the year 1800.

While these negotiations were pending, the earthly career of the illustrious Washington terminated. He died at his

---

Death of Washington.

---

residence at Mount Vernon, on the 14th of Twelfth month, 1799 (Dec.), 1799, in the sixty-eighth year of his age, after an illness of one day, of inflammation of the throat, produced by a cold. When the information reached Congress, much emotion was manifest. In the House of Representatives, one of the members proposed an adjournment, saying that "after receiving intelligence of a national calamity so heavy and afflicting," they were illy fitted for any public business. Both Houses adjourned until the next day.

On again assembling, the House of Representatives resolved "that the speaker's chair be shrouded with black, and that the members and officers of the House wear black during the session ;" also that a committee, in connection with one from the Senate, be appointed to consider "the most suitable manner of paying honor to the memory of the man, first in war, first in peace, and first in the hearts of his fellow citizens."

In an address to the President on the occasion, the Senate wrote as follows. "This event, so distressing to all our fellow citizens, must be peculiarly heavy to you, who have long been associated with him in deeds of patriotism. Permit us, sir, to mingle our tears with yours. On this occasion, it is manly to weep. To lose such a man, at such a crisis, is no common calamity to the world. Our country mourns a father. The Almighty Disposer of human events has taken from us our greatest benefactor and ornament. It becomes us to submit with reverence to Him who 'maketh darkness his pavilion.' " "Let his countrymen consecrate the memory of the heroic general, the patriotic statesman and the virtuous sage. Let them teach their children never to forget that the fruits of his labors and his example are their inheritance."

Marks of affliction were exhibited throughout the United

---

Thomas Jefferson elected President.

---

States, and in every part of the country funeral orations were delivered.

1800 Public buildings having been erected, the officers of government removed during this year to Washington; and in Eleventh month, (Nov.,) Congress met at the new seat of government for the first time.

The term for which John Adams was elected President being about to expire, another opportunity was afforded for a warm contest between the federal and republican parties. The latter party had of late been gaining ground, as some of the acts of the present administration had been unpopular. The expenditure of money for building a navy had caused dissatisfaction, as well as the alien and sedition laws. The latter of these enactments provided that the authors and publishers of false and malicious accusations against the President and members of Congress, should be prosecuted and punished. But the impression that the federal party entertained opinions less favorable to liberty than the republicans, as well as their suspected partiality for Great Britain and coldness toward France, had perhaps the most influence.

The candidates of the federalists for President and Vice-President were John Adams and Charles C. Pinckney. Those of the republicans were Thomas Jefferson and Aaron Burr. The latter two received a majority, and each an equal number of the electoral votes. By the Constitution, the selection of one of these for President consequently devolved on the House of Representatives. The federalists regarding Thomas Jefferson as more uncompromising in his hostility to their views, gave their votes to Aaron Burr. It was therefore not until the thirty-fifth ballot that the republicans succeeded in electing Thomas Jefferson. Aaron Burr consequently became Vice-President. The inauguration took place on the 4th of Third month, (March,) 1801.

---

Measures of the new administration.

---

The control of the government was now transferred to the republican party. At the next session of Congress, by the recommendation of the President, the judiciary department was re-organized. By the change, twelve judges of the Supreme Court, recently appointed, lost their offices. The army and navy were reduced, and many of the government offices abolished. These and other retrenchments in the expenditures of the nation, enabled Congress to suppress the internal taxes, at the same time that provision was made for gradually paying off the public debt, leaving no more in the treasury than sufficient for the wants of the government. An overflowing treasury was pronounced by the democrats of that day as detrimental to the interests of republicanism. 1801

During the year 1801, a second census of the people was completed, showing an increase in population in ten years, of nearly one million four hundred thousand. It now amounted to more than five millions and three hundred thousand. The exports had increased from the value of nineteen to ninety-four millions of dollars, and the revenue from nearly five millions to about thirteen millions of dollars. This prosperity must be attributed to the liberal institutions of the country, which, were it not that color formed an exception, might be said to secure equal privileges to all the citizens. It is deeply to be regretted that these privileges were not made universal.

In the following year, the State of Ohio was admitted into the Union. It was previously a part of the northwestern territory, from which slavery had been prohibited by an act of the continental congress in 1787. Aware of the blighting influence of that iniquitous system, they resolved that it should be excluded from all the territory northwest of the Ohio. This is one great cause of the unparalleled increase 1802

Prosperity of Ohio.

Slave labor in Kentucky.

in wealth and population of that fertile region, while Kentucky, tilled by the labor of the slave, and otherwise possessing equal advantages, has fallen so far behind the States lying north of the Ohio river. In 1803 the population of Ohio was seventy-six thousand; in thirty years from the date of its first settlement, the number of its inhabitants exceeded half a million. Tennessee, previously a part of North Carolina, was admitted into the Union in 1796.

1803 The difficulty which had arisen in the choice of a President, by the House of Representatives, after the last election, led to a change in the Constitution, requiring that the individuals designed for the respective offices of President and Vice-President, should be so designated by the electors. Formerly he who received the greatest number of votes became President, and he who had the next number, Vice-President. The measure was frequently debated in the session which commenced this year, but did not receive the requisite majority of two thirds until 1804, when it became a law.

By the general treaty of peace in Europe in 1801, Spain re-transferred Louisiana to France, after having held it in possession since its cession by France in 1762. Napoleon, then first consul, had fitted out an expedition to reëstablish slavery in St. Domingo, after which the army was to take possession of Louisiana.

The United States could not remain passive, and see this transfer made to so powerful a nation. The President wrote to the American envoy at Paris, stating the reasons for objecting to the change, and proposing to open negotiations for acquiring it by purchase. He considered that New Orleans, through which "three-eighths of our territory must pass to market," could not be possessed by impetuous France, with the same prospect of quiet as by Spain, and that the

---

Purchase of Louisiana.

---

two countries could not long remain friends when placed 1803 in this position.

The right of deposit at New Orleans, conceded to the United States by Spain, and from that period to this time freely enjoyed, was prohibited by the Spanish authorities in that place, in the autumn of 1802. This measure, which suspended the commerce of the Western States, produced much excitement, and many of the people were in favor of resorting immediately to arms. But the negotiations which were going on in France, were soon after brought to a close, and all cause of difficulty was removed.

The army which had been sent to St. Domingo for the re-establishment of slavery in that island, had been entirely unsuccessful. The attempt gave rise to one series of those cruel massacres at which humanity revolts, and resulted in the independence of the colony. Having tasted for a few years the sweets of freedom, the blacks became desperate in the enforcement of their rights. Napoleon, defeated in this instance, and fearing a breach with England, and perhaps his inability to retain the province of Louisiana, consented to its sale. The funds of the nation, moreover, were nearly exhausted by her recent wars. In 1803, a treaty was concluded, transferring to the United States, for the sum of fifteen millions of dollars, that extensive region, embracing all territory owned by this country, west of the Mississippi, previously to the Mexican war, including the present States of Louisiana, Arkansas, Missouri and Iowa. This cession gave to the United States the entire control of one of the noblest rivers in the world.

To obtain an accurate knowledge of the newly acquired region, with its geographical and mineral features, an expedition was fitted out to proceed across the Rocky Mountains

---

[Expedition of Lewis and Clarke.]

---

to the Pacific Ocean, under the command of Captains Lewis and Clarke. They were directed to explore the Missouri from its confluence with the Mississippi to its source, and after crossing the mountains to proceed down the first navigable river they should meet with, to the ocean.

1804 The party consisted of forty-five persons. In Fifth month, (May,) 1804, they embarked in three boats, two of them being open, the other half-decked, at a point near the junction of the Mississippi and Missouri. They first sailed up the Missouri to the great falls of that river, a distance of ten or eleven hundred miles in a direct line, and nearly three thousand by water, on account of the very winding course of the river. They then performed the difficult task of crossing the mountains, and after examining various streams, they reached the Columbia. The course of this river they followed for upwards of six hundred miles, which brought them to the Pacific in Eleventh month, (Nov.,) 1805, the preceding winter months having been passed in the Indian country, between the Missouri and Yellow Stone rivers. The climate of the different regions through which they passed was exceedingly various. In  $47^{\circ}$  of latitude, the thermometer frequently stood at  $20^{\circ}$  below zero, and was at times still lower. In the summer in latitude  $45^{\circ}$ , an entry is made in the journal, of the thermometer at  $90^{\circ}$ . The land is described as generally rich, with more of pasturage than extensive forests. Among the trees were the aspen and the pine, and the wild grape abounded.

Some interesting and remarkable animals were discovered by this expedition, among which were the prong-horned antelope and swift fox. The former was so remarkable for its fleetness, that while Captain Lewis was passing a few hundred yards toward a ridge on which seven of them were stationed,

## Animals.

## The grizzly bear.

they had fled to a distance of three miles, whence he inferred 1805  
 their speed to be equal to that of the most celebrated race  
 horse. But this swiftness, great as it was, was far exceeded  
 by that of the swift fox, which could pass the antelope with  
 ease, and the celerity of whose motion was so great, that it  
 was compared to the flight of a bird along the ground, or to  
 an indistinct line drawn rapidly along the surface.

Large herds of deer, elk, buffalo and antelopes were ob-  
 served, as well as many wolves. The most formidable ani-  
 mal encountered was the grizzly bear, which is scarcely  
 equalled in any country in its fierceness and tenacity of life.  
 The lives of six hunters of the party were greatly endangered  
 by an encounter with one of these animals. Although he  
 had been repeatedly shot, and his shoulder-blade broken,  
 they were closely pursued, and two of them were compelled  
 to jump down a perpendicular bank of twenty feet, into the  
 river. The bear followed, and had nearly overtaken one of  
 them, when he was killed by a shot from the shore. On ex-  
 amination it was found that eight balls had passed through  
 his body in different directions.

The country was occupied by scattered tribes of Indians,  
 who were friendly to the travellers. Their numbers appeared  
 to be decreasing, in consequence of the ravages of the  
 small-pox, the use of spirituous liquors, and their almost con-  
 stant state of warfare.

The Great Falls of the Missouri are described as highly  
 magnificent and picturesque. They extend for a length of  
 nearly twelve miles, the river varying in width from three  
 hundred to six hundred yards. The principal fall is eighty  
 feet, with perpendicular cliffs on either side, one hundred feet  
 high. The irregular and projecting rocks cause the spray to  
 be thrown in high columns of various shapes, which, when

---

Return of the expedition.

---

1805 illumined by the sun, form an exquisitely beautiful sight. By a succession of smaller falls and of steep rapids, the river descends three hundred and eighty-four feet. Above the falls, the river is quite smooth, and herds of buffalo were seen feeding on the plains.

The journey across the mountains, with all the assistance the party could procure from the Indians, who were very friendly, was extremely arduous. The steep and stony ascent, with the difficulty of procuring provisions, rendered their progress slow. The weather was cold ; during the night of the 21st of Eighth month, (Aug.,) water froze to the depth of one-fourth of an inch. Crossing the mountains occupied seven weeks from the time they left their canoes on the Missouri, until they embarked again on the west side of the mountains in canoes of their own making.

The Columbia was occasionally broken into rapids, around which the travellers were obliged to carry their canoes. On the 7th of Eleventh month, (Nov.,) they caught the first view of the ocean. Their delight can scarcely be conceived ; they had reached the goal, and were rewarded for their toils. It was during the rainy season, and they encamped for the winter.

The natives west of the mountains are described as more mild and gentle than those on the eastern side. They were not unacquainted with white men, as British and American vessels frequently stop on the coast, for the purchase of furs.

As soon as the weather admitted, the party explored the neighborhood, anxious to return home. Having accomplished the object of the expedition, they re-crossed the mountains and again descended the Missouri. They were so delighted at once more beholding a trace of civilization, that when they

---

War with Tripoli.

---

saw, for the first time, cows feeding, they almost involuntarily 1806  
shouted for joy. They arrived at Fort Louis, on the Mississippi, on the 23d of Ninth month, (Sept.,) 1806, after an absence of about twenty-eight months, and having been given up as lost.

Since the year 1801, war had existed between this government and Tripoli, one of the Barbary States. The bashaw of Tripoli complained of partiality by the United States toward the rulers of Algiers and Tunis, and of less respectful treatment, he having received a smaller amount of money than they, to secure the friendship of the Tripolitans. He therefore made further demands, with which this government did not comply, and war was the consequence. Early in the summer of 1801, a squadron, consisting of four vessels, was sent to the Mediterranean, for the protection of the commerce of the United States. Soon after their arrival, a Tripolitan ship of war was captured. She made a vigorous resistance, and did not strike her colors until after sustaining a cannonade for three hours, during which twenty of her crew were killed and thirty wounded. A Greek ship was also taken, which had on board some Tripolitan soldiers.

In 1802, Congress passed an act for the protection of the commerce and seamen of the United States, which authorized the seizure of all vessels and goods belonging to the bashaw of Tripoli or his subjects. They also empowered the President to commission privateers for annoying the commerce of Tripoli. In the course of the year, six vessels were equipped and sent out, which it was thought would be sufficient to compel the Tripolitans to sue for peace.

The port of Tripoli was blockaded. During the blockade a large ship was attacked by the Americans, and after a

---

American squadron in the Mediterranean.

---

contest of about an hour, the Tripolitan ship blew up with a tremendous explosion, destroying all the men that remained on board, some having previously escaped to the shore.

1803 In 1803, another squadron was sent to the Mediterranean, under command of Commodore Preble. While cruising off Tripoli, the frigate Philadelphia, in pursuit of a small vessel, advanced too near the shore and grounded. Every effort made to get her off, proved unavailing. The Tripolitan gun-boats immediately came out to attack her, and after a combat of five hours, the Philadelphia was compelled to surrender. The officers were taken as prisoners of war; the crew were treated as slaves. The Philadelphia was soon afterward retaken and burned by Lieutenant Stephen Decatur.

1804 About midsummer, all the American force in the Mediterranean was concentrated before Tripoli. The number of men on board the different vessels was one thousand and sixty. The batteries on shore were defended by twenty-five thousand Arabs and Turks. An unsuccessful attempt had been made to ransom the American prisoners, all that could be effected being the privilege of sending them supplies.

On the 3d of Eighth month, (Aug.,) the Tripolitan shipping and batteries were attacked. The action commenced by throwing shells into the town. The contest was very severe on both sides. Several of the gun-boats of the Tripolitans were soon driven on the rocks; three of their vessels were captured. Before night, the American fleet retired with their prizes.

Two other attacks were made in the course of the month, in which the town, as well as the batteries, sustained much injury. A plan was also formed for sending a fire-ship into the harbor, to destroy the shipping, and throw shells into the town. One hundred barrels of powder and a hundred and

---

Treaty of peace.

---

fifty shells were placed in the hold, and a fusee provided by which the vessel might be fired, and the crew have time to escape. The vessel was sent at night, and was expected to enter the harbor without being discovered. Before she gained the place of destination, however, she suddenly blew up with a terrible explosion, and in the morning, not a trace of her was to be seen. All on board had doubtless perished. 1804

During these occurrences, a plan was formed by the United States consul at Tunis, for coöperating with an elder brother of the reigning bashaw of Tripoli, who had been driven from the throne, and by restoring to him his rights, to establish peace for the United States. An interview was obtained with him, an army of adventurers was collected, and the Tripolitan territory invaded. The city of Derne was taken.

Alarmed at the progress and success of this force, the reigning bashaw offered more favorable terms of peace than any yet proposed. These, with some stipulations, were accepted by the authorized agent of the United States in Sixth month, (June,) 1805, and subsequently ratified by the President and Senate. Sixty thousand dollars were to be given as a ransom for the American prisoners, and the forces of the United States were to be withdrawn from Derne. The provision was inserted that the wife and children of the ex-bashaw, who had been detained for years, should be restored to him. Some of the captives, liberated by this treaty, had realized the sufferings of barbarian servitude for more than eighteen months.

During the years 1803 and 1804, a considerable accession of territory was made to the United States. The tribe of Kaskaskia Indians, having been very much reduced in numbers, by wars and other causes, were unable to defend themselves against the neighboring tribes. They occupied the

---

Hamilton and Burr.

---

1804 fertile district lying between the Illinois and Ohio rivers. This, with the exception of a sufficiency to support by agriculture the few who remained of their tribe, they transferred to the United States, who agreed to extend protection to them, and to assist them annually in money, implements of agriculture and other articles.

In 1804, the Delaware Indians relinquished, for a sum of money, their claim to the district occupied by them, which was situated east of the Wabash, extending three hundred miles up the Ohio.

This year, Thomas Jefferson was again elected President, and George Clinton of New York, Vice-President, the new term commencing on the 4th of Third month, (March,) 1805.

1805 Colonel Burr, the former Vice-President, became a candidate for the office of governor of New York. Alexander Hamilton, believing him to be an unprincipled politician, openly opposed his election; and certain offensive publications appearing in one of the public journals, Burr accused Hamilton of being the author. This, Hamilton neither acknowledged nor denied. The result was a challenge to a duel from Burr. They met at Hoboken in New Jersey, and Hamilton was killed. His death caused deep sensations of regret throughout the country. By yielding to false honor, the nation was deprived of a valuable citizen, of eminent talents and great popularity.

1806 Burr now entirely lost his political influence. A career of ambition opened to him in the south-west. He purchased and built boats to descend the Ohio river, with the avowed object of establishing a settlement in Louisiana. Incautious disclosures from his associates, however, and other circumstances, excited the suspicion that he was either aiming to get possession of New Orleans, and to erect into a separate

---

 Capture of American vessels.

 British orders in council.
 

---

government the south-western portion of the Union, or else to 1806  
invade the Spanish province of Mexico. He was therefore  
watched by the agents of the government, and arrested.  
Sufficient evidence not appearing to convict him, he was dis-  
charged, although never acquitted in the minds of the  
people.

During the wars which raged in Europe subsequently to  
the French revolution, the Americans derived great advantage  
to their commerce by their neutral position. While France  
had become preëminent on land, England ruled the sea, and  
any other flag than hers was seldom seen upon the ocean,  
excepting that of the United States, whose neutral position  
gained for her citizens this advantage, and threw into their  
hands the carrying trade between the West Indies and the  
ports of Europe.

But England could not be satisfied to have American mer-  
chants grow rich by so lucrative a commerce. The harvest  
was too great to remain unmolested. American vessels carry-  
ing to Europe the produce of French colonies, were captured  
by British cruisers and condemned as lawful prizes. In 1806,  
several European ports under the control of France, were  
declared by British orders in council, to be in a state of  
blockade, although not invested by British cruisers. This  
plan of blockading ports has since been styled paper blockades.  
American vessels attempting to enter these ports were cap-  
tured and condemned.

The merchants of the United States complained loudly to  
their government of these outrages. But this was not the  
only difficulty. England had never been able to man her  
numerous fleets by voluntary enlistments, and had resorted to  
the practice of impressment, or seizing her subjects wherever  
found, and compelling them to serve on her ships of war.

---

Impressment of American seamen.

First steamboat.

---

1807 She had for some years claimed the right of searching for her subjects on board of neutral vessels, while traversing the ocean, and had actually seized sailors from American vessels, on the ground of their being British subjects. In this way, citizens of the United States were dragged from their friends, and compelled to fight with nations at peace with their own. Washington, Adams and Jefferson had remonstrated against this outrage, but without effect. It not only continued, but increased.\*

In 1807, the power of steam was first applied to propelling boats, by Robert Fulton, a resident of New York city. Under his auspices, a rude boat was constructed, and the experiment was first made on the Hudson river. The boat left the city amid the hopes and fears of many of the citizens, and reached Clermont, a distance of one hundred and ten miles, in twenty-four hours; thence to Albany, forty miles, in eight hours, or at the rate of five miles an hour. The fare from New York to Albany was ten dollars.

Early in the summer of 1807, the feelings of the people were much exasperated by an attack made on the American frigate *Chesapeake*, near the coast of the United States. The British consul at Norfolk had demanded the surrender of three seamen, who had entered the United States service after deserting from a British ship. On investigation, the men were found to be American citizens, who had been im-

---

\* It is but just to England to state that the higher wages offered by America, was a great temptation to British seamen to desert. This gave offence to Great Britain. In America it was asserted that a settler, having been admitted to the privileges of citizenship, had a right to fight with the country of his adoption; while in England it was contended that allegiance to Great Britain could not thus be relinquished.

---

Hostile feelings toward England.Berlin Decree.

---

pressed by the British, and subsequently had escaped from 1807 their service. They were therefore not delivered. A few weeks afterward, the Chesapeake, on board of which these men were engaged, sailed for the Mediterranean. She passed through a British squadron, stationed on the coast, without molestation; but some hours after, was overtaken by the Leopard, whose captain had orders to take from the Chesapeake the three men said to be deserters. On the refusal of the American commander to allow his crew to be mustered, a heavy fire was commenced, which killed three men and wounded eighteen more. Being unprepared for action, the Chesapeake struck her colors. She was then boarded by the British, and four men were carried off. The Chesapeake, being much injured, returned to port.

The distinctions of party were forgotten in the indignation which was felt on account of this outrage. Public meetings were held, and resolutions were adopted to support the government in any measures taken to obtain redress. The President issued a proclamation prohibiting all British ships of war from remaining in or entering the harbors of the United States. He also sent instructions to the American minister at London, to demand satisfaction for the insult, and summoned Congress to meet.

This act of aggression was disavowed by the British government. No reparation was, however, made, and the officer engaged in the transaction, was soon afterward appointed to a more important station. The occurrence, therefore, served to strengthen the hostile feelings already excited toward England.

The commerce of the United States also suffered from the vindictive feelings of the French. In Eleventh month, (Nov.,) 1806, Napoleon, now Emperor, had issued a decree

---

The embargo.Milan Decree.

---

1807 at Berlin, declaring the British Islands in a state of blockade. All neutral vessels attempting to trade with them, were consequently exposed to capture. The introduction of English goods to the continent of Europe, was prohibited, even in neutral vessels, and the ports of France were closed against any vessel that should touch at an English port.

The British government having avowed its determination to adopt measures in retaliation of the French decree, and continuing to assert the right of search and impressment, the President recommended to Congress that the seamen, ships and merchandise of the United States should be detained in port to preserve them from the dangers which threatened them at sea. An embargo was consequently decreed, in Twelfth month, (Dec.,) 1807, and all merchant vessels were called home.

Shortly after the passage of the embargo law, information was received that Great Britain had prohibited neutrals from trading with France, or any of her allies, excepting on condition of paying to her a tax or tribute. In a few weeks, Napoleon's famous Milan Decree followed. In this he declared that every neutral vessel submitting to pay the tribute should be confiscated, if ever afterward found in his ports, or taken by his cruisers. Thus, between the two rival nations, almost every American vessel sailing on the ocean, was liable to capture, and it was in vain that the United States remonstrated.

1808 The embargo was rigidly enforced by the government, and the commerce of the country, recently so flourishing, was now reduced to a coasting trade between the States. Hence the people began to turn their attention toward the production of those manufactures, which, until now, had been imported from England. When the law was carried into operation,

---

Change in the embargo law.

---

much opposition was felt toward it, although resolutions, 1808 passed at public meetings all over the country, had urged the adoption of efficient measures against the belligerent parties. In New England the merchants severely felt the effects of the law, and there the strongest opposition showed itself. The southern and western States were more agricultural. The administration became unpopular in New England, and Massachusetts recommended the repeal of the law.

In the autumn of 1808, an election for chief magistrate again took place. Thomas Jefferson, believing with Washington, that no person should hold the office for more than eight years, had signified his intention of retiring at the close of his second term. James Madison was now elected to the Presidency, and inaugurated on the 4th of Third month, (March,) 1809. George Clinton was reelected Vice-President.

In Third month, (March,) Congress repealed the embargo, 1809 and substituted in its place an act prohibiting all intercourse with both France and England ; a provision being inserted in the act, that if either of those nations should revoke her hostile edicts, the law should cease to be in force with respect to that nation.

This change in the law was thought by the British government to afford a favorable opportunity to open negotiations for the adjustment of the difficulties between the two countries. Accordingly David M. Erskine, the British minister at Washington, proposed an arrangement on the following terms: That reparation should be made for the outrage on the frigate Chesapeake ; that the orders in council should be withdrawn, so far as respected the United States, provided the latter country would repeal the prohibition of intercourse

---

Non-intercourse law expires.New act of Congress.

---

1809 with Great Britain ; and that an envoy extraordinary should be sent from England, with power to conclude a treaty on all the points of difference between the two countries. These terms being accepted by the President, a proclamation was issued, suspending the non-intercourse with England, after the 10th of Sixth month, (June,) the day on which the orders in council were to be revoked.

The British government refused to ratify the proceedings of their minister, on the ground that he had exceeded his instructions. This information was sent to the American government, and the British minister was recalled. The President consequently declared the non-intercourse act again in force ; and the relations between the two nations continued on their former footing, excepting that those vessels which had left the United States relying on the negotiations of the British minister, were not to be endangered.

In the autumn, Francis James Jackson, the new minister from England, arrived. He was coldly received. Popular prejudice was strong against him, and all attempts to negotiate failed. He was shortly afterward recalled.

1810 The non-intercourse law expired in Fifth month, (May,) 1810. An act of Congress was therefore passed, which provided that, if either Great Britain or France should revoke its edicts before a stipulated day in the following year, the restrictions imposed by the non-intercourse act should be discontinued, in relation to such nation. If the other nation should not, within three months afterward, revoke its edicts, then the non-intercourse law should be revived respecting that nation.

Napoleon had declared that his edicts were meant as retaliatory toward Great Britain, and that they formed part of a plan to wrest from her the power to tyrannize upon the

Trade with France restored.

British orders in council enforced.

ocean. The act of Congress having been communicated to 1810 the government of France, her minister addressed a note to the minister of the United States at Paris, declaring that the decrees of Berlin and Milan were revoked. The revocation was to take effect on the 1st of Eleventh month, (Nov.,) following. He also stated that this measure was taken, in full confidence that the act of Congress would be enforced against England, if she did not revoke her orders in council.

The President consequently issued a proclamation, announcing that all restrictions on the trade of the United States with France had ceased. An appeal was then made to England to revoke her orders in council; but the ministry objected that the French decrees could not be considered as repealed, a letter from the minister of state not being sufficient authority for that purpose. She therefore persisted in enforcing the orders.

Congress then renewed the non-intercourse law against that country, to continue in force until she should revoke or modify her edicts, and the President of the United States should announce the fact by proclamation.

In order to carry out the orders in council, Great Britain 1811 had stationed ships of war before the principal harbors of the United States. American merchantmen, departing from these ports, or returning to them, were boarded and searched. Many sailors were impressed. With the ships of England in the waters of this country, and for such an object, it was scarcely probable that no actual collision should take place between the vessels of the respective countries. Commodore Rogers, of the United States frigate President, while cruising off the capes of Virginia, discovered a vessel which appeared to be a man-of-war. He sailed in pursuit, hailed and inquired her name. Instead of returning an answer,

---

Preparations for war with England.Indian confederacy.

---

1811 the commander of the other vessel hailed, and a shot was soon fired which struck the mainmast of the President. The fire was returned, and continued for a few minutes, when finding the guns of his opponent almost silenced, Commodore Rogers desisted. On hailing again, an answer was given, that the vessel was the British sloop of war, *Little Belt*, of eighteen guns. Thirty-two of her men were killed or wounded during the action, and the vessel was much injured.

The arrival of a British minister in the summer of 1811, availed nothing toward an adjustment of the difficulties. He could give no assurance that his government was disposed to repeal the orders in council, or to make an arrangement on the subject of impressment. On the contrary, the orders were rigorously enforced, and now that a free trade with France was restored, many American vessels, laden with rich cargoes destined for the ports of that country, fell into the hands of British cruisers.

There seemed a strong prospect that war would soon be declared between the two countries, and preparations were accordingly going forward. To meet the expenses, Congress authorized the President to borrow, on the credit of the United States, a sum not exceeding eleven millions of dollars. The whole amount was advanced by individuals and corporate bodies, at an interest of six per cent.

For several years the Indian tribes residing in the Indiana territory, had shown symptoms of hostility toward the settlers on the north-western frontier. A confederacy was formed, at the head of which were Tecumseh, their chief, and his brother. The latter pretended to be a prophet, and preached to the Indians that all their disasters were owing to their having forsaken the simple habits of their ancestors. Several

---

Tecumseh.Battle of Tippecanoe.

---

different tribes were united, and a spirit of animosity was stirred up against the white inhabitants. Tecumseh maintained that the country belonged to the red men in common, and that no portion of it could be sold without the consent of all; that no one tribe had any more right to sell its land than it had to darken the bright rays of the sun. 1811

In the autumn of 1811, the outrages committed by Tecumseh and his followers, induced the government to send General Harrison, then governor of the Indiana territory, with a small force, to negotiate, if possible, but to fight if no redress could be obtained. Arrived at Tippecanoe, their principal town, a deputation of the chiefs met him.\* An agreement was made that neither party should commence hostilities before the next day, when a conference should be held.

In violation of this engagement, the American camp was furiously attacked before daybreak. Not feeling confidence in the promises of the Indians, the Americans had slept on their arms, and made a vigorous resistance. Great slaughter took place on both sides. The Indians were finally dispersed. At the time of this battle, Tecumseh was in the south, endeavoring to induce other Indians to join the confederacy. Having burned Tippecanoe, and laid waste the surrounding country, from which his opponents were obliged to retreat, Harrison returned to the settlements.

---

\* At the commencement of this interview, when Tecumseh first came into the presence of General Harrison, the latter directed a chair to be handed him, which was done, with the remark of the American interpreter, "Your father desires you to sit down." The immediate reply of this remarkable chieftain is characteristic of his eloquence and of his proud spirit. Raising his hand aloft, he said, "*My father? The sun is my father, and the earth my mother, and on her bosom I will repose;*" at the same time taking his seat upon the ground in the usual Indian mode.

---

Mission of John Henry.

---

1812 Early in 1812, John Henry, a resident of Canada, gave information to the Secretary of State, that in 1809 he had been employed by the governor-general of Canada, as a secret agent in the United States. Documents and papers were submitted by him, which were laid by the President before Congress. From these it appeared that he had been instructed to proceed to Boston, to confer with those who were opposed to the restrictions laid by the American government on commerce ; to obtain information of the true state of affairs in that part of the Union, which from various causes would possess great influence and probably lead the other States ; and to observe the state of public opinion with regard to a war with England. He was also to learn whether the Federalists, in case they gained the ascendancy, would exert their influence to bring about a separation of the Union ; and in case of such an event, whether they would look to England for assistance, or be disposed to enter into a connection with that nation. The mission of Henry was entirely unsuccessful ; and the British government consequently refused the required remuneration. He therefore made a full disclosure of the facts to the American government, and received for the information the sum of fifty thousand dollars.

This intrigue removed still farther the prospect of an amicable adjustment with England ; and preparations for war continued. On the 20th of Fifth month, (May,) a sloop-of-war arrived from London with the intelligence that no prospect existed of a change in the measures of Great Britain toward this country. On the 1st of Sixth month, (June,) the President sent a message to Congress, in which he set forth the various injuries received from that nation, and recommended for their early deliberation, the question whether the United States should continue passive under these progressive usurpations, or whether force should be opposed to force.

---

Declaration of war.

---

The message was seriously considered with closed doors. 1812  
On the 18th, an act was passed declaring war with the United Kingdoms of Great Britain and Ireland. For the prosecution of the war the President was authorized to issue treasury notes to an amount not exceeding five millions of dollars, and additional duties were imposed on all goods, wares and merchandise imported from foreign places.

The declaration was condemned by a considerable portion of citizens, who believed that an adjustment of all disputes might have been obtained by further negotiations, and that such a step was unwise at this time, as the nation was not prepared for war. Many believed, also, that the expenses and sufferings which war must occasion, would more than counterbalance the advantages sought to be obtained. Decided opposition was made to it in the New England States, where much distress was occasioned by the suppression of their commerce. Several commercial cities protested against the measure, while in others the act was received with illuminations and rejoicings. A majority of the people were favorable to the war.

## CHAPTER XXVIII.

### WAR OF 1812.

---

Invasion of Canada.

Retreat of General Hull.

---

1812 It is not designed to give a minute account of the three years' war with Great Britain. The time will come when such records shall have fallen from their present importance and, divested of all false glory, shall sink into insignificance before the truly noble achievements of humanity.

The plan of operations at the commencement of the war, was to garrison and defend the seaboard, and to attack the British posts in Upper Canada, with the design of invading and conquering Lower Canada.

General William Hull, then governor of Michigan territory, received command of the army appropriated for the invasion of Canada. Having entered the province, he issued a proclamation, offering peace and protection to such Canadians as should remain at home, but threatening extermination to those found in arms, associated with the Indians. Many joined his standard, or returned to their homes relying on his promise of protection.

After considerable delay, and nothing special having been attempted, information was received that the post of Mackinaw had surrendered to a large body of British and Indians, who were marching south. General Hull immediately retreated to Detroit. Here he awaited the approach of a force of British and Indians superior to his own, from the fort at Malden, on the Detroit river. A white flag was hung out in

---

His surrender.Attack on Queenstown.

---

1812

token of a wish to capitulate, and Hull's whole force, the fortress and the entire territory of Michigan, were surrendered to the British.

The American troops had anticipated an easy victory, and were greatly indignant at the unexpected submission of General Hull. When released by an exchange of prisoners, the government brought him to trial by a court-martial in 1814. He was sentenced to death for cowardice and neglect of duty, but subsequently pardoned in consideration of former services.

The surrender of Michigan left the north-western frontier exposed to the incursions of the British and Indians. The neighboring States were alarmed, and nearly ten thousand volunteers, under the command of General William Henry Harrison, marched toward the territory of Michigan. Many difficulties were encountered, arising in part from the undisciplined state of the army, and winter set in without anything being accomplished, excepting incursions into the territory of the Indians, who, instigated by British agents, had generally become hostile.

In Eleventh month, (Nov.,) an attack was made on Queenstown, in Upper Canada. The Americans were at first successful, and gained possession of the fort. It was, however, retaken by the British, after a severe engagement, and a heavy loss on both sides in killed and wounded. Of one thousand Americans who crossed into Canada, but few escaped.

In the latter part of the same month a third invasion of Canada was attempted. An army of four thousand five hundred men was assembled, and a day fixed for their embarkation. The British appearing on the opposite shore of the Niagara, with a formidable force, the crossing of the troops was postponed, and finally abandoned for the season.

---

Naval victories.Orders in council revoked.

---

1812 The operations of the American navy were more successful, and Britain's claim to the dominion of the ocean was entirely destroyed. The first of a series of victories was by Captain Hull, of the American frigate *Constitution*, over the British frigate *Guerriere*, which was reduced to a complete wreck in thirty minutes, every mast and nearly every spar being shot away. The *Guerriere* was burned, not being in a state to be conveyed to port.

In Tenth month, (Oct.,) the sloop-of-war *Frolic* was captured by Captain Jones, of the *Wasp*, after a hard-fought battle of forty-five minutes. The *Wasp* was subsequently taken by a British ship. In the same month, Captain Decatur, of the frigate *United States*, captured the *Macedonian*. One hundred and four of the British were killed or wounded during the engagement.

In Twelfth month, (Dec.,) the British frigate *Java* was reduced to a wreck off the coast of Brazil, by the frigate *Constitution*, Captain Bainbridge, after an action of one hour, in which one hundred and sixty-one of her crew were either killed or wounded.

The commerce also of the British suffered severely. Many British merchantmen were captured by the American navy; but more were taken by privateers, which sailed from almost every port. These vessels were built with a view to rapid sailing, and were able not only to overtake the merchant vessels, but to escape from the frigates of the British. During the first seven months of the war, upwards of five hundred British merchant vessels were taken by privateers or by American cruisers.

France had for some time withheld the formal announcement of the revocation of the decrees of Napoleon. When, however, that announcement took place, Britain revoked

her orders in council, and proposed a suspension of hostilities. 1812  
The President demanded some effectual provision against the impressment of American seamen, which being declined, the war was continued. This gave great offence to the federal party, who maintained their opposition to the war. They also declared it to be unconstitutional to employ the militia in offensive warfare ; and on this ground, the States of Massachusetts and Connecticut had refused their proportion of men for the invasion of Canada. When Congress again met, resolutions were adopted, approving the President's course ; and in order to defray the expense of the war, bills were passed, authorizing a loan of sixteen millions of dollars, and empowering the President to issue treasury notes, to an amount not exceeding five millions of dollars. An appropriation of one hundred thousand dollars was made for establishing a dock yard for the repair of vessels of war.

In the autumn, the presidential election again took place. The anti-federalists, by their continued support of the President, showed their approbation of his course in regard to the war. The federal party made a strong opposition, but James Madison was reëlected to the office of President, and Elbridge Gerry, of Massachusetts, Vice-President.

The desire of the citizens of the Western States to regain Michigan was so strong, that General Harrison determined to undertake a winter campaign. This led to much suffering on the part of the army, as the State of Michigan did not afford adequate supplies, and it was impossible, as General Harrison stated in one his letters to the administration, to get supplies forward " through a swampy wilderness of near two hundred miles, in wagons or on pack-horses," which also had to carry their own provision. The distress of the troops was great for want of clothing.

Americans attacked.

Surrender.

Massacre.

1813 General Winchester was sent forward with a detachment to the rapids of the Miami, where he was directed to commence the building of huts, in order to deceive the British, and lead to the impression that the Americans were going into winter quarters. In pursuance of these instructions, he formed a fortified camp on an eminence surrounded by prairies. Soon afterward, he received an urgent call for assistance from the inhabitants of Frenchtown, on the river Raisin. They had been attacked by the British and Indians from Malden, a British post in Canada on the Detroit river. General Winchester marched toward Frenchtown, but before reaching it, the British had gained possession. They were assaulted and dispersed, with considerable slaughter.

The Americans then encamped in an open lot, and but little caution was taken to guard against a surprise. Here they were attacked by British and Canadians with one thousand Indians. One wing of the army, consisting of one hundred and fifty men, was entirely unprotected. These were soon thrown into disorder, and in attempting to escape, were nearly all massacred by the Indians. One hundred men, sent to their relief, were also mostly killed.

The conflict was maintained for some hours, when the Americans surrendered. The British soon afterward marched back to Malden, leaving a few soldiers only, in charge of the wounded Americans, and no guard for the protection of the prisoners from the fury of the Indians. These accompanied their allies but a few miles toward Malden, when they returned to Frenchtown, the scene of the battle. At sunrise on the succeeding day, a melancholy work of destruction commenced. The houses were set on fire in which the prisoners were confined, and they generally perished in the flames. Some, in attempting to escape, were thrust back as

---

Siege of Fort Meigs.York attacked.

---

they appeared at the windows, while others reached the streets, there to encounter the tomahawk. 1813

The ensuing three months after this tragical event, were employed by General Harrison in fortifying his camp, which he named Fort Meigs. Here he was joined by reinforcements from Kentucky and Ohio. In the spring, General Proctor advanced toward Fort Meigs with a company of two thousand, British and Indians, and commenced preparations for a siege, General Harrison having refused to surrender. Soon afterward, General Clay, with twelve hundred Kentuckians, attacked the besiegers and drove them from their works. Eight hundred of the party, having dispersed in the woods in pursuit of the Indians, contrary to the order of their commander, were afterward obliged to surrender to these allies of the British. Only one hundred and fifty escaped; the remainder were either slain or captured.

The British having returned to Fort Meigs, the defence was continued; but the Indians, unaccustomed to sieges, became discontented, and finally deserted. The British, seeing no prospect of success, withdrew their forces to Malden.

In the latter part of Fourth month, (April,) an attack was made on York, the capital of Upper Canada, which resulted in the surrender of the British land and naval forces, and of the public stores. As the Americans approached the main fortifications, the magazine blew up with a tremendous explosion, sending among the troops large masses of stone and timber. Numbers were at once killed, and many more wounded; the American commander, Gen. Pike, was so severely injured that he survived but a few hours. The approach of the Americans was only temporarily checked; recovering from the shock, they pressed forward, and gained possession.

---

British squadron in the Chesapeake.

---

1813 Fort George, on the British side of the Niagara river, was soon after taken by the Americans. A detachment was also sent to cut off the retreat of the British forces, concentrated on Burlington Heights, at the head of Lake Ontario. The party was surprised by an attack at night; some of the troops were taken prisoners, the remainder joined the Americans at Fort George.

These operations diminished the force at Sackett's Harbor, at the other end of the lake. The British therefore seized the opportunity of making an attack on that post. The militia of the neighborhood were collected at the first alarm, but, with the regular troops, were compelled to retire after a short conflict, and poured upon their opponents a destructive fire as they withdrew. By a stratagem of the American commander, the British feared that the object of the Americans was to cut off their retreat. They therefore immediately reëmbarked, leaving most of their wounded and some prisoners to the mercy of their enemies.

While these events were passing in the north, a predatory war was carried on at the seaboard, by detachments from the navy of Great Britain. A squadron arrived in the Chesapeake early in the spring, and one in the Delaware, about the same time. A demand being made on the inhabitants of Lewistown, in the State of Delaware, for supplies, it was promptly refused. The destruction of the town was threatened. The refusal being persisted in, a bombardment of the place was commenced. The firing was returned, and the cannonading continued for twenty-two hours. Being unable to effect anything in this way, many attempts were made to land, for the purpose of obtaining water. The boats, however, were repulsed by the militia, who assembled on the shore. Finding no advantage could be gained by remaining, the

---

Sacking and burning of towns.

---

British burned some merchant vessels which were within 1813 reach, and sailed for Bermuda.

The squadron stationed in the Chesapeake was more powerful. Small vessels were captured, farm houses and country seats on the bay and rivers were plundered. The villages and towns were next attacked. Frenchtown, Havre de Grace, Fredericktown and Georgetown were sacked and burned. Norfolk and the villages in its immediate vicinity, were saved by the determined resistance of the militia. From these places the British were compelled to retreat, leaving behind them two hundred in killed, wounded and prisoners.

After this disappointment, an attack was made on Hampton, about eighteen miles from Norfolk. The militia made a strong resistance, but the British gained possession, and the town and inhabitants were abandoned to the brutal outrages of the soldiery. Some other towns were threatened, but no further attack was made, and the fleet proceeded southward, where the same system of plunder and devastation was pursued.

The port of New London was also blockaded. The proceedings of the squadron stationed in this place, were characterized with more humanity. The frigates *United States* and *Macedonian* were detained there in a state of inaction.

In the north-west, an attack was made on Fort Stephenson, on the Sandusky river, by a large force of British and Indians. The advancing parties were met by a very heavy fire, which committed so much destruction, that the assailants were dismayed and fled.

The British and Americans had both been engaged in preparing a naval force to be employed on Lake Erie. Early in Ninth month, (Sept.,) nine vessels being constructed for the American service, they sailed from Erie, under the command of Commodore Perry, and soon encountered the British fleet. After a violent contest, the whole of the British squadron

---

Commodore Perry's victory.Death of Tecumseh.

---

1813 surrendered. This victory occasioned great joy throughout the country, and had an important influence on the subsequent events of the war.

Soon after the victory on Lake Erie, the British commander, at Malden, anticipating the approach of the American forces to that place, abandoned it, and passing by Detroit, ascended the river Thames. The Americans under General Harrison pursued. They took possession of Malden without opposition, and on the 5th of Tenth month, (Oct.,) overtook the British army. A battle ensued, in which the British were defeated, and six hundred made prisoners. The Indians sustained a severe loss in the death of their celebrated leader, Tecumseh. This victory was the means of restoring all the posts that had been surrendered by General Hull.

Extensive preparations were made during this season for an attack on Montreal. Various delays enabled the British to fortify the important posts on the St. Lawrence ; and in consequence of scarcity of provisions, sickness in the army, and a want of unanimity of action, the expedition was finally abandoned.

Orders had been sent to the American commander at Fort George, to destroy the British town of Newark, situated in its vicinity. In midwinter this order was executed, and the inhabitants were thus rendered homeless in that inclement season. At a subsequent period of the war, this act was retaliated by the burning of Niagara, Lewistown and other villages between lakes Erie and Ontario.

At sea, during this year, the vessels of both nations were, at different times, successful. Several naval battles occurred. The commerce of the British also suffered severely from private armed vessels of the Americans.

The Indians at the south, residing within the limits of Florida, had manifested hostility. In the early part of the

---

Burning of Fort Mimms.

---

war, they had been visited by Tecumseh, who had stirred up 1813 a spirit of opposition to the white inhabitants, persuading the Indians that the Great Spirit required them to resist their encroachments, and holding up to their view the diminution and probable extinction of their race as a consequence of the usurpation of the whites.

The effect of these arguments soon became apparent. Some acts of hostility followed, and General Jackson was sent against them, with twenty-five hundred volunteers, in the autumn of 1812. The Indians were thus overawed for a time, but in the summer of 1813, fresh outbreaks occurred.

About three hundred persons, men, women and children, settlers at exposed points on the Alabama, sought a refuge in Fort Mimms. Here they were off their guard, and were surprised by a party of six hundred Indians, who, after a desperate conflict, drove the people into the houses enclosed by the fort, and set fire to them. A dreadful carnage ensued. Many persons were burned; those who escaped the flames were mostly killed by the tomahawk, and only seventeen reached the neighboring stations.\*

---

\* A striking contrast with this treatment of the Indians is furnished by the conduct of those who visited the Friends Meeting House, near Easton, Pennsylvania, during the revolutionary war. Most of the inhabitants had fled for protection, but the Friends, not willing to trust to arms for defence, and submitting to an overruling Providence, remained at their homes, and continued their religious meetings. Whilst sitting with open doors, during one of these meetings, an Indian peeped in at them. He presently entered, followed by a number of others, who laid aside their arms and took seats. They afterward stated that they had come to the house, intending to destroy all who were in it; but added, "When we saw you sitting with your door open, without weapons of defence, we had no disposition to hurt you; we would have fought for you."

A peaceable and inoffensive aspect serves immediately to disarm all feelings of war and aggression.

---

Negotiations for peace.

---

1813 After the destruction at Fort Mimms, General Jackson, at the head of thirty-five hundred militia, once more marched south. Several sanguinary engagements took place, in which the Indians fought with desperation, but were finally overpowered. They were unwilling to ask for quarter, and the battles generally continued until most of the warriors were killed. General Jackson's army suffered much from want of provisions, which occasioned discontent and a mutinous spirit among the men. By great exertions the necessary supplies were obtained, and Jackson continued to prosecute the war. Nearly fifteen hundred warriors were killed in the various engagements. The spirit of those who survived was at length subdued, and they sued for peace. The power of the Creeks was gone ; their hopes were crushed.

In the early part of 1813, the Emperor of Russia offered his services as mediator between the United States and Great Britain. The President, having accepted this proposal, appointed John Quincy Adams, then minister of the United States at St. Petersburg, Albert Gallatin and James A. Bayard, commissioners, with full powers to conclude a peace with commissioners to be appointed by Great Britain. The British government, declining to treat under the mediation of Russia, proposed a negotiation at London or Gottenburg. The latter place was accepted, and Henry Clay and Jonathan Russell were added to the commission. The place of meeting was afterward transferred to Ghent.

1814 Hostilities were not suspended during the progress of the negotiation, and a loan of twenty-five millions of dollars was authorized by Congress ; also the issue of treasury notes for five millions.

No important movements of the army were made before summer. During this period, information was received from

---

Battle of Bridgewater.

---

Europe of the fall of Napoleon, and of the general peace. 1814  
These events left England at liberty to direct her whole force against the United States. Provision was therefore made for the better defence of the seaboard.

Early in Seventh month, (July,) the American army, consisting of about three thousand men, crossed the Niagara river, and took possession of Fort Erie, which surrendered without opposition. The garrison were made prisoners of war.

The Americans then advanced to Chippewa, where about three thousand British troops were stationed. Here an obstinate and severe conflict took place, which ended in the flight of the British, after one hundred and thirty-three of their number had been killed, who were left dead on the field of battle. Three hundred and twenty were wounded, and forty six taken prisoners. The Americans had sixty killed, upwards of two hundred and sixty wounded and missing.

On the 20th of Seventh month, (July,) the battle of Bridgewater was fought, near the cataract of Niagara. It commenced at six in the evening, and continued until midnight. The engagement was a very sanguinary one, and left the Americans in possession of the field. The British lost in all upwards of eight hundred men; of these, eighty-four were killed, five hundred and fifty-five wounded, and the remainder either missing or made prisoners. The loss of the Americans was not very different.

After this battle, the Americans retreated to Fort Erie. On the 4th of Eighth month, (Aug.,) the place was invested by the British with five thousand troops. Ten days afterward, an attack was made on the fort, which was repelled by the garrison, with the loss of about eighty men. The assailants lost more than nine hundred. The siege was continued after this disastrous defeat, and a large body of

---

Siege of Fort Erie.

---

1814 men arrived from Plattsburg, to the relief of the garrison. The batteries of the British becoming constantly more formidable, the American commander determined on a sortie for their destruction. The parties were engaged in severe fighting for thirty minutes, when the Americans obtained possession of the intrenchments. Having killed and wounded five hundred of their opponents, taken three hundred and eighty prisoners, and destroyed the works of the British, the labor of forty-seven days, the Americans returned to the fort. Their own loss was severe ; seventy-nine killed, upwards of two hundred missing and as many more wounded. The result of this sortie discouraged the British. The troops were withdrawn soon afterward. The siege had continued forty-nine days.

Several ineffectual attempts were then made to dislodge the British from Chippewa, whither they had retired. After this the Americans evacuated Canada, having first destroyed the works at Fort Erie. They then went into winter quarters at Buffalo, Blackrock and Batavia.

In most of the naval engagements which took place during the year 1814, the British vessels were obliged to surrender. Their commerce was also much interrupted, and many merchant vessels were taken.

During the summer of this year, the British forces were much augmented by the arrival of victorious troops, who had served in the wars of Europe. It was determined, as soon as these could be organized, to make an attack on Plattsburg, both by land and water. This place is situated on the north side of the river Saranac, near its entrance into Lake Champlain. Its defence was much weakened by the departure of the reinforcements for the garrison at Fort Erie. It was now commanded by General Macomb. On the 3d of Ninth month, (Sept.,) General Provost entered the territory of the United States, with an army of fourteen thousand men.

---

Siege of Plattsburg.Battle on Lake Champlain.

---

The militia having flocked in great numbers to the stand- 1814  
ard of General Macomb, every effort was made to impede the  
approach of the British, and to prepare for the attack.  
Bridges were destroyed, fortifications were strengthened. On  
the 6th, the British arrived at Plattsburg, which they en-  
tered, the Americans retiring to the south side of the Saranac,  
tearing up the bridges and guarding the fords. An advance  
party of the British had dispersed a body of militia who met  
them a few miles from Plattsburg. Several ineffectual  
attempts were made to cross the stream. From this time,  
until the 11th, the British were employed in erecting bat-  
teries opposite the American lines; while a number of skir-  
mishes took place at the fords. The Americans, at the same  
time, were strengthening their intrenchments, and their forces  
were becoming much increased by the arrival of militia and  
volunteers.

On the 11th, the British squadron appeared off the harbor  
of Plattsburg, where that of the Americans, commanded by  
Commodore McDonough, lay at anchor, awaiting their arrival.  
The former was manned with upwards of one thousand men,  
the latter with more than eight hundred. The fleets were  
furiously engaged for more than two hours, when the flag  
ship of the British struck her colors, and the battle termi-  
nated. One after another of the British vessels surrendered.

At the same time that the engagement on the lake com-  
menced, the land troops of the British began a heavy can-  
nonade on the American lines, under cover of which several  
efforts were made to cross the Saranac. As often as the  
troops advanced into the water, they encountered a destructive  
fire from the militia, and were obliged to retreat with consid-  
erable loss. The surrender of the fleet was announced by  
cheers from the American troops. It took place in the sight

---

Retreat of the British.

---

1814 of both armies, and served to encourage the one, and proportionably to dishearten the other. The efforts of the assailants became less vigorous, and in the afternoon they withdrew to their intrenchments. In the night, they began a precipitate retreat, leaving their sick and wounded and much of their camp equipage behind them. As soon as their flight was discovered, a pursuit was commenced, but the British had already proceeded eight miles. A few prisoners were taken.

In these two engagements, the loss of the British was twenty-two hundred in killed and wounded, besides five hundred deserters and eight hundred prisoners. The Americans lost, in killed and wounded, about two hundred. These events terminated the active warfare on the Canada frontier.

Other parts of the country had been suffering the calamities of war during the same period. In the spring of 1814, the British government declared the whole coast of the United States to be in a state of blockade, and vessels were stationed at different points for the purpose of maintaining it.

In Fourth month, (April,) a detachment from the squadron in Long Island Sound ascended the Connecticut river, and burned twenty-two vessels, which had been sent there for safety. A village at Pettipaug Point was set on fire in several places, but the flames were extinguished by the inhabitants.

Some weeks afterward another detachment from the same squadron made an attack on Stonington. A bombardment was continued for two days, when the British gave up the contest and withdrew. About forty buildings were injured, but none of the inhabitants or militia were killed.

The seaboard in the district of Maine offered an easy conquest to the British. By means of their squadrons, they

---

Grievances in New England.

---

took possession of the principal towns on the coast, and made 1814 a proclamation, declaring the conquest of the country between the Penobscot river and Passamaquoddy bay, and requiring the submission of the people to British authority.

Various islands on the New England coast were obliged to submit to the British naval commanders. The inhabitants of Nantucket were compelled to promise neutrality during the remainder of the war. The people of Cape Cod, where fishing was the most important branch of business, were reduced to great distress, being entirely prevented from pursuing their usual employment on the banks of Newfoundland.

A majority of the people in New England had from the first been opposed to the war, and their dissatisfaction had continued to increase, as their most profitable pursuits, commerce and the fisheries, were interrupted. They complained that the government did not afford them sufficient protection, but appropriated elsewhere the resources drawn from New England. It was now proposed that the militia and the revenue should be retained under their own control, and employed for their defence and protection.

A convention of delegates from the different New England States, assembled at Hartford, Twelfth month, (Dec.) 15th, 1814, to take the subject of their grievances into consideration. After continuing in session three weeks, they adjourned. An address to the people was published, in which they set forth the measures supposed to be detrimental to the interests of New England, and proposing amendments to the federal constitution, for the purpose of preventing the adoption of such measures in future. A committee was sent to Washington, when further proceedings were rendered unnecessary by the arrival of news of peace

---

British fleet in the Chesapeake.Battle of Bladensburg.

---

1814 While the events which have been related were transpiring on the northern frontier and in New England, the people of the Middle and Southern States were not quiet. They had been thrown into a state of suspense and dread by news of the embarkation of troops from Europe, now thrown out of employment by the general peace. The point of attack was not known; of course, the whole seaboard was in fear and excitement. Exertions were made to increase the defence of all exposed situations.

Early in Eighth month, (Aug.,) a British fleet, consisting of many vessels of war and transports, conveying a large number of troops, arrived in the Chesapeake, and proceeded to the mouth of the Potomac. Here the forces were divided. A squadron entered that river and endeavored to force a passage; another division was sent to threaten Baltimore; while the remainder, under General Ross, proceeded up the Patuxent to the town of Benedict, where five thousand troops were landed on the 19th of Eighth month, (Aug.) The flotilla of gun-boats in that river was burned to prevent its falling into the hands of the British.

General Ross advanced toward Washington. The Americans retreated before him, and concentrated their forces at Bladensburg, five miles from the city. On the 24th, the British commenced the attack. Many of the militia fled on the approach of danger. The British were at first repulsed by a body of seamen and mariners under Commodore Barney, but soon rallied, and put the Americans to flight.

The American forces then assembled on the heights not far from the Capitol in Washington; but General Winder, who commanded them, considering them unable to make any effectual resistance, retreated to Georgetown. The President, heads of department, and most of the inhabitants then left the city.

---

Burning of Washington.

---

At eight o'clock, the British entered. Terms of capitulation were offered ; that the city might be ransomed by the payment of a sum of money, equal to the value of the public and private property which it contained, and that then the British troops should retire unmolested. As the civil and military authorities had left the city, there was no power to enter into such an engagement, even if the desire to do so had existed. 1814

General Ross immediately proceeded to destroy the city, and at nine o'clock it was set on fire. The Capitol, President's house, offices of the heads of departments, and many private buildings were burned. The Post Office was the only public building that escaped. This wanton act was declared to be in retaliation for the burning of York and other places in Canada. It occasioned feelings of strong resentment throughout the country. Having accomplished this object, General Ross retired and reëmbarked his troops.

The squadron which entered the Potomac was suffered to pass up to Alexandria without opposition. The inhabitants of that place agreed to a capitulation, by which all their merchandise, shipping and naval stores were surrendered. Having collected their booty, including the stores of provisions, of which this place was the depot, the squadron returned to the bay.

The remaining detachment of the British was repulsed by the Americans, and returned without accomplishing anything of importance.

The next object of attack was Baltimore. On the 12th of Ninth month, (Sept.,) a British squadron sailed into Baltimore harbor, and commenced landing the troops, five thousand in number, at North Point, fourteen miles below the city. The Americans had prepared themselves for this attack. The

---

Baltimore attacked.British repulsed.

---

1814 troops who had recently been engaged near Washington, with the militia of Maryland and some from Pennsylvania and Virginia, had assembled for the defence of the city. A detachment of three thousand five hundred militia was sent forward to impede the progress of the invaders. In a skirmish which ensued about eight miles from the city, General Ross, the British commander, was killed. The forces continued to advance under Colonel Brook. At half past three, an attack on the American detachment was commenced by the firing of cannon. One of the militia regiments gave way, and the Americans withdrew toward the city, where the main body awaited an attack.

When within two miles of the American lines, the British halted to await the result of an attack on Forts McHenry and Covington, situated on a narrow part of the Patapsco, at its entrance into Baltimore harbor. On the 13th, at sunrise, they were bombarded by the British squadron. On the following night, twelve hundred men were detached to storm the works, and the battle raged furiously until morning. The fire from the fort was severe. One of the British vessels was sunk, with all on board. Finding that the forts could not be overcome, the British admiral, after consulting with Colonel Brook, resolved that all the forces should be withdrawn. Accordingly, the troops were reëmbarked, and the whole fleet sailed down the Chesapeake.

In Eighth month, (Aug.,) three British ships of war arrived at Pensacola, bringing three hundred soldiers, with military stores and provisions. The troops were allowed to take possession of the Spanish fort, and the British commander soon after issued a proclamation, calling on the inhabitants of Louisiana, Kentucky and Tennessee, to unite with him in the prosecution of the war. With this informa-

---

General Jackson attacks Pensacola.

---

tion, General Jackson, commander of the American army in 1814 the south-west, also learned that a great additional force was daily expected at Pensacola.

A band of pirates had established themselves on the island of Barrataria, near the mouth of the Mississippi. All efforts on the part of the American government to seize these outlaws had hitherto proved unavailing, and the shipping continued to be exposed to their depredations. The British commander at Pensacola now endeavored to engage them in his service, and communicated at the same time, important information with regard to his plans. Although a reward had been offered for the head of Lafitte, their chief, he could not be induced to act the part of a traitor, but immediately communicated the whole to the governor of Louisiana. A pardon was offered to the band, on condition of their engaging in the defence of the country. The proposal was gladly accepted, and important services were performed by the Barratarians.

In Ninth month, (Sept.,) an expedition was sent from Pensacola, then in possession of Spain, against Fort Bowyer, which commands the entrance to Mobile, where Jackson had established his head-quarters. The expedition was unsuccessful, and returned to Pensacola, having lost a large number in killed and wounded.

General Jackson had remonstrated with the governor of Pensacola against his conduct in harboring the British, and allowing them to fit out expeditions against the United States from that port. The remonstrance had no effect, and the possession of that post by the British being injurious to the United States, Jackson concluded to dislodge them. Early in Eleventh month, (Nov.,) he appeared before the town, and immediately sent a flag to the governor, communicating the

---

General Jackson at New Orleans.

---

1814 object of his visit. The flag was fired upon from the batteries, and was recalled. The fort was then stormed and possession obtained. The British were compelled to retreat to their shipping, effecting their escape by blowing up a fortress belonging to the Spaniards. The governor surrendered the town and forts, and soon after signed a capitulation by which Pensacola and its dependencies were delivered to the United States.

A projected attack on New Orleans induced General Jackson to repair thither with his troops. The British had for some time been assembling their forces in the West Indies, in preparation, and all who could be spared from service on the coast of the United States, were ordered there, as well as large reinforcements from England. Jackson arrived in New Orleans on the 2d of Twelfth month, (Dec.) He found the inhabitants in a state of confusion and alarm. The population was composed of various nations, and there had hardly been time, since the transfer of Louisiana to the United States, for a strong national attachment to be formed. Many of the inhabitants were friendly to the British ; the city was not well defended ; it could be approached from various quarters, none of which were strongly fortified, and many of the militia had refused to turn out.

General Jackson immediately adopted efficient means for the protection of the city. He visited the exposed points, and encouraged the citizens to leave no place unfortified. Batteries were constructed to guard the approach by the Mississippi, and the inlets were obstructed by various means. The spirits of the inhabitants revived, and many expressed their intention of repelling the British or dying for their country.

The Mississippi flows into the Gulf of Mexico by several

---

The British obtain possession of the lakes.Martial law.

---

channels. One of these, leaving the river above the city, 1814 runs east and forms in its course Lakes Ponchartrain and Borgne. On the 14th of Twelfth month, (Dec.,) the British entered this channel and attacked the American flotilla, stationed for its defence. Their force amounted to twelve hundred men. After a resistance of one hour, against numbers far greater than their own, the Americans surrendered. They lost forty men in killed and wounded; the British were supposed to have lost three hundred. The British thus obtained the command of Lakes Ponchartrain and Borgne.

This defeat induced Jackson to make use of more vigorous measures on land. All the militia were called out, the negroes were set to work on the fortifications, and disaffection continuing and threatening danger to the safety of the city, on the 16th, martial law was proclaimed by General Jackson, after consultation with the governor and other leading citizens. This extremely rigid measure relieved the city from the disaffected, and the citizens labored day and night at the fortifications.

The bayous and canals leading to New Orleans had mostly been obstructed with great care. One pass, however, called the bayou Bienvenue, little known, and used only by fishermen, was left open and but slightly guarded. Guided by some traitors, the British, having effected a landing from the lakes, of which they now had possession, and having made the American guard prisoners, marched on and reached the bank of the Mississippi, a few miles below the city, on the afternoon of the 23d.

Jackson immediately collected about two thousand men, and marched toward their camp in the evening. The darkness preventing a discovery, a furious and sudden attack was made upon them, both by land and from the schooner Caro-

## Fortifications constructed.

## Attacked.

1814 line. The camp fires of the British served as a light to direct the attack. These were soon extinguished, and the British made a vigorous resistance. They were however thrown into some confusion, and had lost nearly three hundred in killed, wounded and missing, when General Jackson withdrew his troops to a stronger position near the city.

On the east side of the river, reaching to an extensive cypress swamp, a ditch had been dug, which now contained five feet of water. On its northern bank, entrenchments were thrown up, and large quantities of cotton bales so arranged as to protect the troops from the fire of the British. The works were well mounted with artillery, and on the western side of the river, a heavy battery was constructed.

1815 On the 28th of Twelfth month, (Dec.,) and on the 1st of First month, (Jan.,) vigorous attacks were made upon these fortifications, with rockets, bombs and heavy cannonades. The fire from the Americans was so destructive, that in both instances, the British troops were withdrawn. Shortly afterward both armies were reinforced. The Americans then numbered seven thousand men, the British about twelve thousand.

The British commander now resolved to exert all his strength in a combined attack on the Americans on both sides of the river. With great labor and industry he opened a canal connecting Lake Borgne with the main channel of the Mississippi. He was thus enabled to transport a part of his boats and troops, to assist in the attack. This work was completed on the 7th of First month, (Jan.)

• Early in the morning of the 8th, the main body of the British moved forward to the assault. While approaching, showers of grape shot were fired upon them, and when sufficiently near, a heavy and incessant cannonade was opened, which

---

Battle of New Orleans.Treaty of peace.

---

caused great slaughter in their ranks. They continued to approach, fresh troops supplying the place of those who fell. When within reach of the American small arms, the fire was so destructive, that the British retreated in confusion. In endeavoring to rally them, their commander, General Packenham, was killed. The British columns approached a second and a third time, within a short distance of the ditch. In both cases the slaughter was terrible. They fell back, and retreated in confusion to their camp. Already the field was covered with the bodies of nearly two thousand dead and wounded. The Americans lost but seven killed and six wounded. 1815

On the west side of the river, the Americans, after some resistance, fled and were pursued by the British, until, learning the defeat of the main army, they recrossed the river and returned to their intrenchments.

The British fleet, on leaving New Orleans, proceeded to Mobile Bay, and took possession of Fort Bowyer. Further acts of hostility were arrested by the arrival of news of peace.

The commissioners on the part of the American government to treat for peace, proceeded to Ghent soon after their appointment. The British commissioners did not arrive until after long delay. At first they were exacting in their demands, but when intelligence of more recent occurrences in America reached Europe, their views changed, and a treaty was signed by the commissioners at Ghent, on the 24th of Twelfth month, (Dec.,) 1814, and immediately after, ratified by the Prince Regent of England. On the 17th of Second month, (Feb.,) 1815, it was ratified by the President of the United States, with the approbation of the Senate.

All grounds for the war had been removed by the restoration of peace in Europe. The orders in council had been

---

Terms of the treaty.

---

1815 repealed, and no motive now existed with the British government for the interruption of American commerce and the impressment of American seamen. By the treaty, the conquests on both sides were restored, with the exception of the islands in the Bay of Passamaquoddy, which were left for future settlement. Provision was made for arranging the boundaries between the United States and Canada. All hostilities were to cease with the Indians, provided they desisted from war-like operations, and both parties agreed to use their best endeavors to promote the abolition of the slave trade. A treaty to regulate commerce between the two countries was signed some months after, by both parties.

## CHAPTER XXIX.

FROM THE TREATY OF PEACE WITH ENGLAND IN 1815,  
TO THE MEXICAN CONTROVERSY.

---

War with Algiers.

---

THE Algerines having taken the opportunity afforded by 1815 the war with Great Britain, to make depredations on American commerce, war was declared against them early in the spring. A squadron, under Commodore Decatur, sailed from New York on the 20th of Fourth month, (April,) and captured two Algerine vessels before reaching Algiers. In these engagements they took four hundred and six prisoners. The appearance of the squadron so intimidated the Dey, that he was induced to sign a treaty of amity with the United States. All claims for tribute from this government were relinquished; all Americans in slavery were to be given up without ransom, on the restoration of the prisoners recently taken by the American squadron. Vessels of either party, if attacked within cannon shot of a fort of the other, were to be protected; and in case of war again breaking out between the two governments, prisoners should not be made slaves, but should be treated as prisoners of war, and exchanged accordingly. These were the principal stipulations of the treaty. An American consul was left at Algiers, and Decatur proceeded to Tunis. Commodore Bainbridge having been sent out in charge of a relief squadron, arrangements were soon after made for the security of American commerce in the Mediterranean.

---

General Jackson sent against the Seminoles.

---

1816 The charter of the Bank of North America, established by Washington, having expired, the Bank of the United States was instituted, with a charter for twenty years. Indiana was admitted into the Union, during this year, forming the nineteenth State; and treaties of peace were concluded with several tribes of Indians. President Madison's second term of office being about to expire, James Monroe was elected to succeed him, and Daniel<sup>D.</sup> Tompkins, of New York, was elected to the office of Vice-President. They entered upon their duties on the 4th of Third month, (March,) 1817.

1817 The Spanish provinces in America were at this time in a state of revolt, the United States maintaining a neutral position. In the summer of 1817, some adventurers, claiming to act under the authority of the revolted colonies, took possession of Amelia Island, at the mouth of St. Mary's river, which forms the boundary between Florida and Georgia. This island had been a subject of negotiation with Spain, for territory of equal value lying west of the Mississippi. As it was now made a channel for the introduction of slaves into the United States, as well as a harbor for fugitive slaves from the neighboring States, and a port for smuggling, the American government deemed itself authorized to dispossess the intruders, which was accordingly done.

The Seminole Indians, residing on the borders of the United States and Florida, had rendered themselves obnoxious to the people of the South, by affording an asylum to runaway slaves, and had also made hostile incursions into the neighboring States. General Jackson was therefore ordered to proceed against them with a military force. He followed them to their retreats, and several skirmishes took place. His whole force, including friendly Creek

---

Pensacola taken.Purchase of Florida.

---

Indians, amounted to three or four thousand. The Spanish fort of St. Mark was taken, the garrison not having preserved neutrality; the country was scoured in pursuit of the Indians, and their towns were destroyed.

Jackson then proceeded to Pensacola. Some of the Indians had obtained provisions in the town, and on the ground that protection had been afforded them, the American army took possession of the place, with a fort near it, and sent the Spanish authorities and garrison to Havana. This occupancy of neutral territory occasioned much dissatisfaction in Congress, and the town and fortress were ordered by the President to be given up, whenever a sufficient Spanish force should demand them.

In the year 1819, the Spanish minister at Washington 1819 agreed to cede to the United States, East and West Florida, with the adjacent islands, for the sum of five millions of dollars, a consideration having been allowed for Spanish spoliation. The Spanish government raised complaints on various points, and many delays occurred before king Ferdinand could be induced to sign the treaty. It was finally ratified in 1821. The Spanish residents who chose to remain were absolved from their allegiance to Spain. The possession of West Florida was formally relinquished to General Jackson, who had been appointed governor of that portion of the province, and that of East Florida, to Colonel Robert Butler, American commissioner.

In 1821, James Monroe was inaugurated President for a 1821 second term of four years. During his administration, five States were admitted into the Union, in as many consecutive years; Mississippi in 1817, Illinois in 1818, Alabama in 1819, Maine, formerly attached to Massachusetts, in 1820, and Missouri in 1821. The question of the admission of the

---

Admission of Missouri.Treaties with Indian tribes.

---

1821 latter State caused great excitement, not only in Congress, but throughout the country. The existence of slavery in the country had given rise to conflicting interests between the North and South. The northern members of Congress were generally in favor of the exclusion of slavery from the new State, the southern members were strenuous that it should be allowed; each being desirous of holding or retaining the balance of power in the federal government. The North yielded, and Missouri was added to the list of slave-holding States, with a compromise establishing the parallel of  $36^{\circ} 30'$ , as the boundary between the slave and free States, west of the Mississippi. In 1819, a territorial government was formed for Arkansas, and in 1822, one for Florida.

James Monroe's second term of office having nearly expired, an election was held for his successor. Four candidates were proposed, and the choice devolved on the House of Representatives. They selected John Quincy Adams, of Massachusetts. John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina, had been elected Vice-President.

During the first two years of the administration of John Quincy Adams, treaties were concluded with several Indian tribes. The Creeks ceded the land occupied by them in the State of Georgia, the United States agreeing to give them an equal number of acres west of the Mississippi, in a favorable situation, which a deputation from the Indians was to be allowed to explore previously.

The Kansas ceded most of their lands, lying within the limits of the State of Missouri. The United States agreed to pay them thirty-five hundred dollars yearly for twenty years, to provide for their education and civilization, and to supply them with a stipulated quantity of agricultural stock. A

## The Tariff.

## New treaty with Great Britain.

similar treaty was made with the Great and Little Osages, residing mostly in Arkansas.

During the year 1825, a treaty of amity, commerce and navigation was made with the Republic of Columbia; and in the following year, one was concluded with the king of Denmark, and another with the confederation of Central America.

The subject of establishing a Tariff of duties on imports, had been before Congress, during the administration of James Monroe. It was again brought up under John Quincy Adams, and in 1828, a bill passed for the protection of American manufactures, by charging a duty on the importation of such articles from foreign countries as were manufactured in the United States. The bill passed Congress by a small majority, and was much opposed by members from the Southern States, who had no manufacturing interest, as well as by others, who considered it detrimental to commerce.

In the autumn of 1828, General Andrew Jackson was elected President of the United States, and John C. Calhoun reëlected Vice-President. The inauguration took place in the following spring.

At the next session of Congress, the Tariff bill again came under consideration. General Jackson, in his message, however, advocated sufficient protection to home manufactures, to enable them to compete with foreign productions, and no bill for the reduction of the duties could be carried through Congress.

In 1830, a new treaty of commerce was made with Great Britain, which removed the restrictions previously existing, by which no American vessels had been allowed to trade with the British colonies, on the payment of any duty whatever, nor could British vessels from the colonies enter the ports of the United States.

---

General Scott sent against the Indians.

---

In the same year, a treaty with Turkey was signed, which opened to this country the navigation of the Black Sea, and the trade of the Turkish Empire.

1831 In the message of the President to Congress in the autumn of 1831, he announced that the public debt would be liquidated in the year 1833. A bill for the re-charter of the United States Bank passed both Houses by a small majority, after a long debate. Jackson had formed the opinion that the bank was prejudicial to the interests of the country, and returned the bill without affixing his signature, with a communication stating his reasons for so doing. A majority of two-thirds in both Houses, which the Constitution requires when the signature of the President is withheld, could not be obtained. The bank therefore was obliged to close its operations, at the expiration of its first charter in 1836.

1832 In the spring of 1832, a body of troops under General Scott was sent against the Winnebagoes and other neighboring tribes of Indians, who had committed acts of hostility on the north western frontier, arising partly from the injustice of their white neighbors, and partly from dissatisfaction with the stipulations of a treaty made with them in 1823. The war was closed by the capture of the celebrated chief, Black Hawk. He, with others of the Indians, was taken to Washington and several other cities, to impress them with the strength of the country. They were then allowed to return home. Treaties were made with several Indian tribes, by which valuable lands were ceded to the United States, the Indians removing farther west.

During a great part of the session the previous winter, Congress was occupied with a discussion of the Tariff bill. An act was finally passed which lowered the duties on some articles. The change was not sufficient to satisfy the Southern

## Nullifiers.

States which had not engaged in manufactures, and where the raw material only was produced. In Georgia and the Carolinas a determined opposition to the bill was manifested. In South Carolina a convention assembled from all parts of the State, and declared the tariff acts of 1828 and 1832 as null and void, and not binding on the citizens of the State ; that if the United States should attempt to enforce them, the Union should be dissolved. The upholders of these proceedings were styled Nullifiers. The Legislature of South Carolina passed an act authorizing the governor to repel force by force. 1832

While this excitement existed in South Carolina, the meeting of Congress again drew near, and all parties anxiously awaited the result. In the recess, General Jackson had been reëlected President, and Martin Van Buren, to succeed John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina, as Vice-President.

Soon after the assembling of Congress, the President issued a proclamation, in which he stated his views of the Constitution and laws applicable to the measures of the South Carolinians, asserted the right and power of the general government to regulate commerce and imposts, called upon the people of South Carolina to desist from their opposition, and upon the people of the United States to support him in the execution of the laws.

The friends of the Union were immediately united in the support of the President. South Carolina, however, was not intimidated, and John C. Calhoun, one of their leading statesmen, and former Vice-President of the United States, was elected to the Senate. In order to conciliate the Nullifiers, a bill was introduced into Congress for reducing the duties, after the 3d of Third month, (March,) 1833, and the Nullifiers consented to postpone any action on the resolution of the convention of citizens of South Carolina, until after that period.

---

New Tariff bill.Bank of the United States.

---

1833 The bill, however, did not satisfy either party, and two months were spent in debates. While the tariff was under discussion, a bill for more effectually enforcing the collection of the duties passed both Houses of Congress and received the sanction of the President.

The difficulties of the tariff were at length overcome by the introduction of a bill by Henry Clay of Kentucky, which provided for a gradual reduction of the duties until 1842. This bill was supported by J. C. Calhoun and other southern members, passed both Houses of Congress, and received the signature of the President.

On the 4th of Third month, (March,) General Jackson delivered his inaugural address, on commencing the second term of his presidency. The principal subjects were the importance of the union of the States, and the dangers that would be incurred by a separation.

President Jackson's hostility to the Bank of the United States led to the transfer, in this year, of the government deposits from this institution to a number of smaller banks. His opinion was that extensive moneyed corporations were detrimental to the interests of the country. He endeavored also to substitute, to a very great extent, a metallic currency for bank notes. The removal of the deposits, the President defended in a communication addressed to the cabinet ; but it was contended by many, that the measure was unconstitutional. Much commercial embarrassment was the consequence. The bank was obliged to diminish its issues and discounts. This was felt more or less in all parts of the country ; business operations were to some extent suspended, property depreciated, and bankruptcies necessarily followed.

The next session of Congress was mostly occupied with discussions connected with the late act of the President. Petitions flowed into the House of Representatives for the

Difficulties with France.

Mediation of England.

restoration of the public funds to the Bank of the United States; but the majority of the members upheld the President. The Senate was hostile to his measures, and a resolution was passed censuring his conduct, and pronouncing it unconstitutional. 1834

Although the country suffered much for a time, in consequence of the opposition of General Jackson to the Bank of the United States, yet commercial operations soon accommodated themselves to the new arrangement, and business resumed its wonted activity.

By a treaty made with France in 1831, that government agreed to pay to the United States, the sum of twenty-five millions of francs, as indemnity for spoliations on our commerce, committed under the Berlin and Milan decrees of Napoleon. The amount had not been paid, and in the President's message, at the assembling of Congress in Twelfth month, (Dec.,) 1834, he suggested the propriety of making reprisals on French commerce, in case of further delay. The Senate was opposed to any hostile measures; the House of Representatives, after much discussion, agreed that the execution of the treaty should be insisted on. The French government recalled its minister, and the American minister at Paris was requested to return home, in the event of the continued refusal of the French government to pay the money. A bill soon after passed the French Chambers, authorizing the payment of the money as soon as satisfactory explanation had been made to France, of the President's language. In this state of affairs, Great Britain tendered her mediation, and both parties were willing to accept the offer. Thus, by the intercession of a friendly power, the differences were adjusted, which might have terminated in war between the two countries. 1835

---

Seminole war.

---

1835 The Seminole Indians in Florida continued to harbor fugitive slaves. The character of their territory afforded protection to the refugees, and it was with difficulty that any who escaped to the Indians could be retaken. This kept up a continuous feeling of hostility between the Indians and the white inhabitants of the neighboring States. In the summer of 1835, a party of Seminoles crossed the bounds of their land, for the purpose of hunting. They were observed by some white men, who commenced flogging them with their whips used for driving the slaves. The Indians were exasperated and fired on the whites. The fire was returned. Three white men were killed; one Indian was killed and another wounded.

This affray was the commencement of a series of hostilities which led to a war with the Seminoles that continued for seven years, and cost the country forty millions of dollars. The greater part of the regular army, with a large body of volunteers, was sent against the Indians. The Creeks and several other tribes united with the Seminoles. Great numbers of them were killed, others captured, and many were finally transported to the western territories of the United States.

During the administration of Andrew Jackson, the public debt was extinguished, and the money due from the French government for depredations under the Berlin and Milan decrees being received, caused a large surplus in the treasury. This money was deposited in State banks, which had arisen on the downfall of the Bank of the United States. In the summer of 1836, Congress passed a bill for distributing the surplus revenue money among the several States of the Union. This bill received the sanction of the President, and the money was accordingly apportioned, and paid by

Texas.

Finances of the country.

instalments. During this year Arkansas was admitted into the Union, under the Missouri compromise, as a slave-holding State. 1836

General Jackson's second term of office having expired, Martin Van Buren, of New York, was elected to succeed him. Richard M. Johnson, of Kentucky, was elected Vice-President. During the following session of Congress, a bill was introduced recognizing the independence of Texas. That country was formerly a province of Mexico, but had declared itself independent, and a war on that account still existed between Mexico and Texas. The consideration of the bill in Congress was postponed. A salary was however appropriated for a Texas chargé d' affaires, whenever the President should think proper to appoint one; which he did before retiring from office. 1837

The finances of the country were at this time much deranged. A spirit of speculation had arisen, caused mainly by the banks having made large issues of notes based on the deposits of public money held by them. This caused a large circulation of paper money, and sales of unappropriated public lands took place to an unprecedented extent. These lands were paid for in bank notes, which being conveyed to the banks by the land agents, were immediately put in circulation again, the government being credited by the banks with the amount of the notes thus received. Many of the banks, especially those in the Western States, were incurring a debt which greatly exceeded their immediate means of payment. Much uneasiness was felt, lest they should be unable to redeem their obligations, and the credits to the government be of no avail. A treasury circular was therefore issued, which required the payment for lands to be made in specie, and prohibited all sales of public lands to any but settlers.

---

The banks suspend specie payment.

---

1837 The inauguration of the new President took place on the 4th of Third month, (March,) 1837. The spirit of speculation had been carried to such an extent, that it was now succeeded by a general feeling of distrust. The storm at length burst. Extensive failures occurred in the principal cities, and spread throughout the country. A general panic followed, which increased the demands on the banks. Being unable to meet them, a suspension of specie payment ensued. The value of bank notes being exceedingly uncertain, the Secretary of the Treasury gave orders to the revenue collectors to receive nothing but specie, or paper convertible into specie on demand, in payment of revenue bonds; that is, bonds given by merchants in lieu of immediate payment of duties on imported goods. The distress was felt among all classes. Public works were stopped; the manufacturer ceased operations. Thousands were thrown out of employment, whose daily labor was the maintenance of their families.

In consequence of the state of the finances, an extra session of Congress was held. A bill was passed deferring the payment of the fourth instalment of surplus revenue to the States until the commencement of the year 1839. Another bill authorized the issue of treasury notes equal to any deficiency in the revenue that might ensue, with four millions of dollars additional; the rate of interest to be fixed by the Secretary of the Treasury, and not to exceed six per cent. A bill also passed, allowing an extension of the payment of revenue bonds, and one authorizing the warehousing in bonds of imported goods, for a term not exceeding three years; that is, the depositing of these goods in government storehouses for three years, or until the importer should be able to pay the duty.

Sub-Treasury.

Rebellion in Canada.

Border difficulties.

A bill, organizing a Sub-Treasury system, was introduced 1837 and warmly debated, but deferred for future consideration. By this bill, the funds of the government, instead of being deposited in banks, were to be placed in the hands of assistant treasurers, located in various places, who were to pay them out, on the order of the Secretary of the Treasury, under the appropriation of Congress. In the Report of this officer, presented at the following session of Congress, the receipts for the year were estimated at nearly twenty-three millions five hundred thousand dollars.

In the autumn Congress again met, at the usual time. Its attention was in part occupied by difficulties which had occurred on the borders of the United States and Canada, in consequence of a rebellion in that province. The President had forbidden by proclamation all interference by American citizens, and ordered the United States Marshal to execute warrants of arrest against all who should violate the neutrality of the nation. To preserve the peace, Gen. Scott was sent to the frontier with a portion of the New York troops.

The burning of a small American steamboat, called the *Caroline*, by order of the commander of the Canadian militia, caused a great excitement. She was at anchor at Fort Schlossen, on the Niagara river, opposite Navy Island, where a body of insurgents had collected. The commander of the Canada militia suspected her of having conveyed ammunition and supplies to the rebels, and on that account despatched a party of militia, who, after an affray in which several persons were killed, made themselves masters of the vessel, and setting her on fire, suffered her to drift down the stream, and to pass over the Falls of Niagara. The circumstance gave rise to a correspondence between the Secretary of State and the British minister at Washington, which did not result in any

---

North-eastern boundary.

---

1838 action. After a long debate in Congress, a bill passed for the preservation of neutrality.

In the course of the session, the Sub-Treasury bill passed the Senate after a full debate, but was lost in the House. A bill granting a right of preëmption to first settlers on unoccupied public lands, passed both Houses.

During the year 1838, the banks throughout the country generally resumed specie payments, and credit revived, giving the usual life to business. A convention was held at Washington for fixing the boundary between this country and Texas. The Cherokees removed west of the Mississippi, relinquishing to the United States the land they had occupied.

A dispute had for some time been going on with the British government, respecting the boundary line between the State of Maine and the British Provinces. At times it assumed a threatening aspect. Early in this year, a party of British subjects invaded the disputed territory, and cut down a large quantity of timber. An armed force was immediately sent to drive off the trespassers, and to prevent the carrying away of the timber; after which the party was to return. The American land agent, however, as he was about uniting with the agent appointed by the governor of New Brunswick, in watching the trespassers, was arrested. In retaliation the English officer was arrested by the American party, and conveyed to Bangor.

An excited correspondence followed between the governors of New Brunswick and of Maine, and preparations were made by the Province and State for hostilities. Both the prisoners were soon after liberated on parole, and the discussion of the affair was transferred to Washington. After a long debate, the subject was referred to the Committee on Foreign Affairs, who recommended that the President should be instructed to

---

General Harrison.His death.

---

repel any invasion of the territory of the United States, and that appropriations should be made for fortifications, and for the building and repair of vessels of war. Commissioners were afterward sent out from England to examine the disputed territory. In the next session of Congress, twenty-five thousand dollars were appropriated toward the expenses of the survey. The excitement subsided, but the difficulty was not finally adjusted until 1842.

Toward the close of 1838, the United States Bank once more suspended specie payments. The example was followed by many other banks, again causing dismay in the commercial world.

In the autumn of 1840, Gen. Wm. Henry Harrison, of Ohio, was elected President, and John Tyler, of Virginia, Vice-President. The inauguration took place in Third Month, (March,) following.

The new President had been elected by a large majority. 1841  
Great confidence was felt in his ability and integrity, and strong hopes were entertained by his friends that the commercial and financial relations of the country would be restored to their former healthful condition.

In the ordering of an overruling Providence, these high anticipations were never to be realized. General Harrison died at Washington, on the morning of the 4th of Fourth month, (April,) 1841, just one month after his inauguration, in the sixty-ninth year of his age. A national fast was proclaimed, and demonstrations of the affection and respect of the people took place throughout the Union.

According to the Constitution, John Tyler now succeeded to the office of President. His views of the policy of the government were not in accordance with those of General Harrison. By his message at the opening of Congress, it

---

President Tyler.

---

1841 appeared that the population of the country was seventeen millions, having doubled in twenty-three years.

A special session of Congress had been called. One important object was the passing of a bill for the establishment of a new Bank of the United States. The measure was defeated by the refusal of the President's signature. A second bill was prepared, and another exercise of the veto power took place. The members of the cabinet consequently all resigned their offices, with the exception of Daniel Webster, Secretary of State. They were the same who had been chosen by Gen. Harrison, and had been retained in office by President Tyler. Before the close of the session a bill passed Congress, and received the signature of the President, for the distribution of the proceeds of the public lands.

All danger arising from the difficulties in Canada was not yet over. Alexander McLeod had been arrested in New York and committed for trial, on the charge of being concerned in the attack on the *Caroline*. The British minister demanded his release, and signified that the surrender of McLeod was essential to the preservation of good understanding between the two countries. The President refused to release him, and much excitement was felt throughout the country. On trial, however, he was acquitted.

The government of Great Britain had united with some other nations for the suppression of the African slave trade; and each of the parties had conceded to the other the right of search under certain restrictions. The United States would not enter into the arrangement, unwilling, under any circumstances, to grant the right of search. The slave trade was prosecuted to a very great extent; and in order to prevent detection, the flag of the United States was soon made use of to carry on this iniquitous traffic.

---

The Amistad.

---

Toward the close of the year 1839, a great degree of interest was excited in the minds of the American people, especially those opposed to slavery, by the seizure in Long Island Sound, of the Amistad, schooner, and imprisonment of Africans on board. On the passage of this vessel from Havana to Principe, employed in conveying some newly imported Africans, the Africans rose in revolt, killed the captain, and obtained command, some of the sailors having escaped in a boat. Montez, one of the claimants, was directed to steer for the "rising sun." This he did during daylight, but every night changed the vessel's course, and steered for the United States. The schooner was on the coast some time, and was frequently seen, and at length seized in Long Island Sound, by a government officer, and taken into the port of New London. The Africans were committed to jail in New Haven, to answer to the charge of murder. But at the meeting of the Circuit Court of the United States, the Grand Jury found that as the offence was committed on board a Spanish vessel on the high seas, the men were not amenable to our laws for the act. The Spanish claimants demanded that the negroes should be given up for trial, in a country subject to the crown of Spain. This step, which would have been equivalent to remanding them to slavery or death, was declined. They were continued in prison for a long time, and finally set at liberty by the Supreme Court of the United States, and sent to their native country by some Christian friends, who took advantage of this opportunity to establish a mission at Kaw-mendi. Margree, one of the Amistad negroes, was converted to Christianity in Africa, sent to this country to be educated, and after a residence of upwards of two years, returned to Africa, where she became a teacher in a school of eighty native children.

---

Brig Creole.New Tariff bill.

---

The Spanish minister in this country has applied several times for compensation for the value of the Amistad negroes ; and although the Senate has at two different times passed a bill to that effect, it has been defeated in the House of Representatives.

A circumstance attendant on the prosecution of the domestic slave trade, and which caused much excitement, especially at the South, occurred in 1840. The brig Creole, of Richmond, Virginia, bound for New Orleans, sailed for that port, having on board one hundred and thirty-five slaves. In the course of the voyage, some of them rose on the crew, murdered a passenger, who, by law, owned some of them, and dangerously wounded the captain. Having obtained command of the vessel, it was taken to Nassau, on the Island of New Providence. On arriving, a guard was placed on board, at the request of the American consul, to prevent the escape of the mutineers. They were, however, afterward liberated. The governor of the island maintained that the slaves became free on landing in British territory, and that he could not recognize the claim of American owners.

1842 In 1842, the Tariff was again the subject of debate in Congress. A new bill, which passed both Houses, was vetoed by the President. Later in the session, it was modified so as to reduce the duties, and again passed. This bill received the signature of President Tyler.

Several subjects of dispute, which remained unsettled, had arisen between England and the United States. In the spring, Lord Ashburton was sent to this country, as a special ambassador, with full powers to make an adjustment of all differences between the two governments. A treaty was negotiated with Daniel Webster, Secretary of State, on the part of the United States, and signed by the two plenipoten-

---

New treaty with England.Commissioners from Texas.

---

tiaries, on the 9th of Eighth month, (Aug.,) the treaty to be 1842  
duly ratified in London, in six months from that date. The  
north-eastern boundary line was definitely settled. It was  
also stipulated that each of the two governments should  
maintain, on the coast of Africa, a naval force of not less  
than eighty guns, for the purpose of enforcing the laws, rights  
and obligations of the two countries for the suppression of  
the African slave trade. The parties were also to unite in  
remonstrances with those powers within whose dominions  
markets for foreign slaves existed, and to urge upon them  
the duty of closing such markets. The treaty was ratified  
by the Senate on the 20th of Eighth month, (Aug.,) soon  
after which Congress adjourned.

The Tariff bill did not yet give satisfaction, and was again 1844  
brought before Congress. An attempt to reduce still further  
the duties on imports, was defeated.

An application had been made by the government of  
Texas, for annexation to the United States, and commission-  
ers were appointed to treat with this nation. The annexa-  
tion of that large district of country to this government had  
been a favorite project of the slave-holding interest. The  
territory from which slave-holding States might be formed,  
had been reduced to narrow limits by the Missouri compro-  
mise, and if the formation of free States was continued, from  
territory north of the prescribed bounds, the North would  
hold the balance of power in the Senate, and by an increased  
number of Representatives, would be able to control the  
government. The rapid increase of population, and the  
prosperous condition of the north-western States, gave evi-  
dence that this would be the case. A treaty of annexation,  
negotiated by the Secretary of State and the commissioners  
on the part of Texas, was signed by President Tyler, but was  
rejected by the Senate.

---

Its annexation desired by the South.

---

1844    There were other motives which influenced the slave-holding party in the wish to add this territory to the United States. Mexico had abolished slavery in all her dominions ; and so large a district of free country in immediate proximity to the Southern States, would be hostile to the maintenance of slavery. The desire to sustain a system of wrong leads to unjust measures ; and it is with mortification that the faithful historian is obliged to delineate the subserviency of this government to the interests of two hundred and fifty thousand slave-holding citizens of the South. It will not be until the rights of the humblest individual, irrespective of color, are sacredly upheld, that this nation will deserve the respect from the civilized world, which her noble institutions might otherwise so signally claim.

## CHAPTER XXX.

### THE MEXICAN WAR, WITH SOME OF THE CAUSES WHICH LED TO IT.

---

Aid furnished the Texans.

---

EMIGRATION to Texas from the southern portion of the Union, had been encouraged by citizens in the slave-holding States, and could its independence be obtained, an important step toward its acquisition as a portion of the United States would be accomplished. Accordingly, during the struggle in that country to throw off the government of Mexico, aid was openly furnished the insurgents from the United States, and this government so far manifested its sympathy as to appoint four consuls to reside among them, for the purpose, it would seem, of facilitating the progress of independence. The remonstrances of the Mexican minister against these violations of neutrality were not sufficiently regarded to prevent a repetition and increase of similar acts. 1835

At this period in the revolt of Texas, the Cabinet again made overtures, without success, for the purchase of the province from Mexico. From this time the attention of the American government appears to have been turned to some other means of obtaining possession.

Early in 1836, General Gaines was sent to the western frontier of the State of Louisiana, ostensibly to prevent the contending parties from entering the territory of the United States. Adventurers were at this time flocking to Texas,

---

United States troops enter Texas.

---

1836 and Texan agents were organizing, in the Southern States, military forces to assist in the revolt. No directions appear to have been given to General Gaines to prevent the passage of these into Texas. A few months later, the forces under General Gaines were allowed to proceed to Nacogdoches, within the limits of the province ; and on the remonstrance of the Mexican minister, the United States Secretary of State, John Forsyth, replied that "to protect Mexico from American Indians, and to protect our frontiers from Mexican Indians, our troops might, if necessary, be sent into the heart of Mexico." There appears to have been no evidence that the Indians contemplated any attack, but a pretext was necessary to explain the occasion of United States troops marching into a neighboring country, at peace with this government.

On the 21st of Fourth month, (April,) 1836, the Texans gained an important victory over the Mexicans at San Jacinto, in which Santa Anna, the president of the Mexican republic, was taken prisoner. This battle rendered the result of the war more certain. Mexico was comparatively exhausted, the number of the Texans was rapidly increasing by recruits from the United States, and the independence of the province was scarcely doubtful. For the purpose of adding to the political power of the southern portion of the Union, the slaveholding power desired its annexation to the United States. This step would involve the nation in a war with Mexico, and the opposition to the measure which was felt at the North, was strengthened by the view of this obvious consequence. The object of the administration, therefore, henceforward was to induce Mexico to commence hostilities against the United States, that Texas might be attached to this government by right of conquest, and with the unanimous consent of her inhabitants.

---

The Mexican minister leaves Washington.

---

On the pretence of protecting the frontier against the Indians, American troops under General Gaines had advanced into Texas. On the 10th of Ninth month, (Sept.,) the Mexican minister at Washington wrote to the Secretary of State, affirming that if this invasion was sanctioned by the government, his mission must terminate. The reply stated that American troops were then stationed at Nacogdoches, and orders had been given for them to enter the Mexican territory, in case General Gaines should be satisfied that any Indians, disturbing the peace of the American frontier, were receiving assistance or shelter within the Mexican territory. The minister denied any wish on the part of Mexico to excite the Indians against the United States, and formally demanded the withdrawal of the troops from Texas. This demand was promptly refused, and the minister was informed that, by treaty, each party was bound to restrain its own Indians from making hostile incursions upon the territories of the other, and Mexico being unable to fulfil her engagement, the United States had the right, in self-defence, to occupy her territory. No evidence was offered to show that the frontiers of the United States were menaced by Mexican Indians, and two days subsequently the minister demanded his passports. 1836

Thus far the efforts for the suspension of diplomatic intercourse with Mexico were successful. Shortly after the victory at San Jacinto, the Secretary of State forwarded to Powhatan Ellis, American minister at Mexico, a list of fifteen complaints against the Mexican government, which he was expected to present without delay; although the acknowledgment was made at the same time, that "the Department is not in possession of proof of all the circumstances of the wrong done in the above cases." Such reparation was to be demanded, "as these accumulated wrongs may be found to

---

Alleged grievances.

---

1836 require ;” and if no satisfactory answer were given in three weeks, the minister was to announce that unless redress were afforded without unnecessary delay, his further residence in Mexico would be useless. If this threat were of no avail, he was to notify the government that unless a satisfactory answer were returned in two weeks, he should ask for his passport, and at the expiration of that period, he was to return home, if no satisfaction had been received.

It is unnecessary to enumerate the accumulated wrongs complained of. Two of them were settled before the dispatch from the Secretary of State reached Mexico. They were all of comparatively recent occurrence ; one of them had stood five years, nine had occurred within twelve months. Proof of the statements could not be produced, and if correct, were injuries for which redress could be sought in the Mexican courts. Not one had been justified by the government.

On the 26th of Ninth month, (Sept.,) Ellis laid before the Mexican minister, the thirteen remaining grievances, and was promptly assured that they should be investigated. In less than four weeks afterward, he announced to the government that unless the wrongs complained of were redressed, without unnecessary delay, his further residence in Mexico would be useless. The next day Ellis received a reply to his communication, stating that to decide on the grievances presented, documents were to be collected from various parts of the republic ; that measures had been taken to procure these documents, and promising that when these were received, the decision of the government would be communicated to him. Notwithstanding this reply, on the 4th of Eleventh month, (Nov.,) Ellis, in pursuance of his instructions, gave notice that unless his complaints were satisfactorily answered, in two weeks, he should demand his passports.

---

The American minister leaves Mexico.

---

Before the expiration of the allotted time, a final answer 1836 was received. It was stated that by the existing treaty, citizens of either country were entitled to bring their grievances before the tribunals of the other ; hence it was unnecessary for their respective governments to interfere to procure that justice for them which the courts of law were ready to afford. Nevertheless the government had not declined to examine the complaints preferred by the minister. The replies to the several charges followed, and would have been entirely satisfactory to a government wishing alone for justice, but the object was to provoke Mexico to a war, that a part of her territory might be added by conquest to that of the United States, and the slave-holding power thereby strengthened.

On the 7th of Twelfth month, (Dec.,) the minister demanded his passports. The Mexican government desired to know the cause of such a step. Ellis made no reply. Diplomatic intercourse between the two countries was thus at an end ; and the way was opened for obtaining by force, satisfaction for alleged grievances.

The report of Powhatan Ellis having been received by 1837 President Jackson, he sent a message to Congress, in which he complains of the conduct of Mexico, speaks of the injuries that have been committed, the unavailing applications for redress, and considers that these circumstances, independently of the insults offered to this government and to the people, by the late Mexican minister, would justify immediate war. He would, however, give Mexico one more opportunity to atone for the past, and recommended the passage of an act authorizing reprisals, and the use of the naval force of the United States, by the Executive, against Mexico, in the event of her refusal to come to an amicable adjustment of the matters in controversy, upon another demand thereof, made on

---

Texan constitution.

---

1837 board one of our vessels of war on the coast of Mexico. The proposition of the President was rejected by Congress. The nation was not yet prepared for war.

In the mean time the Texans were making exertions to favor the cause of annexation, and holding out greater incentives to the South. Within fifteen days after their declaration of independence, they adopted a constitution, giving the rights of citizenship to all white emigrants, after a residence of six months, authorizing emigrants to bring their slaves with them, and depriving the legislature of the power to abolish slavery. The importation of all slaves excepting from the United States, was prohibited; and every negro or mulatto remaining on the soil of Texas was doomed to bondage. By vote of the Texans, Twelfth month, (Dec.,) 1836, their territory was made to include, not only the Mexican province of Texas, but the whole of the territory included between the United States and the Rio Grande, from its source to its mouth; forming an area for slavery, calculated to strengthen, if annexed to the United States, the slave-holding power in Congress for an indefinite period of years.

In the year 1836, President Jackson sent an official agent into Texas, from whom he received a report, near the close of the year, on the "Political, military, and civil condition of Texas," which he laid before Congress. In this document, the boundaries of the territory claimed by the new government were defined, and the President, in a message accompanying it, stated that the people of Texas had instituted the same form of government with our own, and had openly resolved on obtaining the acknowledgment by the American government of their independence, and declared their intention to seek admission into the Union, as one of the

---

Independence of Texas acknowledged.

---

Federal States. He also stated that the title of Texas to the territory she claimed, was identified with her independence, and that she asked this government to acknowledge her title, with the avowed design of immediately transferring it to the United States. 1837

It was by this time presumed that Mexico would not probably be provoked into war with the United States. The acknowledgment of Texan independence by this government seemed therefore a necessary preliminary to annexation. The people of the free States were opposed to the acquisition of any more slave territory, and great pains were taken to weaken this opposition, or to quiet its apprehensions, by delusive assurances that any action on the subject would be postponed.

Notwithstanding these assurances, on the first of Third month, (March,) two days before the close of the session of Congress, and in the absence of six members, a resolution passed the Senate, acknowledging the independence of Texas. The resolution afterward passed the House of Representatives; and another important step was thus taken toward the acquisition of a large extent of slave-holding territory.

Before the adjournment of Congress, a schedule of grievances, amounting in number to forty-six, was laid before that body. Thirty-two of these were founded on acts said to have been committed prior to 1832, the date of a treaty of friendship between the two republics, when every thing was considered as settled.

The alleged grievances, for which complaint was to be made to the Mexican government, were entrusted to a courier of the Department of State. On the 20th of Seventh month, (July,) he arrived in the city of Mexico, and demanded redress. Before his arrival, the Mexican govern-

---

Arbitration.

---

1837 ment had passed an act, offering to submit the claims of the United States to the arbitration of a friendly power. A minister was also appointed and sent to Washington.

Immediately on the recognition of Texan independence by the United States, the new republic appointed a minister plenipotentiary, who arrived in Washington, Eighth month, (Aug.,) 1837. Martin Van Buren had succeeded Jackson as President. A proposition for annexation was made on behalf of the Texan government, and declined on the ground that such a step at the present time would result in war with Mexico. For such a consequence the nation was at that time unprepared. It was known that one-third of the senators would withhold their assent.

The Mexican minister, after his appointment, proceeded to Washington, and in Twelfth month, (Dec.,) communicated to the American government, the proposal of Mexico to refer the subjects in controversy to arbitration. At the expiration  
1838 of four months, he was informed of the acceptance of the offer by the President. Negotiations were commenced, and it was finally agreed that all the claims should be referred to a board of four commissioners, two of whom were to be appointed by each party. The board were to meet in Washington, and to sit not more than eighteen months. The award of the commissioners was to be final, but the cases in which they could not agree were to be decided by an umpire, to be named by the king of Prussia.

1840 The session of the board commenced on the 17th of Eighth month, (Aug.,) 1840, and in nine months they had decided upon every claim which had been presented, with the necessary vouchers, at the opening of the session. At the expiration of eighteen months, they were dissolved by the terms of the treaty. The king of Prussia had named his minister at

---

American claims.

---

Washington as umpire. The total amount of claims submitted to the commissioners was nearly twelve millions of dollars, of which upwards of three millions were presented too late to be examined. Of the remainder, nearly three-fourths of the amount claimed were rejected as not being due, a little over two millions being allowed. Supposing the same proportion of the claims not examined to have been just, the debt due from Mexico would be reduced from upwards of eleven millions, the amount claimed, to about three millions. 1840

Two specimens of these claims are given. A. O. de Santangelo was a schoolmaster and printer in Mexico. In one of the revolutionary struggles, he was obliged to leave the country, and abandoned his school and press. He fled to New York, where he became a naturalized citizen of the United States, and in that capacity, brought in a bill of \$398,690 against the Mexican government for damages. The Mexican commissioners denied that anything was due; the American commissioners allowed him \$83,440. This amount the umpire cut down to \$50,000, one-eighth of the demand. \$1,170 were claimed for a trunk of wearing apparel, seized by a Mexican Custom House officer, with \$311.50 interest, making \$1,481.50. The whole claim was allowed by the American commissioners, and left undecided by the umpire.

John Tyler, who had succeeded to the presidency on the death of General Harrison, appointed Waddy Thompson, of South Carolina, minister to Mexico. He succeeded in negotiating a new treaty, by which that nation agreed to pay all the interest then due, and the award itself, in five years, in equal quarterly instalments. It had been provided that the claims might be paid in Mexican treasury notes. These afterward became much depreciated in value, and Mexico was required by another convention to make payment in specie. 1842

The new convention stipulated for another arbitration

---

New arbitration treaty.Squadron sent to California.

---

1842 treaty, and one which was to provide for the settlement of all claims made by the government of Mexico against the United States, as well as those made by the government and citizens of the United States against Mexico. By the treaty, the claims of the two countries were to be referred to a joint commission to sit in Mexico ; the award of an umpire, to be named by the king of Belgium, was to be final. The Senate conditionally ratified the treaty. They changed the place of meeting to Washington, and made such alterations in it, that no further notice was taken of it by the Mexican government.

The protestations of Mexico against the aid afforded Texas by citizens of the United States with the toleration of their own government were not only entirely disregarded, but the slave-holding power began to look still further. Texas had been the immediate object of ambition. It was now thought that California might be the means of extending slavery to the Pacific Ocean. Considerable settlements of Americans had already been established in that section of country ; and it was now affirmed that they were not safe without the protection of a naval force from the United States. The force, if sent, might fully explore the Gulf of California, which would be a means of employing for a long time one or two vessels. Commodore Jones, a Virginian, was therefore despatched with a squadron to the Pacific, and was instructed to pay particular attention to the examination of the bays and harbors they might visit.

On the 19th of Tenth month, (Oct.,) 1842, the vessels entered the harbor of Monterey. The Americans immediately proceeded to take possession of the fort, under pretence of anticipating the British government, who, it had been falsely stated, had purchased California from Mexico. No resistance was offered. Proclamations were immediately circulated,

---

Treaty of annexation rejected.

---

printed in the Spanish language, offering liberty of conscience and security to all. On ascertaining that California had not been sold to Great Britain, Commodore Jones lowered the flag of the United States, apologized to the Mexican commander, and withdrew to the vessels.

The independence of Texas had now been acknowledged 1843 by France and England. With the latter government, a treaty had been made for the suppression of the African slave trade; and apprehensions were excited among the slaveholders that if left to herself, owing to emigration from abroad, slavery might be abolished within her borders. They resolved therefore to press immediate annexation. On the 17th of Tenth month, (Oct.,) Abel P. Upshur, of Virginia, then Secretary of State, proposed to the Texan agent a treaty of annexation. The Mexican minister consequently gave notice, that if Texas were received into the Union, he must ask for his passports. On the 22d of Fourth month, (April,) 1844, 1844 the treaty was laid before the Senate, and rejected by that body by a vote of thirty-five to sixteen, a majority of two-thirds being necessary.

The Mexican government had not recognized the independence of Texas, and although hostilities had ceased for some years, the war was not terminated, and Mexico had given evidence of her intention to prosecute it still further.

The friends of liberty, after the rejection of the treaty of annexation by the Senate, considered the danger as passed. But what could not be accomplished in a constitutional manner, 1845 was yet done regardless of the Constitution, before the session of Congress closed. A joint resolution of the two Houses of Congress, which requires only a majority in each, was allowed to supersede a treaty. This in the present crisis might be effected. A presidential election had taken place, and James

---

Texas annexed.

---

1845 K. Polk, a warm advocate for annexation, would succeed to the presidency on the 4th of Third month, (March,) 1845. The partisans of Texas gained strength by his arrival in Washington, and on the 1st of Third month, the important question was decided, after a severe struggle and with a small majority, by the passage of a joint resolution in both Houses of Congress, authorizing the annexation of Texas to the Federal Union, as one of the States. A messenger was immediately despatched to Texas. Her consent to the measure was obtained, and on the 22d of Twelfth month, (Dec.,) she was formally enrolled as one of the States of this Confederacy. The consequences of this unconstitutional proceeding have not yet become fully developed, and it has been remarked by a distinguished citizen, "Ages may not see the catastrophe of the tragedy, the first scene of which we have been so ready to enact."

One addition having been made to the territory of the United States, the leaders of the administration party began more openly to turn their attention to California. In order to obtain possession of this large territory an attempt to negotiate with Mexico was first tried. Diplomatic intercourse between the two countries being suspended, an envoy was sent to Mexico, with full powers to adjust all questions in dispute between the two governments. The Mexican government, regarding the annexation of Texas to the United States as an act of war, had only consented to receive a commissioner to settle the dispute concerning that province. When, therefore, it was ascertained that the envoy had come as a minister plenipotentiary, and not as a commissioner to offer reparation for injury done to Mexico by the annexation of Texas to the United States, the Mexican government refused to receive him.

Previously to the information of this refusal being received

---

Aggressions on Mexico.

---

at Washington, United States troops, under General Taylor, 1845 were ordered to march to the Rio Grande. This movement not only laid Texas open to the troops, but also parts of New Mexico, Coahuila, and Tamaulipas, which Texas, after the victory at San Jacinto, had been emboldened to claim as a part of her territory. The object as given in the President's orders, was "to repel invasion, and to protect what, in the event of annexation, will be our western frontier." At the time these orders were sent, the consent of Texas to the annexation resolutions of Congress had not reached Washington. In addition to the regular troops placed under the command of General Taylor, requisitions were made upon the governors of five of the slave-holding States for volunteers, for the payment of whom, they were informed, Congress had made no appropriation, not having foreseen the emergency which would make such a step necessary. War being anticipated only by the Cabinet, the representatives of the people had of course made no arrangements to meet it.

It was the design of the Executive of the United States to induce Mexico to strike the first blow, in order that the war might be considered by the people of the north, as one of defence. An army of four thousand men, besides volunteers, was sent to the Rio Grande, and the apology was that Texas was in danger; yet, although Mexico continued to threaten her revolted province, no hostile force had entered it since the disastrous defeat at San Jacinto, in 1836.

Having made these preparations for hostilities, the administration now concluded to wait the result of the proposed negotiation with Mexico for the purchase of California. Early in 1846, the President received information from Slidell, the envoy sent to Mexico, that the Mexican government would enter into no negotiation, excepting in reference to Texas.

---

General Taylor at the Rio Grande.

---

1846 Consequently there was no hope of a cession of California. Further orders were therefore sent to Taylor, and several situations on the Rio Grande for the army were suggested for his consideration, opposite Metamoras and other towns in Mexico. With the American standard thus displayed before them, the Mexicans would be more likely to be provoked to hostilities. A protest was received against these proceedings, concluding with this assurance :—" So long as the army shall remain in the territory of Tamaulipas, the inhabitants must, whatever professions of peace you may employ, regard you as openly committing hostilities, and for the melancholy consequences of these, they who have been the invaders must be answerable in the view of the whole world."

Having arrived at the Rio Grande, batteries were erected, and the guns made to " bear directly upon the public square of Metamoras, and within good range for demolishing the town." Further remonstrances were sent to Taylor, requiring him to remove his camp within twenty-four hours, and retire beyond the Neuces. If they insisted on remaining in Tamaulipas, arms alone must decide the question. This threat was considered by Taylor as a hostile act, but an expedient was still wanting to justify him in bombarding Metamoras. He therefore blockaded the mouth of the Rio Grande, thus cutting off all communication with Metamoras by sea, and states his object to be, to " compel the Mexicans to withdraw their army from Metamoras, where it cannot be sustained, or to assume the offensive on this side of the river."

Notwithstanding these provocations, and the expedient for starving the Mexican army, no attack was yet made on the American forces, nor had a single shot been fired by the Mexicans. It therefore became necessary to take another step.

---

Hostilities commenced.

---

“With a view to check the depredations of small parties of the enemy on this side of the river,” Taylor writes, he had sent a party to scour the country, and “capture and destroy any such parties that they might meet.” A Mexican camp was surprised; the men were driven away, and their horses seized. Soon after this, a party of dragoons, discovering a small body of Mexicans on a hill, “immediately charged upon them.” Others, however, who were hidden by the rising ground, advanced and captured the assailants. Taylor immediately wrote home, “Hostilities may now be considered as commenced.”

On the 26th of Fourth month, (April,) the President of Mexico issued a proclamation containing this language: “Hostilities have been commenced by the United States of America, in making new conquests upon our territories within the boundaries of Tamaulipas and New Leon.”

The battle at Palo Alto, situated east of the Rio Grande, occurred on the 8th of Fifth month, (May,) between the two armies under General Taylor and the Mexican General Arista. It was sustained for five hours, when the Mexicans were defeated with great loss in killed and wounded.

On the following day the two armies again met at a ravine called Resaca de la Palma. A battle ensued which lasted for one hour and a half, when the Mexicans were entirely routed and pursued to the Rio Grande. Multitudes were drowned in attempting to cross to Metamoras.

The reverses sustained at Palo Alto, and at Resaca de la Palma, spread dismay among the Mexicans, and on the 17th Arista sent a flag of truce, requesting an armistice of six weeks, giving as a reason, his wish to communicate with his own government. The proposition was rejected, and on the following day, Taylor crossed the Rio Grande and took possession of the

---

War proclaimed.

---

1846 city of Metamoras without opposition. The valley of the Rio Grande was thus opened to American arms, and in the course of the summer, the troops occupied without any difficulty several lesser Mexican towns, and advanced upon Monterey.

Immediately after the receipt of information from General Taylor that hostilities had commenced, a message was sent by the President to Congress, in which he stated that Mexico had passed the boundary of the United States, had invaded our territory, and shed American blood upon American soil. He asked that the existence of the war should be recognized, that means should be furnished for prosecuting it with vigor, in order to hasten the restoration of peace. The message was received on the 11th of Fifth month, (May,) and the decision on these important subjects occupied but a small portion of a single day ; every opportunity for debate being cut off by the "previous question." A bill was introduced into the House of Representatives and passed, which declared that war existed by the act of Mexico, placed the army and navy at the disposal of the President, provided for the employment of fifty thousand volunteers, and appropriated ten millions of dollars for the prosecution of the war. The bill was passed by the Senate, and thus the war was recognized by Congress without any examination or any evidence of aggression on the part of Mexico. On the 13th, a proclamation of war was issued by the President.

The legislature of the State of Massachusetts adopted the following resolution, in reference to the act of Congress. "That such a war of conquest, so hateful in its objects, so wanton, unjust and unconstitutional in its origin and character, must be regarded as a war against freedom, against humanity, against justice, against the Union, and against the free States ; and that a regard for the true interests and

---

Attack of Monterey.

---

highest honor of the country, not less than the impulses of 1846 Christian duty, should arouse all good citizens to join in efforts to arrest this war, and in every just way aiding the country to retire from the position of aggression which it now occupies towards a weak, distracted neighbor, and sister Republic."

On the 19th of Ninth month, (Sept.,) General Taylor appeared before Monterey, the capital of Nuevo Leon, and invested it with seven thousand men. The attack combined the horrors of a battle, a siege and an assault. Bomb shells were thrown into the city, which exploded, followed by the most terrific cries. The attack lasted two days ; and no cessation was allowed to bury the dead or remove the wounded.

General Ampudia, the Mexican commander, surrendered on the 24th, and the Americans entered the place. All efforts on the part of General Taylor that the rights of the inhabitants should be respected were disregarded. They were subjected to the brutal treatment of the soldiery, and in many cases their lives were not spared.

The next movement of Taylor's troops was to Saltillo, sixty-five miles from Monterey. Another army, under General Wool, had also entered Mexico, and crossing the Rio Grande, occupied Monclova and Parras. Santa Anna determined to strike a decisive blow on the invaders of his country. He had returned from his exile in the West Indies, had reentered the capital of Mexico, and was placed at the head of the Mexican forces. On the 22d of Second month, (Feb.,) with 1847 an army of twenty thousand men, he met General Taylor in the valley of Buena Vista. After a terrible and sanguinary battle, which lasted two days, the Americans were again completely victorious. The Mexican army was disorganized and scattered ; the route by which they retreated was strowed

---

General Kearney.

---

1847 with dead and dying. Santa Anna returned to the city of Mexico, and Taylor advanced to Encarnacion.

The question of peace was frequently proposed by General Taylor, but the Mexican government as often declared itself unwilling to listen to any terms, while her soil was covered with hostile forces. The proposition being made to Santa Anna, he said in reply, "We sustain the most sacred of causes—the defence of our territory, and the preservation of our nationality and rights; we are not the aggressors; our government has never offended that of the United States. \* \* \* We are resolved to perish or vindicate our rights."

Three invasions of Mexico from different points had been planned, in order to divide and distract her forces. The results of the movements of the main army under General Taylor, and of the division under General Wool, have been given. A third expedition was to proceed from Missouri, and to occupy first New Mexico, and subsequently California. The command of this expedition was given to General Kearney.

Early in the summer of 1846, the "Army of the West," under Gen. Kearney, left Fort Leavenworth, on the Missouri river, in the Indian territory, and after a long march of nearly nine hundred miles, took possession of Santa Fe without opposition, on the 18th of Eighth month, (Aug.) Having made provision for a temporary government of New Mexico, he marched toward California. On the way he learned that that territory had already been subjected under the following circumstances.

Confidential orders were sent as early as the 24th of Sixth month, (June), 1845, to Commodore Sloat, then commander of the United States naval forces in the Pacific:—"If you ascertain with certainty that Mexico has declared war against the

---

Subjection of California.

---

United States, you will at once possess yourself of the port of 1846  
San Francisco, and blockade and occupy such other ports as  
your force may permit." Accordingly the day after receiving  
intelligence of Taylor's conflicts on the Rio Grande, the  
Commodore sailed for Monterey, and took possession of the  
place without opposition on the 7th of Seventh month,  
(July,) 1846. Two days afterward the American forces  
obtained possession of San Francisco; and a proclamation  
was immediately circulated, "Henceforward California will  
be a portion of the United States." Pueblos des los Ange-  
los, the capital of the province, was soon after taken by Com-  
modore Stockton, who succeeded Sloat. Captain Fremont, of  
the United States army, had been sent by government on a  
tour of scientific exploration beyond the Rocky Mountains.  
Secret orders were subsequently conveyed to him, which  
induced him to abandon his scientific pursuits and coöperate  
with the naval force in the war against California. In the  
course of the winter, the inhabitants of the province rose and  
offered resistance to their invaders. After some severe skir-  
mishes they were entirely overcome by Colonel Fremont and  
Commodore Stockton, and subsequently by General Kearney;  
and the whole province fell into the hands of the Americans.

The inhabitants of New Mexico revolted against those  
placed in authority by General Kearney. The American  
troops were reinforced from the States, and overcame the  
Mexicans at several different places, after some sharp con-  
tests. The battle of Sacramento was fought on the first day  
of the week, (Sunday.)

In addition to the invasions of Mexico, already mentioned,  
her seaports were blockaded; many of them were also occu-  
pied by American troops and many vessels were captured.  
The town of Tobasco was taken after being nearly demolished  
by severe cannonading.

---

Bombardment of Vera Cruz.

---

1847 In the early part of 1847, plans were laid to seize Vera Cruz, the principal seaport on the Gulf of Mexico, and afterward to advance into the heart of the country, and take the city of Mexico. Accordingly in Third month, (March,) Vera Cruz and the castle of San Juan d'Ulloa, which guards the harbor, were invested by land and sea, with the American forces under General Scott and Commodore Perry. A summons to surrender having been rejected, on the 22d the batteries were opened on the city. The bombardment lasted nearly four days. It was computed that three thousand shells, each weighing ninety pounds, were thrown into the city, besides about the same number of round shot. In some instances, whole families were killed by the explosion of the murderous shells. Parts of the city were entirely destroyed, and the bodies of the inhabitants buried in the ruins. Terms of capitulation were executed on the 29th, and possession was given of the town and castle.\*

The army under Scott then proceeded to Cerro Gordo, fifty miles from Vera Cruz, on the heights of which another battle

---

\* The following is an extract from a Mexican account of the terrible bombardment. "The enemy, in accordance with his character, selected a barbarous mode of assassinating the unoffending and defenceless citizens, by a bombardment of the city in the most horrible manner, throwing into it four thousand one hundred bombs, and an innumerable number of balls of the largest size; directing his shots to the powder magazine, to the quarter of hospitals of charity, to the hospitals for the wounded, and to the points he set on fire, where it was believed the public authorities would assemble with persons to put it out, to the bakers' houses, designated by their chimneys; and during the night, raining over the entire city, bombs whose height was perfectly graduated with the time of explosion, that they might ignite in falling, and thus cause the maximum of destruction.

"At the second day of the bombardment, we were without bread or meat, reduced to a ration of beans, eaten at midnight, beneath a shower of fire."

---

Negotiations for peace.

---

was fought. After engagements on the 17th and 18th of Fourth month, (April,) the latter being the first day of the week, the Mexicans were entirely defeated. 1847

The American army continued its march toward the city of Mexico, and on the 15th of the following month, Puebla, about one hundred miles from the capital, was taken without opposition. At this place the American army remained for a number of weeks, and was repeatedly reinforced. Leaving a garrison here, the march toward the capital was resumed on the 17th of Eighth month (Aug.) In the immediate neighborhood of the city, several battles were fought in which the Americans were victorious, and many Mexicans were killed and wounded.

The determination of Mexico to enter into no negotiations of peace while her soil was covered with hostile forces, now yielded. An armistice took place, and negotiations were opened between N. P. Trist on behalf of this government, and commissioners on the part of Mexico.

The peace proposed by the United States was the cession of one half of the Mexican dominions, exclusive of Texas proper.\* Although the power of Mexico was much weakened, and her citizens were being slain by thousands, she could not consent to the proposed dismemberment of her territory, and the negotiations were ineffectual. She had offered a great and valuable cession; but it was mainly situated north of the Missouri compromise line, leaving space for only two slave States. It would therefore not secure the

---

\* This includes all the territory eventually obtained by the United States, and Lower California in addition, making an area of eight hundred thousand square miles; while the area of the whole Republic is estimated to have been one million six hundred thousand square miles.

---

Bombardment of the city of Mexico.

---

1847 real object of the war, the acquisition of slave territory, and was accordingly not accepted by the President of the United States.\*

At length the American army reached the city of Mexico. The strong fortress of Chapultepec, outside of the walls, was stormed and carried. The defences at the gates were assaulted and captured. The city was bombarded for a day and a half, and on the morning of the 14th of Ninth month, (Sept.,) it surrendered to General Scott. The destruction of life to the Mexicans is not precisely known. It has been estimated at four thousand; among them, women and children. Many were killed by the blowing up of the houses; many by the bombardment; some by the confusion which prevailed in the city. The American loss was small in proportion. It has been stated at one thousand.

Santa Anna, flying from the capital, assisted, with large reinforcements, in the investment and assault of Puebla, which had been undertaken by the Mexicans after General Scott's departure for the city of Mexico. The siege was continued for twenty-eight days, when the Americans were relieved by the arrival of General Lane with two thousand troops from Vera Cruz.

Other engagements form a part of the history of the war. They are but a record of bloodshed. Detachments of American troops, in marching from one place to another, were fre-

---

\* Many speeches were made in Congress, which prove that the object of the South in carrying on the war was the acquisition of slave territory. In addition, the following extract may be given, from the message of the governor of Virginia. "It is unquestionably true that if our slaves are restricted to our present limits, they would greatly diminish in value, and thus seriously impair the fortunes of their owners. The South can never consent to be confined to prescribed limits."

---

Treaty of peace.

---

quently attacked by guerilla forces, the loss of the Mexicans being usually far the greatest.

General Scott retained possession of the capital, until it was relinquished by the treaty of peace, which was signed by commissioners on the 2d of Second month, (Feb.,) 1848, and with 1848 some amendments ratified by the United States Senate, and signed by the President on the 15th of Third month, (March.) It was afterward accepted by Congress, and finally ratified by commissioners on behalf of the United States, and the Minister of Relations of the Mexican Republic, on the part of that government. The capital and country of Mexico were soon afterward evacuated by American troops, and the blockade of the ports was raised.

By this treaty, Mexico ceded to the United States, for the sum of fifteen millions of dollars, all Texas proper, with the territory between the Neuces and the Rio Grande, the whole of New Mexico and Upper California, making an area of more than eight hundred and fifty thousand square miles, which is equal to seventeen times the extent of the State of New York. It is said, however, not to be highly valuable either for agricultural, commercial or manufacturing purposes.

The direct cost of the war to this government, in money, was upwards of one hundred millions of dollars. The indirect cost can scarcely be computed, but will probably be as much more ; and Mexico has doubtless been drained of a similar amount.

The loss of life among the American troops in the battles which took place during the war, was astonishingly small in comparison with that of the Mexicans. But there was another great cause of mortality. The long marches, some of them of a thousand miles under a burning sun, proved fatal to very many ; and it appears that the number of deaths which took

---

Mortality.

---

1848 place in the military hospitals exceeds those which occurred on the field of battle. To these must be added, in order to form an estimate of the loss of life occasioned by the war, the large numbers whose constitutions were undermined by disease and vice, and whose career has since been early terminated in consequence. The condition of many of the poor creatures who lived to return is described as having been "offensive to every human sense, as well physical as moral." The number who were killed in battle, or perished by disease, during the two years' war with Mexico, is estimated to have been upwards of twenty thousand Americans and about as many Mexicans.\*

---

\* The loss of the Mexicans in battle was much greater than that of the Americans; but that of the Americans was much greater by disease.

## CHAPTER XXXI.

### EXPLORING EXPEDITION UNDER CAPTAIN WILKES.

---

Sails from Norfolk

---

DURING the year 1838, an expedition was fitted out for the 1838 purpose of exploring distant seas, for the security of navigation and for scientific research. The squadron consisted of six vessels, under command of Captain Wilkes. The services of men of science were secured, and every preparation was made for discoveries and scientific investigation. On the 18th of Eighth month, (Aug.,) 1838, the squadron sailed from Norfolk, Virginia, and proceeded first to the Island of Madeira. Here it remained one week, and then crossed to Rio de Janeiro. In this part of the voyage, many reputed rocks and shoals were carefully sailed over, and the navigation was discovered to be quite safe. The brilliancy of the sea at night in this tropical region excited great admiration. On one occasion it is said to have presented the appearance of being on fire.

At Rio de Janeiro, scientific observations were made during the repairing of one of the vessels. Leaving this place a week was spent in the examination of the bar of the Rio Negro, after which the squadron touched at Orange Harbor in Terra del Fuego, where preparations were made for the first antarctic cruise.

On the 25th of Second month, (Feb.,) 1839, two of the vessels left Terra del Fuego, and steered into the Southern ocean. They were soon separated by storms, but afterward joined

---

The Sea Gull lost.

Excursions.

Arrival at Sydney.

---

1839 company, and reached the sixty-eighth degree of south latitude. Many dangers were encountered from snow storms, heavy gales and icebergs. On the 22d of Third month, (March,) a barrier of ice formed one quarter of their horizon. One of the vessels was so much injured as to leak badly, but continued to thread her course among the icebergs, and at one time was nearly surrounded by these floating islands.

Some of the other vessels made short excursions and returned to Orange Harbor, having narrowly escaped shipwreck. The next point of destination for the squadron was Valparaiso. All the vessels reached that place safely excepting the Sea Gull, which was lost off Cape Horn. She was not seen again after leaving Orange Harbor. From Valparaiso and other places on the western coast of South America, excursions were made into the interior, and the naturalists were busily engaged. Magnetic and astronomical observatories were set up. At the village of Banos, a hot spring was found, which cooked their eggs in three minutes.

On the 15th of Seventh month, (July,) the squadron, now reduced to four vessels, left Callao, the store ship having been sent home. From this period, until the latter part of Eleventh month, (Nov.,) when they assembled at Sydney, New South Wales, the time was diligently occupied in surveying clusters of islands in the South Pacific ocean. The result of these labors has contributed much to the safety of the mariner. The interior of the islands was also explored by the officers and naturalists. Much information was obtained, and many specimens were collected. Magnetic, astronomical, tidal and meteorological observations were made with assiduity.

At Sydney, preparations were made for the second antarctic cruise. Every facility was afforded by the governor and other

Antarctic Continent.

Danger from icebergs.

officers of the government, as well as by the citizens generally. The vessels were separated by a storm soon after sailing. Proceeding southward, the course of all was arrested by a compact barrier of ice, which prevented all approach to the antarctic continent, first discovered by this expedition. The sea was traversed between the latitudes of sixty-two and sixty-seven degrees, from the longitude of one hundred and fifty-eight, to that of ninety-four east. The land was seen on twelve occasions, at short distances apart. It is worthy of observation that in this high latitude there was no occasion to light the binnacle lamps, as newspaper print could be read at midnight. 1839

The squadron met again at the Bay of Islands, the appointed place of rendezvous, having escaped many perils. Immense icebergs had threatened destruction. On one occasion, one of the vessels was driven into the immediate vicinity of an ice island seven or eight miles in extent, with an elevation equalling the topgallant masthead, and its upper portion inclining toward the ship. While in this situation an opportunity presented of forcing her into a narrow channel in the ice on her other side, and immediately a mass of ice and snow fell in her wake, which would have crushed the vessel had it fallen but a few moments earlier. In this high southern latitude, icebergs covered the sea in all directions. Terrific gales were experienced. The ships at times became covered with ice. The men were nearly exhausted with cold and fatigue, and sometimes little hope of escape remained. By the latter end of Third month, (March,) 1840, three of the vessels had reached the Bay of Islands; the fourth remained at Sydney to be repaired. 1840

Several months were next occupied in exploring various clusters of islands in the South Pacific; after which the squad-

Northwest coast of America.

Return home.

ron met in the autumn at Honolulu, the chief port of the Sandwich Islands. During the winter and spring, the Society and various other groups of islands were examined, when the squadron, at different times, proceeded to the north-west coast of America. The ship Peacock struck a bar in attempting to enter the Columbia river, and all attempts to get her off were unavailing. The crew were saved. Another vessel being purchased to supply the loss of the Peacock, the river was surveyed as far as the Cascades, one hundred and twenty miles from its mouth. The coast of Oregon and of Upper California, with the sounds and islands, was explored, and parties were despatched into the interior.

On the first of Eleventh month, (Nov.,) 1841, the squadron again put to sea, and crossed the Pacific ocean. Manilla, the principal port of the Philippine Islands, was visited, and passing through the Sooloo sea, the squadron met at Singapore. At this place the Flying Fish was sold, leaving three vessels to return home, where they arrived early in the summer, having been absent nearly four years.

In addition to the Antarctic continent, four islands not laid down on any chart, and several reefs, were discovered by this Expedition. The navigator of all countries is indebted to it, for greatly contributing to his safety, as well as for affording him various facilities. Four hundred new charts have been published, accompanied by tidal and current determinations. Valuable information is also given as to anchorages, means of getting supplies, and the character of the people of the Pacific islands. The diurnal variation of the needle was observed whenever opportunity was afforded, and determinations were taken of the variation, both to the eastward and westward of the south magnetic pole.

Two thousand sheets of drawings were brought home,

---

Objects of interest collected.

---

including illustrations in natural history, scenery, costumes, and portraits of individuals. Large collections in natural history have been deposited in the Patent-office at Washington; and at a museum in the same place, may be seen specimens of the implements, dress, ornaments and manufactures of the different people visited by the Expedition.

## CONCLUSION.

THE reader has now been carried through the history of the United States. A large part of it has been made up of wars, but their delineation has perhaps not been without a good effect.

Almost nineteen hundred years after the coming of the Messiah was announced by the glorious anthem, "On earth peace, good will to men," and the blessed Founder of the Christian religion had established love as the badge of discipleship ;—"By this shall all men know that ye are my disciples, if ye have love one for another ;" we find the professed followers of this same Teacher "slow of heart to believe," and instead of loving their enemies as He has commanded, we see them carrying devastation by the sword, filling with anguish the heart of the widow and the orphan, debasing the morals of the country, and giving thanks for victory to the God of peace.

When apparent causes for war arise, its consequences are greatly overlooked. The loss of life, the sufferings of armies, the sacrifice of property in the destruction of towns and cities, the deterioration of morals, the numbers that are made widows and orphans, the desolation which often follows the track of an army and the direct cost of the war, seem to be obscured or hidden by the prospect of national glory.\*

---

\* The following is an extract from a letter of one of the officers of the army, engaged in the Mexican war :—

"The sight of one battle-field cures one of a desire for military life. If he could see the literal piles of mangled corpses of the slain, some

---

 Cost of War.

 Slavery.
 

---

The immense amount of money that is sacrificed in war, or in preparations for war in time of peace, cannot be appreciated. There is not an internal improvement of any kind that has been devised, that could not be carried on with the means thus worse than wasted. For several years past, our government has appropriated on the average nearly twenty millions annually for preparations for war, estimated to have been as much as seventy per cent. of its whole expenses.

This nation is now blessed with peace, but she carries within her bosom a brand which may yet kindle a flame that will burst forth with destructive fury on our beloved country. Slavery is even now sapping the foundation of the Union, and has always been a source of contention between the South and the North. It is evil, religiously, morally and politically; nor has it permanent pecuniary advantages to recommend it. It needs but a comparison between the slaveholding and free States, to show the disadvantages resulting to

---

without heads, some without legs or arms, some with their bowels torn open, the ground strown with the wounded, dead and dying,—he would be content with his lot.

“The most heart-sickening spectacle I ever beheld was the arch-episcopal palace, at Tacabaya, converted into a hospital on the day of Molino del Rey. The floors of the spacious apartments were covered with wounded officers and men, to the extent of many hundreds, who were suffering horrid agonies, while the corps of surgeons were actively engaged in amputating limbs; some of the victims screamed with agony, while others sustained themselves with heroic fortitude. I had occasion to go through the spacious building twice that day, and witnessed many operations. I saw the amputated limbs quivering with life, while the gutters of the court were filled with streams of human blood.”

It must not be supposed that such scenes as this are not witnessed at every battle. The very nature of war leads to mutilation and slaughter, and every considerable battle in the country has presented, as a necessary consequence, just such horrors as are here described.

## Disadvantages of slave labor.

## Education.

all parties from slave labor. The comparative price of land, which, but a few years ago, possessed equal advantages with that in the free States, proves the disadvantages of the system. Education is at a low ebb, labor disreputable, business paralyzed, roads and bridges are neglected, and the country, which has long been under slave cultivation, is in a state of dilapidation.\*

In a country like ours, where the government is in the hands of the people, it is of great importance that education should be generally diffused. Accordingly we find a system of public schools in most of the free States, supported mainly by legislative enactments in the several States. In some of the States they are of a high order, and do honor to the country. Energy and enterprise being crushed at the South, by the blighting influence of slavery, common schools are but little known; consequently there is in those States a great proportion, even of the white population, who can neither read nor write. As late as 1848, one-fourth part of the white population in Virginia were in this state of ignorance.† In the State of New York, where there is immense immigration, there was, in 1840, but one in one hundred of this class, while in some of the New England States there was but one in four or five hundred, and in Connecticut, but one in five hundred and seventy-four.

In bringing this history to a close, it is but just to remark

---

\* In 1843, the deficit in the Post Office department from the slave States was over six hundred thousand dollars; while the surplus receipts from the free States was about enough to meet the deficiency.

† In North Carolina, some few years since, out of a jury called on a certain occasion, not one man was found who was able to write.

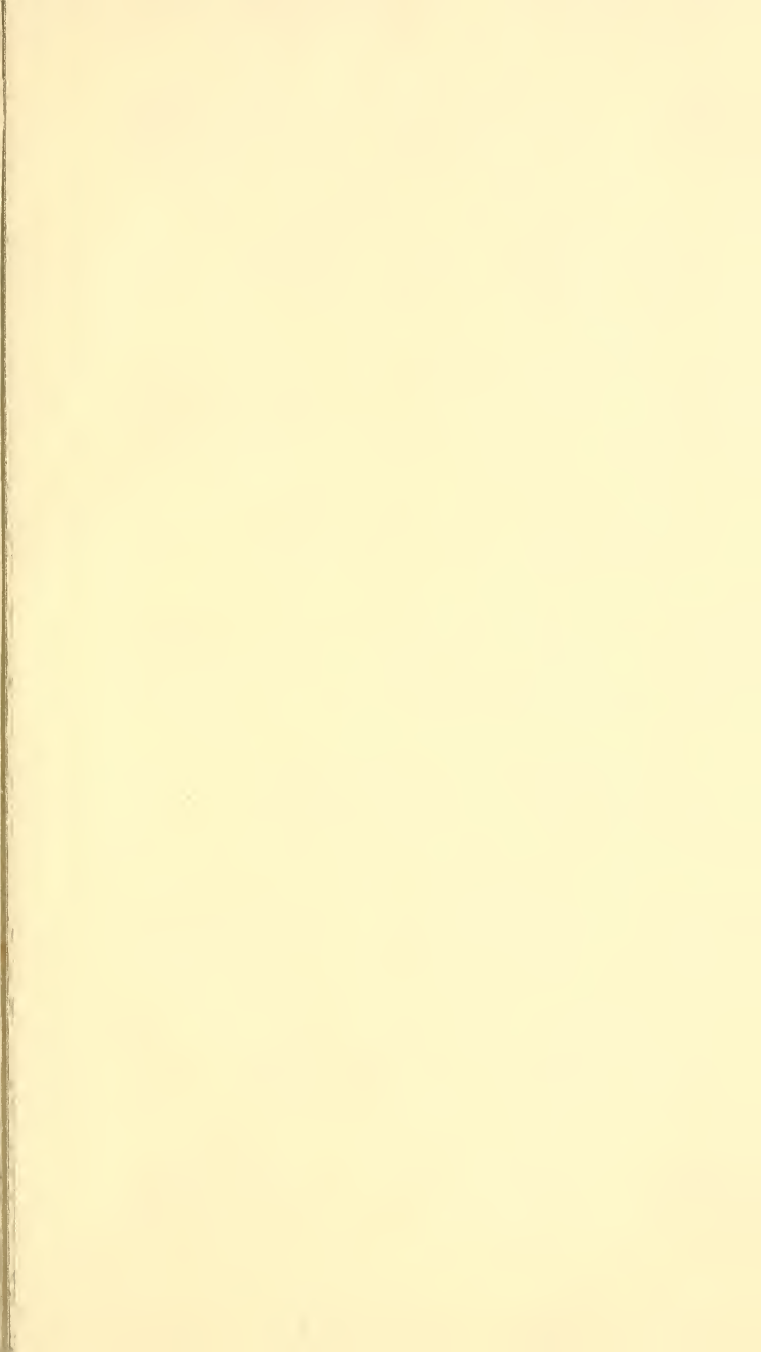
---

Remarks.

---

that the aim has uniformly been to state all facts and occurrences impartially, irrespective of national pride or national prejudice. History loses its value when this rule is departed from. A false coloring and false statements tend alike to mislead. Hence the partisan, or he who is unwilling to see the faults of his country, may be disappointed in not finding national defects, and some instances of national injustice concealed. The true patriot cannot fail to see in the present condition of the country, much to love, much to admire, and much to deplore; and will rather rejoice in the discovery and cure of disease, than in its rankling in concealment. And whatever may be the physical prosperity of the country, however wide its domain, whatever the increase of its rising cities, or however busy the hum of its commerce along far-reaching lines of canals and railways, the true lover of his country can never forget that it is righteousness that exalts a nation. It was never intended that man should live independently of his Créator, beneath the operation of whose rod, the mightiest monarchies and empires have sunk to impotence. Hence the promptings of true philanthropy and patriotism must look more especially to the prevalence of public and private virtue, to the support of justice and humanity, as the foundation of true national greatness and enduring prosperity.









WERT  
BOOKBINDING  
Grantville, Pa  
March / April 1989  
We're Quality Bound

